



LUCIAN'S

A
TRUE
STORY

AN INTERMEDIATE
GREEK READER

Evan Hayes
and
Stephen Nimis

Lucian's
A True Story

An Intermediate Greek Reader

Greek text with running vocabulary and commentary

Evan Hayes
and
Stephen Nimis

Lucian's *A True Story*: An Intermediate Greek Reader
Greek text with Running Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2011 by Evan Hayes and Stephen Nimis

Revised Dec. 2012

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The authors have made a version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter and distribute this work under the following conditions:

1. You must attribute the work to the author (but not in a way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
2. You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
3. If you alter, transform or build up this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

The Greek text is the edition of A. M. Harmon, first published by William Heinemann in 1921.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9832228-0-4

ISBN-10: 0983222800

Published by Stephen Nimis

Cover Design: Evan Hayes

Cover Photo: Illustration from Brockhaus and Efron Encyclopedic Dictionary,
1890–1907 (image in the public domain)

Fonts: Gentium (Open Font License)

GFS Porson (Open Font License)

Table of Contents

Introduction	vii-x
Abbreviations	x
Text and Commentary	1-160
Book 1	1
Book 2	75
Grammatical topics:	
αὐτός	5
Future more and less vivid conditions	7
Unreal conditions	8
Verbs of coming and going	12
Expressions of time and space	14
Imperfect of ἔρχομαι	16
Defective verbs	17
Greek numbers	20
Indirect statement in secondary sequence	22
Conjugation of ἴημι	24
Uses of the subjunctive and optative in subordinate clauses	27
Conjugation of τάσσω	33
Result clauses	38
Indirect statement after verbs of knowing, perceiving, hearing or showing	41
General conditions and temporal clauses	44
Conjugation of ἵστημι	79
Time and Aspect: the Indicative	80-81
Indirect statement after verbs of saying	83
Indirect statement after verbs of thinking and believing	87
ᾄτε and ὡς + participle	94
More about αὐτός	104
Time and Aspect: Translating the Aorist Participle	122-123
List of verbs	163-177
Glossary	179-191

Acknowledgments

The idea for this project grew out of work the authors did with support from Miami University's Undergraduate Summer Scholars Program and the Dean's Scholar Program of the College of Arts and Science. The technical aspects of this project were made possible through the invaluable advice and support of Bill Hayes, Christopher Kuo, and Daniel Meyers. Parts of the text were improved by the help of intermediate Greek students at Miami who tested an earlier version. They were Nicholas Arlington, Brian Bitzer, Michael Clemmer, Elisabeth Colucci, Christopher Dobbs, Kristie Fernberg, Tyler Gau, Stephanie Goldkopf, Jordan Gulley, Alexander Heck, Amanda Holmes, Victoria Hudson, Dylan Ketchum, Adrian Kimmett, Stephanie Krause, Paul Levitt, Brent Maynard, Rebecca Riffle, Katherine Roach, Nathan Roser, Derek Rumpler, Nathan Schaad, Katie Spaulding, and Simone Waller. The following identified errors in an earlier edition: Christopher Francese, Mark Lightman, Jesse Lundquist, Sean Manning, Louise Pratt, and Robert Regan. The authors also profited from advice and help on the POD process from Geoffrey Steadman. All responsibility for errors, however, rests with the authors themselves.

Introduction

The aim of this book is to make Lucian's *A True Story* accessible to intermediate students of Ancient Greek. The running vocabulary and commentary are meant to provide everything necessary to read each page. The commentary is almost exclusively grammatical, explaining subordinate clauses, conditions etc., and explaining unusual verb forms. The page by page vocabularies gloss all but the most common words. We have endeavored to make these glossaries as useful as possible without becoming fulsome. A glossary of all words occurring three or more times in the text can be found as an appendix in the back, but it is our hope that most readers will not need to use this appendix often. Brief summaries of a number of grammatical and morphological topics are interspersed through the text as well, and there is a list of verbs used by Lucian that have unusual forms in an appendix. The principal parts of those verbs are given there rather than in the glossaries. We have provided brief explanations of allusions and proper names, but the commentary by Aristoula Georgiadou and David H.J. Larmour (*Lucian's Science Fiction Novel, True Histories: Interpretation and Commentary*. Leiden: Brill, 1998) can be consulted for more details on the literary character of the work, and those authors include a generous bibliography of critical studies of Lucian.

Lucian's *A True Story* is an ideal text for intermediate readers. Its breathless narrative does not involve many complex sentences or constructions; there is some unusual vocabulary and a few departures from Attic Greek, but for the most part it is a straightforward narrative that is fun and interesting. Lucian of Samosata is one of antiquity's cleverest authors. Nearly everything we know about him is derived from his works, several of which have autobiographical material that is unable to be confirmed by other sources. He claims to have been trained in rhetoric and to be one of the many traveling professional speakers, the "sophists" of the Roman empire, who entertained audiences with amusing lectures on topics of all sorts. He is famous for his satirical sketches that often focus on hypocrisy and pedantry. In *A True Story*, he parodies accounts of fanciful adventures and travel to incredible places by authors such as Ctesias and Iambulus. The story's combination of mockery and learning makes it an excellent example of the Greek literature of the imperial period. The climax of the story is the visit to the Island of the Blessed, where many major figures from Greek literary history are presented with a mixture of humor and pride. In addition the conspicuous absence of any reference to the Roman world in the work--the journey begins at the western

margin of the Mediterranean and never returns--represents one frequent strategy of works of the so-called "second sophistic," which emphasized the importance of Greek learning (*paideia*) in a world dominated by Roman political power. *A True Story* is of course aimed at a readership of learned men (*pepaideumenoι*), who would recognize the many humorous allusions to the Greek cultural tradition, especially the *Odyssey*. The introductory paragraphs state that *A True Story* is meant to be a relaxation as a respite from more serious work, a respite that is clever and amusing in part because it makes hinting reference (*ainissomai*) to archaic poetry and history. Georgiadou and Larmour take the position that a more serious allegory about truth and experience can be deduced from this *ainigma*. Perhaps they are right, but *A True Story* has been admired for centuries as a lot of fun: the first example of science fiction, a utopian fantasy, and a gentle mockery of some of the most famous figures in the classical tradition.

The Greek text contained in this volume is based on the Loeb edition of Lucian, first published in 1921 and now in the public domain. This text was scanned in 2003 and has appeared on several web pages. We have corrected as many of the inevitable errors introduced by the scanning process as we could find, and also made a few minor changes to the Loeb text itself. This is not a scholarly edition; for that the reader is referred to the OCT edited by M. D. Macleod. Keith Sidwell includes some selections from *A True Story* in his intermediate reader, *Lucian: Selections* (Bristol: Bristol Classical Press, 1986). The bowdlerized version of C. S. Jerram (1879) with grammatical notes has been reprinted as *Luciani Vera Historia* (Wauconda: Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, 1990). Selections of some other dialogues by Lucian have been presented with extensive literary commentary by Neil Hopkinson in the Cambridge Greek and Latin series (*Lucian: A Selection*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2008).

Select Bibliography

Branham, R. Bracht. *Unruly Eloquence: Lucian and the Comedy of Traditions*.

Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1989.

Fusillio, M. "The Mirror of the Moon: Lucian's *A True Story* - From Satire to

Utopia," in *Oxford Readings in the Greek Novel*, ed. Simon Swain (Oxford: OUP, 1999), 351-81.

Georgiadou, Aristoula and David H.J. Larmour. *Lucian's Science Fiction Novel, True Histories: Interpretation and Commentary*. Leiden: Brill, 1998.

Jones, C. P. *Culture and Society in Lucian*. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1986.

Swain, Simon. *Hellenism and Empire*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996.

Whitmarsh, Tim. *Greek Literature and the Roman Empire: the Politics of Imitation*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001.

How to use this book:

The presentation assumes the reader has a basic acquaintance with Greek grammar. Generally, particles have not been included in the page-by-page glossaries, along with other common nouns and adjectives. If necessary, all of these words can be found in the glossary at the end. Verbs, being a special problem in Greek, have been treated more fully. A simple and more generic dictionary entry is given in the glossary on each page, with a more specific meaning provided in the commentary below if necessary. We have also included a list of verbs with unusual forms and their principal parts as an appendix, which should be useful in identifying the dictionary form of verbs. Brief discussions of the morphology of some special cases (e.g., μ verbs) are also interspersed throughout the text. A good strategy for attacking a text like this is to read a section of the Greek to get as much out of it as possible, then to look at the glossary below for unrecognized vocabulary items, and lastly to consult the commentary. The fuller glossary at the end of the book can be a last resort.

An Important Disclaimer:

This volume is a self-published "Print on Demand" (POD) book, and it has not been vetted or edited in the usual way by publishing professionals. There are sure to be some factual and typographical errors in the text, for which we apologize in advance. The volume is also available only through online distributors, since each book is printed only when ordered online. However, this publishing channel and format also account for the low price of the book; and it is a simple matter to make changes to the pdf file when they come to our attention. For this reason, any corrections or suggestions for improvement are welcome and will be addressed as quickly as possible in future versions of the text.

Evan Hayes
hayesee@muohio.edu

Stephen Nimis
nimissa@muohio.edu

Evan Hayes is a recent graduate in Classics and Philosophy at Miami University and the 2011 Joanna Jackson Goldman Scholar.

Stephen Nimis is a Professor of Classics at Miami University.

Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	nom.	nominative
acc.	accusative	obj.	object
act.	active	opt.	optative
adj.	adjective	part.	participle
adv.	adverb	pas.	passive
ao.	aorist	perf.	perfect
app.	appositive	pl.	plural
comp.	comparative	plupf.	pluperfect
dat.	dative	pred.	predicate
dep.	deponent	prep.	preposition
d.o.	direct object	pr.	present
f.	feminine	pron.	pronoun
fut.	future	reflex.	reflexive
gen.	genitive	rel.	relative
impf.	imperfect	seq.	sequence
imper.	imperative	sg.	singular
indic.	indicative	subj.	subject or
i.o.	indirect object		subjunctive
inf.	infinitive	superl.	superlative
m.	masculine	voc.	vocative
n.	neuter		

Λουκιανού
Ἀληθῆ Διηγήματα:
βίβλος Α΄

Lucian's
A True Story:
Book 1

A True Story

Ἀληθῆ Διηγήματα: Α΄

[1] Ὡσπερ τοῖς ἀθλητικοῖς καὶ περὶ τὴν τῶν σωμάτων ἐπιμέλειαν ἀσχολουμένοις οὐ τῆς εὐεξίας μόνον οὐδὲ τῶν γυμνασιῶν φροντίς ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς κατὰ καιρὸν γινομένης ἀνέσεως - μέρος γοῦν τῆς ἀσκήσεως τὸ μέγιστον αὐτὴν ὑπολαμβάνουσιν - οὕτω δὴ καὶ τοῖς περὶ τοὺς λόγους ἐσπουδακόσιν ἡγοῦμαι προσήκειν μετὰ τὴν πολλὴν τῶν σπουδαιοτέρων ἀνάγνωσιν ἀνιέναι τε τὴν διάνοιαν καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἔπειτα κάματον ἀκμαιοτέραν παρασκευάζειν. [2] γένοιτο δ' ἂν

ἀθλητικός, -ή, -όν: athletic	ἡγόμαι: to consider, lead the way
ἀκμαῖος, -α, -ον: vigorous	καιρός, ὄ: due measure, proportion, fitness
ἀνάγνωσις, -εως, ἡ: recognition, reading	κάματος, ὄ: toil, labor
ἀνεσις, -εως, -ιος: a loosening, relaxing	λόγος, ὄ: a word, account
ἀνίημι: to let go, relax	μέρος, ὄ: a part, share
ἀσκησις, -εως, ἡ: exercise, practice, training	παρασκευάζω: to prepare, make ready
ἀσχολέω: to engage, occupy	προσῆκω: to be fitting
γίνομαι: to become	σπουδάζω: to make haste
γυμνάσιον, τό: bodily exercises	σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: earnest, serious
διάνοια, ἡ: a thought	σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body
ἐπιμέλεια, ἡ: care, attention	ὑπολαμβάνω: to undertake, to understand
εὐεξία, ἡ: a good habit of body, good health	φροντίς, -ίδος, ἡ: thought, care, heed, attention

Just as athletes seek appropriate rest for the body, so too readers should profit from intermittent light reading, especially if it is clever as well as entertaining. Such is offered here, an amusing collection of fictions which, unlike such authors as Iambulus and Ktesias, makes no pretense to truth.

Ὡσπερ...οὕτω δὴ καὶ: "just as...so also." Lucian begins with an elaborate comparison between athletes and scholars.

τοῖς ἀθλητικοῖς καὶ...ἀσχολουμένοις: "to athletes and to those whose business..."

οὐ μόνον φροντίς ἐστίν...ἀλλὰ καὶ: "not only is it a care...but also"

φροντίς ἐστίν: governs the genitives εὐεξίας, γυμνασιῶν, and ἀνέσεως

κατὰ καιρὸν γινομένης: "happening in season"

αὐτὴν ὑπολαμβάνουσιν: "this (i.e., ἀνέσις) they suppose to be..."

ἡγοῦμαι προσήκειν: "I think it fitting to..." the thought is completed by ἀνιέναι τε καὶ παρασκευάζειν

ἀνιέναι: pr. inf. of ἀνα-ΐημι "to relax," the same stem as ἀνέσις, "relaxation"

ἐσπουδακόσιν: perf. part. dat. pl. of σπουδάζω "to those who have labored"

πρὸς τὸν ἔπειτα κάματον: "for subsequent labor," the definite article makes the adverb ἔπειτα an attributive adjective

ἀκμαιοτέραν (sc. διάνοιαν): "an even greater thought"

γένειτο δ' ἂν...εἰ ὁμιλοῖεν: future less vivid condition, "it would be...if they were to..."

γένειτο: ao. opt. of γίνομαι

Lucian

ἐμμελῆς ἢ ἀνάπαυσις αὐτοῖς, εἰ τοῖς τοιούτοις τῶν ἀναγνωσμάτων ὀμιλοῖεν, ἃ μὴ μόνον ἐκ τοῦ ἀστείου τε καὶ χαρίεντος ψιλὴν παρέξει τὴν ψυχαγωγίαν, ἀλλὰ τινα καὶ θεωρίαν οὐκ ἄμουσον ἐπιδείξεται, οἷόν τι καὶ περὶ τῶνδε τῶν συγγραμμάτων αὐτοὺς φρονήσειν ὑπολαμβάνω· οὐ γὰρ μόνον τὸ ξένον τῆς ὑποθέσεως οὐδὲ τὸ χαρίεν τῆς προαιρέσεως ἐπαγωγὸν ἔσται αὐτοῖς οὐδ' ὅτι ψεύσματα ποικίλα πιθανῶς τε καὶ ἐναλήθως ἐξηγηνόχαμεν, ἀλλ' ὅτι καὶ τῶν ἱστορουμένων ἕκαστον οὐκ ἀκωμωδῆτως ἦνικται πρὸς τινὰς τῶν παλαιῶν ποιητῶν τε καὶ

αἰνίσσομαι: to speak in riddles
ἀκωμώδητος, -α, -ον: unfunny
ἄμουσος, -α, -ον: without the Muses, inelegant
ἀνάγνωσμα, -ατος, τό: a passage read aloud
ἀνάπαυσις, -εως, ἡ: repose, rest
ἀστεῖος, -α, -ον: urbane
ἐκφέρω: to carry out
ἐμμελής, -ές: harmonious
ἐναλήθως: plausibly
ἐπαγωγός, -όν: attractive
ἐπιδείκνυμι: to exhibit
θεωρία, ἡ: a looking at, viewing
ἱστορέω: to inquire into
ὀμιλέω: to be in company with, consort with

παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old in years
παρέχω: to provide
πιθανός, -ή, -όν: persuasive
ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet
ποικίλος, -η, -ον: many-colored, spotted
προαίρεσις, -εως, ἡ: a choosing, subject
σύγγραμμα, -ατος, τό: a writing
ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: subject matter, composition
ὑπολαμβάνω: to understand
φρονέω: to think, consider
χαρίεις: graceful, beautiful, lovely
ψεῦσμα, -ατος, τό: a lie
ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare
ψυχαγωγία, ἡ: a winning of souls, persuasion

τοιούτοις... ἃ: correlatives, “if they were to engage in such things, the kind which ...”

παρέξει...ἐπιδείξεται: futures of **παρέχω** and **ἐπιδείκνυμι**, “not only will provide...but also will exhibit”

οὐκ ἄμουσον: “not without taste,” note the frequent use of double negatives (litotes) in this passage.

οἷόν τι: “just such a thing...”

αὐτοὺς φρονήσειν: indirect statement after **ὑπολαμβάνω**, “I think that they will consider”

ἐπαγωγὸν ἔσται αὐτοῖς “will be pleasing to them”

οὐδ' ὅτι...ἀλλ' ὅτι: “not just because...but also because”

ἐξηγηνόχαμεν: perf. 1 pl. of **ἐκφέρω**, “we have expressed”

ἦνικται: perf. 3 s. of **αἰνίσσομαι**, “has made hinting reference to....” The subject is **ἕκαστον** (sc. **ψεῦσμα**) “each one of those narrated”

A True Story

συγγραφέων καὶ φιλοσόφων πολλὰ τεράστια καὶ μυθώδη συγγεγραφότων, οὓς καὶ ὀνομαστί ἂν ἔγραφον, εἰ μὴ καὶ αὐτῶ σοι ἐκ τῆς ἀναγνώσεως φανεῖσθαι ἔμελλον. [3] [οἶον] Κτησίας ὁ Κτησιόχου ὁ Κνίδιος, ὃς συνέγραψεν περὶ τῆς Ἰνδῶν χώρας καὶ τῶν παρ' αὐτοῖς ἃ μῆτε αὐτὸς εἶδεν μῆτε ἄλλου ἀληθεύοντος ἤκουσεν. ἔγραψε δὲ καὶ Ἰαμβούλος περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ θαλάττῃ πολλὰ παράδοξα, γνώριμον μὲν ἅπασιν τὸ ψεῦδος

ἀκούω: to hear
ἀληθεύω: to speak truth
ἀναγνώσις, -εως, ἡ: recognition
ἅπας: all, the whole
γνώριμος, -η, -ον: well-known, familiar
γράφω: to write
θάλασσα, ἡ: the sea
Ἰνδός, -ή, -όν: Indian, from India
Κνίδιος, -α, -ον: Cnidian, from Cnidos
μυθώδης, -ες: legendary, fabulous

ὀνομαστί: by name
παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical
συγγραφεύς, -έως, ὁ: an historian
συγγράφω: to write, note down
τεράστιος, -ον: monstrous
φαίνομαι: to appear
φιλόσοφος, ὁ: a lover of wisdom,
philosopher
χώρα, ἡ: a space, land
ψεῦδος, -εος, τό: a falsehood, untruth, lie

συγγεγραφότων: perf. part. act. gen. pl. of **συγγράφω**, agreeing with **ποιητῶν**, **συγγραφέων**, and **φιλοσόφων**: “those who have written”

ἂν ἔγραφον, εἰ μὴ...ἔμελλον: present contrary to fact condition, “I would write their names were it not that they would be obvious”

αὐτῶ σοι: “to you (the reader) yourself.” αὐτῶ is here intensive, not reflexive.

φανεῖσθαι: fut. inf. of φαίνομαι after ἔμελλον

Κτησίας ὁ Κνίδιος: Ctesias of Cnidos, fifth century author of a lost History of India, which contained accounts of fantastic creatures. He reappears later in A True Story being punished in the hereafter.

ἄλλου ἀληθεύοντος: “another telling the truth,” gen. after ἤκουσεν

Ἰαμβούλος: Iambulus is the author of a lost narrative (written between 165 and 50 BCE) about a fabulous trip in the Indian Ocean, summarized by Diodorus Siculus.

Note the different meanings of the word αὐτός:

- Without the definite article
 - The nominative forms of the word always are intensive (= Latin ipse): αὐτός: *he himself*, αὐτοί, *they themselves*; ἃ μῆτε αὐτὸς εἶδεν: *which he himself* never saw.
 - The other cases of the word are the unemphatic third person pronouns: him, them, etc. παρ' αὐτοῖς: around *them*.
- With the definite article
 - In predicative position, it is also intensive (= Latin ipse): τὸν ἄνδρα αὐτόν: *the man himself*.
 - in attributive position or with no noun, it means “the same”: τὸν αὐτόν ἄνδρα: *the same man*; πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τὰ αὐτά: “and many others do *the same things*.”

πλασάμενος, οὐκ ἀτερπῆ δὲ ὄμως συνθεῖς τὴν ὑπόθεσιν. πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τὰ αὐτὰ τούτοις προελόμενοι συνέγραψαν ὡς δὴ τινὰς ἑαυτῶν πλάνας τε καὶ ἀποδημίας, θηρίων τε μεγέθη ἱστοροῦντες καὶ ἀνθρώπων ὠμότητος καὶ βίων καινότητος· ἀρχηγὸς δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλος τῆς τοιαύτης βωμολοχίας ὁ τοῦ Ὀμήρου Ὀδυσσεύς, τοῖς περὶ τὸν Ἀλκίνοον διηγούμενος ἀνέμων τε δουλείαν καὶ μονοφθάλμους καὶ ὠμοφάγους καὶ ἀγρίους τινὰς ἀνθρώπους, ἔτι δὲ πολυκέφαλα ζῶα καὶ τὰς ὑπὸ φαρμάκων τῶν ἑταίρων μεταβολάς, οἷα πολλὰ ἐκείνος πρὸς ἰδιώτας ἀνθρώπους τοὺς Φαίιακας ἔτερατεύσατο. [4] τούτοις οὖν ἐντυχῶν ἅπασιν,

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: wild, savage

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind

ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: a man, person

ἀποδημία, ἡ: a being from home, a going abroad

ἀρχηγός, ὁ: an originator, founder

ἀτερπής, -ές: unpleasing, joyless, melancholy

βίος, ὁ: a life, lifestyle

βωμολοχία, ἡ: buffoonery, ribaldry

διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master

διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full

δουλεία, ἡ: servitude, slavery

ἐντυχάνω: to fall in with, read

ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate

ζῶον, τό: a living being, animal

θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast

ἰδιώτης, -ου, ὁ: a individual, simpleton

ἱστορέω: to inquire into

καινότης, -ητος, ἡ: newness, freshness

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change

μονόφθαλμος, -ον: one-eyed

Ὀδυσσεύς, -έως, ὁ: Odysseus

Ὀμηρος, -ου, ὁ: Homer

πλάνη, ἡ: a wandering, roaming

πλάσσω: to form, create

πολυκέφαλος, -ον: many-headed

προαιρέω: to bring forth, choose

συγγράφω: to write, note down

συντίθημι: to put together

τερατεύομαι: to talk marvels

ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: composition

Φαίιαξ, -ακος, ὁ: a Phaeacian

φάρμακον, τό: a drug, medicine

ὠμότης, -ητος, ἡ: rawness

ὠμοφάγος, -ον: eating raw flesh

πλασάμενος: ao. part. of πλάσσω, “having fabricated”

συνθεῖς: aor. act. part. nom. s. of συντίθημι, “having composed”

προελόμενοι aor. mid. part. of προ-αίρέω, “proposing (to do) the same”

ὡς δὴ: “as though”

τοῖς περὶ τὸν Ἀλκίνοον: “those with King Alkinous,” the Phaeacians, who were the audience of Odysseus in *Odyssey* books 9-12.

μονοφθάλμους καὶ ὠμοφάγους: one-eyed flesh-eaters, the Cyclopes of *Odyssey* 9.

πολυκέφαλα ζῶα: “many-headed beasts,” like Scylla

ὑπὸ φαρμάκων...μεταβολάς: “transformations by drugs,” such as Circe in *Odyssey* 10.

οἷα πολλὰ: “with respect to many such things”

A True Story

τοῦ ψεύσασθαι μὲν οὐ σφόδρα τοὺς ἀνδρας ἐμεμφάμην, ὀρώων ἤδη σύννητες ὄν τοῦτο καὶ τοῖς φιλοσοφεῖν ὑπισχνουμένοις· ἐκείνο δὲ αὐτῶν ἐθαύμασα, εἰ ἐνόμιζον λήσειν οὐκ ἀληθῆ συγγράφοντες. διόπερ καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπὸ κενοδοξίας ἀπολείπειν τι σπουδάσας τοῖς μεθ' ἡμᾶς, ἵνα μὴ μόνος ἄμοιρος ᾦ τῆς ἐν τῷ μυθολογεῖν ἐλευθερίας, ἐπεὶ μηδὲν ἀληθὲς ἱστορεῖν εἶχον - οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐπεπόνθειν ἀξιόλογον - ἐπὶ τὸ ψεῦδος ἐτραπόμην πολὺ

ἀληθής, -ές: true	νομίζω: to think, believe
ἄμοιρος, -ον: without share in	πάσχω: to suffer, to have happen to
ἀξιόλογος, -ον: noteworthy	σπουδάζω: to make haste
ἀπολείπω: to leave behind	συγγράφω: to write, note down
ἐλευθερία, ἡ: freedom, liberty	σφόδρα: very, much
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel	τρέπω: to turn
ἱστορέω: to inquire into	ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise, profess
κενοδοξία, ἡ: vanity	φιλοσοφέω: to love knowledge, philosophize
λανθάνω: to escape notice	ψεῦδος, -εος, τό: a lie
μέμφομαι: to blame, censure	ψεύδω: to cheat by lies, beguile
μυθολογέω: to tell mythic tales or legends	

ἐντυχῶν: ao. part. of ἐντυγχάνω, “having read”

τοῦ ψεύσασθαι: articular infinitive in gen. after ἐμεμφάμην, “for lying”

ἐμεμφάμην: ao. 1 s. middle of μέμφομαι, “I didn't fault...”

σύννητες ὄν τοῦτο: ind. st. after ὀρώων, “seeing that this was (ὄν) customary”

καὶ τοῖς φιλοσοφεῖν ὑπισχνουμένοις: “even to those *professing* to philosophize”

This is the meaning of ὑπισχνέομαι with a present infinitive.

εἰ ἐνόμιζον: indirect question, “whether they thought”

λήσειν: fut. inf. of λανθάνω in indirect statement after ἐνόμιζον, “that they would get away with not writing the truth”

τοῖς μεθ' ἡμᾶς: “those in our time”

ᾦ: subj. 1 s. of εἶμι

ἵνα μὴ μόνος ἄμοιρος ᾦ: negative purpose clause, “lest I alone be portionless”

ἐν τῷ μυθολογεῖν: articular inf. “in mythmaking”

εἶχον: impf. of ἔχω, “I was able”

ἐπεπόνθειν: 1 s. plupf. of πάσχω, “I had experienced.” Note that Lucian often uses pluperfects in subordinate clauses where classical authors would typically use the aorist.

ἐτραπόμην: ao. mid. of τρέπω, “I turned myself”

Note the difference between the future less vivid and future more vivid conditions:

The future less vivid indicates a future action as merely a possibility; the future more vivid indicates a future action as a probability.

less vivid: εἰ plus optative in the protasis, ἄν plus the optative in the apodosis: translate “if he were to..., then he would...”

more vivid: ἐάν (Attic contraction = ἦν) plus subjunctive in the protasis, future indicative in the apodosis: translate “if he does..., then he will...”

Lucian

τῶν ἄλλων εὐγνωμονέστερον· κἂν ἔν γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο ἀληθεύσω λέγων ὅτι ψεύδομαι. οὕτω δ' ἂν μοι δοκῶ καὶ τὴν παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων κατηγορίαν ἐκφυγεῖν αὐτὸς ὁμολογῶν μηδὲν ἀληθὲς λέγειν. γράφω τοίνυν περὶ ὧν μήτε εἶδον μήτε ἔπαθον μήτε παρ' ἄλλων ἐπυθόμην, ἔτι δὲ μήτε ὅλως ὄντων μήτε τὴν ἀρχὴν γενέσθαι δυναμένων. διὸ δεῖ τοὺς ἐντυγχάνοντας μηδαμῶς πιστεύειν αὐτοῖς.

ἀληθεύω: to speak truth

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning

δύναμαι: to be able, capable

ἐκφεύγω: to flee, escape

ἐντυγχάνω: to meet with, read

εὐγνώμων, -ον: kindhearted, considerate

κατηγορία, ἡ: an accusation, charge

ὅλως: entirely

ὁμολογέω: to agree

πάσχω: to experience, to suffer

πιστεύω: to trust, believe

πυνθάνομαι: to learn

τοίνυν: therefore, accordingly

ψεύδω: to lie

κἂν (=καὶ ἔάν): more vivid condition with the verb of the protasis suppressed, “if I tell the truth, I will tell this one truth by saying...”

ἂν...ἐκφυγεῖν: the potential optative becomes an infinitive after **δοκῶ**, “I think that I might escape...”

αὐτὸς ὁμολογῶν: “by myself admitting that...”

ἔπαθον: ao. of **πάσχω**, “I experienced”

ἐπυθόμην: ao. of **πυνθάνομαι**, “I learned”

μήτε ὅλως ὄντων: “nor actually exist”

τὴν ἀρχὴν: acc. of respect, “in the first place”

γενέσθαι δυναμένων: “are able to exist”

Unreal conditions:

Compare the future less vivid with the present and past contrafactual conditions:

future less vivid:

εἰ plus optative in the protasis, **ἂν** plus the optative in the apodosis: translate “If he were to..., then he would...” (but not likely).

present contrafactual:

εἰ plus imperfect indicative in the protasis, **ἂν** plus the imperfect indicative in the apodosis: translate “if he were (now) doing..., then he would be...” (but he isn’t).

past contrafactual:

εἰ plus aorist indicative in the protasis, **ἂν** plus the aorist indicative in the apodosis: translate “if he had done..., then he would have...” (but he didn’t).

A True Story

[5] Ὀρμηθεὶς γάρ ποτε ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείων στηλῶν καὶ ἀφείς εἰς τὸν ἑσπέριον ὠκεανὸν οὐρίῳ ἀνέμῳ τὸν πλοῦν ἐποιούμην. αἰτία δέ μοι τῆς ἀποδημίας καὶ ὑπόθεσις ἢ τῆς διανοίας περιεργία καὶ πραγμάτων καινῶν ἐπιθυμία καὶ τὸ βούλεσθαι μαθεῖν τί τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν τοῦ ὠκεανοῦ καὶ τίνες οἱ πέραν κατοικοῦντες ἄνθρωποι. τούτου γέ τοι ἔνεκα πάμπολλα μὲν σιτία ἐνεβαλόμην, ἱκανὸν δὲ καὶ ὕδωρ ἐνεθέμην, πεντήκοντα δὲ τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν προσεποιησάμην τὴν αὐτὴν ἐμοὶ γνώμην ἔχοντας, ἔτι δὲ καὶ ὄπλων πολὺ τι πλῆθος παρεσκευασάμην καὶ κυβερνήτην τὸν

αἰτία, ἡ: a cause, purpose
ἀποδημία, ἡ: a being from home, a going abroad
ἀφήμι: to make for
γνώμη, ἡ: a mark, token
διάνοια, ἡ: a thought, intention
ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, put in
ἔνεκα: on account of + *gen.*
ἐντίθημι: to put in or into
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: a desire, yearning, longing
ἑσπέριος, -α, -ον: western
ἡλικιώτης, -ου, ὁ: fellow, comrade
Ἡράκλειος, -α, -ον: of Hercules
ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: sufficient
καινός, -ή, -όν: new, fresh
κατοικέω: to dwell in
κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: a helmsman, pilot

μανθάνω: to learn
ὄπλον, τό: a tool, weapon
ὀρμάω: to set out
οὐρίος, -α, -ον: with a fair wind
πεντήκοντα: fifty
πέραν: on the other side, across
περιεργία, ἡ: over-exactness, officiousness
πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number
πρᾶγμα, -ατος, τό: that which has been done, a deed, act
προσποιέω: to make over to
σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone, pillar
τέλος, -εος, τό: a fulfillment, completion
ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: a supposition, purpose
ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ὁ: the ocean

The narrator recounts his intention to sail out beyond the Pillars of Heracles because of a thirst for knowledge. A storm carries him and his crew away for 80 days before they make landfall.

ὀρμηθεὶς: ao. pas. part. nom. s., “having set out from”

ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείων στηλῶν: “from the pillars of Heracles,” bestriding the straits of Gibraltar.

ἀφείς: ao. part. nom. s. of ἀφ-ίημι

οὐρίῳ ἀνέμῳ: “with a tailwind”

τὸ βούλεσθαι: art. inf. “the desire”

τί τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν... τίνες ἄνθρωποι: indirect questions, “to learn what the end of the Ocean was and who were the men...”

ἐνεβαλόμην: ao. of ἐμβάλλω, “I put onboard”

ἐνεθέμην: ao. of ἐντίθημι, “I put onboard”

τὴν αὐτὴν ἐμοὶ γνώμην: “the same mind as I”

ἄριστον μισθῶ μεγάλῳ πείσας παρέλαβον καὶ τὴν ναῦν - ἄκατος δὲ ἦν - ὡς πρὸς μέγαν καὶ βίαιον πλοῦν ἐκρατυνάμην. [6] ἡμέραν οὖν καὶ νύκτα οὐρίῳ πλέοντες ἔτι τῆς γῆς ὑποφαινομένης οὐ σφόδρα βιαίως ἀνηγόμεθα, τῆς ἐπιούσης δὲ ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντι ὃ τε ἄνεμος ἐπεδίδου καὶ τὸ κῦμα ἠϋξάνετο καὶ ζόφος ἐπεγίνετο καὶ οὐκέτ' οὐδὲ στείλαι τὴν ὀθόνην δυνατὸν ἦν. ἐπιτρέψαντες οὖν τῷ πνέοντι καὶ παραδόντες ἑαυτοὺς ἐχειμαζόμεθα ἡμέρας ἑννέα καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα, τῇ ὀγδοηκοστῇ δὲ ἄφνω ἐκλάμψαντος ἡλίου καθορῶμεν οὐ πόρρω νῆσον ὑψηλὴν καὶ δασεῖαν, οὐ τραχεῖ περιηχουμένην τῷ κύματι· καὶ γὰρ ἤδη τὸ πολὺ τῆς ζάλης κατεπαύετο.

ἄκατος, ὄ: a light vessel
 ἅμα: at once, at the same time
 ἄριστος: best
 αὐξάνω: to increase, augment
 δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick with hair, shaggy
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν: possible
 ἑβδομήκοντα: seventy
 ἐκλάμπω: to shine
 ἑννέα: nine
 ἐπιγίνομαι: to come into being
 ἐπιδίδωμι: to give beyond, increase
 ἐπιτρέπω: to turn towards
 ζάλη, ἡ: a surging
 ζόφος, ὄ: the darkness
 καταπαύω: to stop, put an end to
 κρατύνω: to strengthen
 κῦμα, -ατος, τό: a wave

μισθός, ὄ: wages, pay, hire
 ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship
 ὀγδοηκοστός, -ή, -όν: eightieth
 ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
 οὔριος, -α, -ον: with a fair wind
 παραδίδωμι: to give or hand over to
 παραλαμβάνω: to secure
 πείθω: persuade
 περιηχέω: to ring all round
 πνέω: to blow
 πόρρω: far off
 στέλλω: to equip, make ready
 σφόδρα: very, much
 τραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: rugged, rough
 ὑποφαίνω: to appear slight, just be visible
 ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty
 χειμάζομαι: to be drive by a storm

πείσας: ao. part. nom. s. of πείθω, "having persuaded"
 οὐρίῳ (sc. ἀνέμῳ): "with a tailwind," as above
 ἔτι τῆς γῆς ὑποφαινομένης: gen. abs., "the land still being visible"
 τῆς ἐπιούσης (sc. ἡμέρας): gen. of time within which, "in the course of the next day"
 ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντι: dat. of time when, "at sunrise"
 ἐπεδίδου: 3. s. impf. of ἐπιδίδωμι, "the wind began increasing"
 ἐπεγίνετο: impf. of ἐπι-γίνομαι, "darkness came on"
 παραδόντες: ao. part. of παραδίδωμι, "having given ourselves over to..."
 ἡμέρας ἑννέα καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα: acc. of duration of time, "for 79 days"
 ἐκλάμψαντος ἡλίου: gen. abs., "the sun having shown forth"
 περιηχουμένην: perf. part. of περιηχέω, "echoing all around," modifying νῆσον

A True Story

Προσσχόντες οὖν καὶ ἀποβάντες ὡς ἂν ἐκ μακρᾶς
ταλαιπωρίας πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἐπὶ γῆς ἐκείμεθα, διαναστάντες δὲ
ὄμως ἀπεκρίναμεν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τριάκοντα μὲν φύλακας τῆς νεῶς
παραμένειν, εἴκοσι δὲ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἀνελθεῖν ἐπὶ κατασκοπῇ τῶν ἐν τῇ
νήσῳ. [7] προελθόντες δὲ ὄσον σταδίους τρεῖς ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης
δι' ὕλης ὀρώμεν τινα στήλην χαλκοῦ πεποιημένην, Ἑλληνικοῖς
γράμμασι καταγεγραμμένην, ἀμυδροῖς δὲ καὶ ἐκτετριμμένοις,
λέγουσαν «Ἄχρι τούτων Ἡρακλῆς καὶ Διόνυσος ἀφίκοντο». ἦν δὲ
καὶ ἵχνη δύο πλησίον ἐπὶ πέτρας, τὸ μὲν πλεθριαῖον, τὸ δὲ
ἔλαττον - ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, τὸ μὲν τοῦ Διονύσου, τὸ μικρότερον,

ἀμυδρός, -ά, -όν: indistinct, dim, obscure
ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
ἀποκρίνω: to separate, set apart
ἄχρι: up to
γράμμα, -ατος, τό: a letter
διανίσταμαι: to depart from
Διόνυσος, -ου, ό: Dionysus
ἐκτρίβω: to rub out
ἐλάσσων, -ον: smaller, less
Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Hellenic, Greek
Ἡρακλῆς, -έους, ό: Heracles
ἵχνος, -εος, τό: a track, footstep
καταγράφω: to inscribe

κατασκοπή, ἦ: a viewing closely, spying
ναῦς, νεῶς, ἦ: a ship
παραμένω: to stay near, stand by
πέτρῃ, ἦ: a rock
πλεθριαῖος, -α, -ον: broad, long
προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance
προσέχω: to put in, anchor
σμικρός: small
στήλη, ἦ: a block of stone, marker
ταλαιπωρία, ἦ: hardship, suffering
τριάκοντα: thirty
φύλαξ, -ακος, ό: a watcher, guard
χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: of bronze, brazen

Their first stop turns out to be an island with rivers of wine, wine-fish, and vine maidens.

προσσχόντες: ao. part. of προσ-έχω, “having put in”

ἀποβάντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-βαίνω, “having gone ashore”

ὡς ἂν: with an implied potential optative, “as you might expect from our suffering”

διαναστάντες: ao. part. from δια-ανα-ἵστημι, “having gotten up and gone”

ἀπεκρίναμεν: ao. 1 pl., “we divided off 30 of ourselves”

παραμένειν...ἀνελθεῖν: inf. in implied indirect commands with ἀπεκρίναμεν,
“some to remain, some to go”

πεποιημένην: perf. part. acc. s. of ποιέω, “having been made”

καταγεγραμμένην: perf. part. acc. s., “inscribed”

ἐκτετριμμένοις: perf. part. dat. pl., “worn out”

Ἡρακλῆς καὶ Διόνυσος: Heracles and Dionysus were both legendary travelers,
who traversed the limits of the known world.

ἀφίκοντο: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “they arrived”

ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν: parenthetical, “so it seemed to me”

Lucian

Verbs of coming and going:

There is a lot of coming and going in *A True Story*. Here are some of the common words for various kinds of movement and arrival:

ὀρμάω, “to set out”: **ὀρμηθεῖς**: aor. part. pass.

ὀρμίζω, “to anchor”: **ὀρμισάμενοι** aor. part. mid.

πλέω, “to sail”: **πλέοντες** pr. part.; **πλεύσαντες**: aor. part.

δι-επλεύσαμεν: aor. 1 pl. of **δια-πλέω**, “sail through”

προσ-πλέοντας: aor. part of **προσ-πλέω**, “sail towards”

παρα-πλέοντες: pr. part. of **παρα-πλέω**, “sail by”

ἐπ-έπλεεν: impf. of **ἐπι-πλέω**, “to sail against”

βαίνω, “to step” and hence “to step up, away upon,” etc.

ἀποβαίνω “to step off”: **ἀποβάντες**, **ἀπέβημεν**

ἐμβαίνω, “to step on or in” **ἐμβάντες**: “boarding (a ship)” or “stepping on land”

ἀφικνέομαι, “to arrive”: aorist: **ἀφίκοντο**, “they arrived,”

ἀφικόμενος “having arrived”

Forms of **εἶμι** (“I will go”) are used for some present and imperfect forms of **ἔρχομαι**:

προ-ῆμεν: “we went forward”

παρ-ῆμεν; **παρ-ῆιμεν**: “we went by”

ἐπ-ῆει: “he attacked”

ἐπ-ῆσαν: “they attacked”

ἀν-ῆειν: “I went up”

διεξ-ῆει: “he went through, he narrated”

προσ-ιόντες: “going forward”

Forms derived from **ἦλθον** are used for the aorist and perfect of **ἔρχομαι**:

aor.: **προ-ελθόντες**, **ἀν-ελθεῖν**, **δι-ελθῶν**, **ἀπ-ελθόντες**, **ἐπ-ελθόντες**,
ἐπ-εξ-ἦλθον

perf.: **ἀπ-εληλύθεσαν**, **παρ-εληλυθότας**

ἀνάγω, “to lead up,” often, esp. in middle and passive “to put to sea”

impf: **ἀνηγόμεθα**, aor. pas: **ἀνήχθημεν**, “we put to sea”

προσ-έχω, “to hold to” and hence “to bring a ship to shore, to land”

προσσχόντες aor. part.; **προσέσχομεν** aor. ind.

The aorist passive of **ἤνεγκον** (**φέρω**) occurs in special combinations:

προσ-ενεχθέντες: “having been borne toward,” hence “having put into” (a harbor)

ἀπ-ηνέχθημεν: “we were carried away”

A True Story

θάτερον δὲ Ἡρακλέους. προσκυνήσαντες δ' οὖν προῆμεν· οὐπω δὲ πολὺ παρήμεν καὶ ἐφιστάμεθα ποταμῷ οἶνον ῥέοντι ὁμοιότατον μάλιστα οἶοςπερ ὁ Χίος ἐστίν. ἄφθονον δὲ ἦν τὸ ῥεῦμα καὶ πολὺ, ὥστε ἐνιαχοῦ καὶ ναυσίπορον εἶναι δύνασθαι. ἐπήει οὖν ἡμῖν πολὺ μᾶλλον πιστεύειν τῷ ἐπὶ τῆς στήλης ἐπιγράμματι, ὁρῶσι τὰ σημεῖα τῆς Διονύσου ἐπιδημίας. δόξαν δέ μοι καὶ ὅθεν ἄρχεται ὁ ποταμὸς καταμαθεῖν, ἀνῆειν παρὰ τὸ ῥεῦμα, καὶ πηγὴν μὲν οὐδεμίαν εὔρον αὐτοῦ, πολλὰς δὲ καὶ μεγάλας ἀμπέλους, πλήρεις βοτρύων, παρὰ δὲ τὴν ρίζαν ἐκάστην ἀπέρρει σταγῶν οἴνου διαυγοῦς, ἀφ' ὧν ἐγένετο ὁ ποταμὸς. ἦν δὲ καὶ ἰχθύς ἐν αὐτῷ

ἄμπελος, ἦ: a vine, tendril
ἀνειμι: to go up
ἀπορρέω: to flow away, stream forth
ἄφθονος, -ον: unstinting
βότρυον, τό: a cluster or bunch of grapes
διαυγής, -ές: transparent, clear
Διόνυσος, -ου, ὁ: Dionysus
δοκέω: to think
δύναμαι: to be able
ἐνιαχοῦ: in some places, here and there
ἐπίγραμμα, -ατος, τό: an inscription
ἐπιδημία, ἦ: a stay in a place
Ἡρακλῆς, -έους, ὁ: Heracles
ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ: a fish
καταμανθάνω: to observe well, learn
μᾶλλον: more

ναυσίπορος, -ον: navigable
ὅθεν: whence
οἶνος, ὁ: wine
οὐπω: not yet
πηγή, ἦ: running waters, streams
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in
πλήρης, -ες: full, filled with
ποταμὸς, ὁ: a river, stream
προσκυνέω: to make obeisance, worship
ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a flow, stream, current
ρίζα, -ης, ἦ: a root
σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark
σταγῶν, -όνος, ἦ: a drop
στήλη, ἦ: a block of stone
Χίος, -α, -ον: Chian, of or from Chios

προσκυνήσαντες: ao. part., “having made obeisance”

προῆμεν: impf. of προ-έρχομαι, “we advanced”

οὐπω παρήμεν: impf. of παρα-έρχομαι, “did not go far”

οἶοςπερ ὁ Χίος: “just like Chian” (wine), a famous vintage

ὥστε...δύνασθαι: result clause, “so that it was possible”

ἐπήει: impf. of ἐπι-έρχομαι, “it occurred to us”

ὁρῶσι: pr. part. dat. pl., “to us seeing”

δόξαν: ao. part. acc. s. neut. of δοκέω, used absolutely and impersonally, “since it seemed a good idea”

ἀνῆειν: impf. 1 s. of ἀνα-έρχομαι, “I went up”

εὔρον: ao. 1 s. of εὐρίσκω, “I found”

πλήρεις: acc. pl. modifying ἀμπέλους, “vines full of”

ἀπέρρει: impf. of ἀπορρέω, “was flowing”

οἴνου διαυγοῦς: gen. of description, “of clear wine”

Lucian

πολλοὺς ἰδεῖν, οἴνω μάλιστα καὶ τὴν χροάν καὶ τὴν γεῦσιν
προσεοικότας· ἡμεῖς γοῦν ἀγρεύσαντες αὐτῶν τινὰς καὶ
ἐμφαγόντες ἐμεθύσθημεν· ἀμέλει καὶ ἀνατεμόντες αὐτοὺς
εὐρίσκομεν τρυγὸς μεστούς. ὕστερον μέντοι ἐπινοήσαντες τοὺς
ἄλλους ἰχθύς, τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος παραμιγνύντες ἐκεράννυμεν
τὸ σφοδρὸν τῆς οἴνοφαγίας.

ἀγρεύω: to catch

ἀμέλει: never mind

ἀνατέμνω: to cut open

ἐνεσθίω: to eat one's fill

ἐπινοέω: to think on, contrive

εὐρίσκω: to find

κεράννυμι: to mix, mingle

μεθύσκω: to make drunk, intoxicate

μεστός, -ή, -όν: full

οἴνος, ὄ: wine

οἴνοφαγία, ἡ: wine-feast

παραμίγνυμι: to intermix with

προσείκοι: to resemble

σφοδρός, -ά, -όν: excessive, violent

τρυξ, τρυγός, ἡ: lees, dregs

χρoιά, ἡ: color

πολλοὺς ἰδεῖν: epexegetic infinitive, "many to look at"

τὴν χροάν καὶ τὴν γεῦσιν: acc. of respect, "in color and taste"

ἐμφαγόντες: ao. part. of ἐν-εσθίω, "eat one's fill," coined on the analogy of
ἐμπίνω, "drink one's fill"

ἐμεθύσθημεν: ao. pas., "we were made drunk"

ἀμέλει: adverbial, "of course," properly the imperative of ἀμελέω, "don't worry"

τρυγὸς μεστούς: the "lees" of the wine

ἐπινοήσαντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-νοέω, "having contrived"

παραμιγνύντες: pres. part. "by mingling...we tempered"

Expressions of time and space:

Any span of time or space can be thought of in three ways:

1. as a **point** in time or space: at noon, today, in 1975, in Athens
2. as an **extent**: for an hour, for a day, for a year, from Athens to Sparta.
3. as a **span within which** something happens: in the course of the first hour, during the fifth day, in the course of the twentieth century (somewhere) between Athens and Sparta.

1. Greek uses the **dative** case to express time when: ἠλίω ἀνίσχοντι: "at sunrise." the preposition ἐν is often added when there is no adjective: ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι: "in winter."
2. Greek uses the **accusative** case to indicate duration or extent of time: ἡμέρας ἑννέα καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα: "for 79 days."
3. Greek uses the **genitive** case to indicate the time within which an action takes place: τῆς ἐπιούσης ἡμέρας: "in the course of the next day," with the idea that an action happens for **part of the day**.

The accusative is also used for an extent of space, and the genitive for the place within which an action happens. For a point in space, the dative case is also used, but more often this is expressed with the dative after a preposition like ἐν, παρά, ἐπί, etc.

A True Story

[8] Τότε δὲ τὸν ποταμὸν διαπεράσαντες ἢ διαβατὸς ἦν, εὖρομεν ἀμπέλων χρῆμα τεράστιον· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς, ὁ στέλεχος αὐτὸς εὐερνῆς καὶ παχὺς, τὸ δὲ ἄνω γυναικες ἦσαν, ὅσον ἐκ τῶν λαγόνων ἅπαντα ἔχουσαι τέλεια - τοιαύτην παρ' ἡμῖν τὴν Δάφνην γράφουσιν ἄρτι τοῦ Ἄπολλωνος καταλαμβάνοντος ἀποδενδρουμένην. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν δακτύλων ἄκρων ἐξεφύοντο αὐταῖς οἱ κλάδοι καὶ μεστοὶ ἦσαν βοτρυῶν. καὶ μὴν καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐκόμων ἔλιξι τε καὶ φύλλοις καὶ βότρυσι. προσελθόντας δὲ ἡμᾶς ἠσπάζοντο καὶ ἐδεξιούντο, αἱ μὲν Λύδιον,

ἄκρον, -ον, τό: the tip
ἀμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril
ἀποδενδρόμαι: to be turned into a tree
Ἄπολλων, -ωνος, ὁ: Apollo
ἄρτι: still
ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid fare-
well
βότρυς, -υος: a cluster or bunch of grapes
γράφω: to write
γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman
δάκτυλος, ὁ: a finger
Δάφνη, ἡ: Daphne
διαβατός, -ή, -όν: fordable
ἐκφύω: to grow out
ἔλιξ, -ικος, ἡ: a spiral, twisting tendril
εὐερνῆς, -ές: flourishing

καταλαμβάνω: to seize, lay hold of
κεφαλή, ἡ: the head
κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a shoot
κομάω: to let the hair grow long
λαγών, -όνος, ἡ: a flank
Λύδιος, -α, -ον: Lydian, of Lydia
μεστός, -ή, -όν: full, filled
παχὺς, -εία, -ύ: thick, stout
ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
προσέρχομαι: to come or go to
στέλεχος, -εος, τό: a stump
τέλειος, -α, -ον: complete
τεράστιος, -ον: monstrous
φύλλον, τό: a leaf
χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: a thing

ἢ: dat. s. f. of relative pronoun, “in which place, where”

τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς: “the part above the ground”

τὸ δὲ ἄνω: “the upper part”

ἔχουσαι τέλεια: “being perfect”

Δάφνην: Pursued by Apollo, the nymph Daphne was changed into a laurel tree to escape him.

ἄρτι τοῦ Ἄπολλωνος καταλαμβάνοντος: gen. abs., “Apollo still trying to seize her”

ἀποδενδρουμένην: “turning into a tree”

ἐξεφύοντο: impf. of ἐκφύω, “branches were growing out of”

καὶ μὴν καὶ: “and indeed even...”

ἐκόμων: impf. 3 pl. of κομάω, “their hair was growing long...”

ἔλιξι: dat. pl. of ἔλιξ “tendrils”

ἐδεξιούντο: impf. of δεξιόομαι, “they greeted us,” from δεχία, “right hand”

Lucian

αἱ δ' Ἰνδικήν, αἱ πλείσται δὲ τὴν Ἑλλάδα φωνὴν προῖέμεναι. καὶ ἐφίλουν δὲ ἡμᾶς τοῖς στόμασιν· ὁ δὲ φιληθεὶς αὐτίκα ἐμέθυσεν καὶ παράφορος ἦν. δρέπεσθαι μέντοι οὐ παρείχον τοῦ καρποῦ, ἀλλ' ἤλγουν καὶ ἐβόων ἀποσπασμένου. αἱ δὲ καὶ μίγνυσθαι ἡμῖν ἐπεθύμουν· καὶ δύο τινὲς τῶν ἐταίρων πλησιάσαντες αὐταῖς οὐκέτι ἀπελύοντο, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων ἐδέδεντο· συνεφύοντο γὰρ καὶ συνερριζοῦντο. καὶ ἤδη αὐτοῖς κλάδοι ἐπεφύκεσαν οἱ δάκτυλοι, καὶ ταῖς ἔλιξι περιπλεκόμενοι ὅσον οὐδέπω καὶ αὐτοὶ

αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals
 ἀλγέω: to feel pain, suffer
 ἀπολύω: to loose, set free
 ἀποσπάω: to tear away
 δάκτυλος, ὁ: a finger
 δρέπω: to pluck, cull
 ἔλιξι, -ικος, ἦ: a spiral, twisting tendril
 Ἑλλάς, ἄδος: Greek
 ἐπιθυμέω: to desire
 Ἰνδικός, -ή, -όν: Indian, of India
 καρπός, ὁ: fruit
 κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a young shoot
 μεθύω: to get drunk
 μίγνυμι: to mix, have intercourse with

οὐδέπω: not as yet
 παράφορος, -ον: carried away
 παρέχω: to provide, allow
 περιπλέκω: to entwine, enfold
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
 πλησιάζω: to approach, meet with
 προίημι: to send forward
 στόμα, τό: the mouth
 συμφύω: to grow together
 συνερριζόομαι: to take root together
 φιλέω: to love, kiss
 φύω: to put forth, grow
 φωνή, ἦ: a sound, tone

προῖέμεναι: pr. part. nom. pl. fem. of προ-ἵημι, “sending forth a voice”
 φιληθεὶς: ao. pas. part., “having been kissed”
 οὐ παρείχον: impf. of παρα-έχω, “they would not allow”
 ἤλγουν καὶ ἐβόων: impf., “they began suffering and crying out”
 αἱ δὲ: “some (of the women)”
 ἐπεθύμουν: impf. 3 pl. of ἐπιθυμέω, “they desired”
 οὐκέτι ἀπελύοντο: impf. of ἀπολύομαι, “no longer were freeing themselves”
 ἐδέδεντο: plupf. of δέω, “they had been bound”
 συνεφύοντο: impf. of συμφύομαι, “they were growing together.”
 συνερριζοῦντο: impf. of συν-ριζόομαι, “they were taking root together”
 ἐπεφύκεσαν: plupf. of φύω, “their fingers had already sprouted branches”
 καὶ αὐτοὶ: “the men themselves also”

The imperfect tense of ἔρχομαι (ἦα), along with other forms of the present system, is based on the same stem as the future (εἶμι). Here is the declension of the imperfect:

ἦα, ἦ εἰν (I went, etc.)	ἦμεν
ἦισθα	ἦτε
ἦει	ἦσαν
Contrast with the imperfect of εἶμι:	
ἦ(ν) (I was, etc.)	ἦμεν
ἦσθα	ἦτε
ἦν	ἦσαν

A True Story

Defective verbs

The principal parts of some verbs come from completely different words. Sometimes there are more than one form for a specific tense, in which case one will usually be preferred. Here are some important examples:

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist passive	Translation
ἔρχομαι	εἶμι ἐλεύσομαι	ἦλθον	ἐγήλουθα		go
λέγω	ἐρέω λέξω	εἶπον ἔλεξα	εἶρηκα λέλεγμαι	ἐρρήθηην ἐλέχθηην	speak
φέρω	οἶσω	ἤνεγκον	ἐνήνοχα	ἠνέχθηην	carry
αἰρέω	αἰρήσω	εἶλον	ἤρηκα	ἠρέθηην	take
ὁράω impf. εἴωρων	ὄψομαι	εἶδον	οἶδα fut. εἴσομαι	plupf. ἤδη	see perf: know
τρέχω	δραμοῦμαι	ἔδραμον	δεδράμηκα		run
ἐσθίω	ἔδομαι	ἔφαγον	ἐδήδοκα	ἠδέσθηην	eat

καρποφορήσειν ἔμελλον. [9] καταλιπόντες δὲ αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ναῦν ἐφεύγομεν καὶ τοῖς ἀπολειφθεῖσιν διηγούμεθα ἐλθόντες τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τῶν ἐταίρων τὴν ἀμπελομιξίαν. καὶ δὴ λαβόντες ἀμφορέας τινὰς καὶ ὑδρευσάμενοί τε ἅμα καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ οἰνισάμενοι καὶ αὐτοῦ πλησίον ἐπὶ τῆς ἡόνος ἀυλισάμενοι ἔωθεν ἀνήχθημεν οὐ σφόδρα βιαίῳ πνεύματι.

Περὶ μεσημβρίαν δὲ οὐκέτι τῆς νήσου φαινομένης ἄφνω τυφῶν ἐπιγενόμενος καὶ περιδινήσας τὴν ναῦν καὶ μετεωρίσας ὅσον ἐπὶ σταδίους τριακοσίους οὐκέτι καθῆκεν εἰς τὸ πέλαγος, ἀλλ' ἄνω μετέωρον ἐξηρητημένην ἄνεμος ἐμπεσὼν τοῖς ἰστίοις

ἅμα: at the same time

ἀμφορεύς, -έως: an amphora, jar

ἄνεμος, ὄ: wind

ἀπολείπω: to leave behind

αὐλίζομαι: to camp

ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares

βίαιος, -ος, -ον: forceful

διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full

ἐξαρτάω: to hang upon

ἐπιγίνομαι: come into being, happen

ἔωθεν: at daybreak

ἡίων, ἡόνος, ἡ: a shore, bank

ἰστίον, τό: a sail

καθήμι: to let fall

καρποφορέω: to bear fruit

καταλείπω: to abandon

μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon

μετεωρίζω: to raise

μετέωρος, -ον: raised from the ground, hanging

νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

οἰνίζομαι: to procure wine

πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea

περιδινέω: to whirl

πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing, breeze

ποταμός, ὄ: a river, stream

σφόδρα: very, much

τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α: three hundred

τυφῶν, ὄ: a whirlwind, typhoon

ὑδρεύω: to draw water

καρποφορήσειν: fut. inf. with ἔμελλον, “they were about to bear fruit”

καταλιπόντες: ao. part. of καταλείπω, “having abandoned”

ἀπολειφθεῖσιν: ao. pas. part. dat. pl. “to those left behind” (i.e., guarding the boat)

τά τε ἄλλα καὶ: “the other things, and especially...”

ἀμπελομιξίαν: “the vine-affair”

ὑδρευσάμενοί τε ἅμα καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ οἰνισάμενοι: “having watered and wined ourselves”

ἀυλισάμενοι: ao. part., “having camped”

ἀνήχθημεν: ao. pas. of ἀνα-άγω, “we put out to sea”

A wind rises which carries them into the air; they land on the Moon.

οὐκέτι τῆς νήσου φαινομένης: gen. abs., “the island no longer being visible”

μετεωρίσας: ao. part. “raising into the air”

καθῆκεν: ao. 3 s. of καθήμι (κατα-ἔημι), “set her down”

ἐξηρητημένην: perf. part. of ἐξ-ἀρτάω, modifying τὴν ναῦν, “having been suspended”

A True Story

ἔφερεν κολπώσας τὴν ὀθόνην. [10] ἑπτὰ δὲ ἡμέρας καὶ τὰς ἴσας
νύκτας ἀεροδρομήσαντες, ὀγδόῃ καθορῶμεν γῆν τινα μεγάλην ἐν
τῷ ἀέρι καθάπερ νῆσον, λαμπρὰν καὶ σφαιροειδῆ καὶ φωτὶ
μεγάλῳ καταλαμπομένην· προσενεχθέντες δὲ αὐτῇ καὶ
ὀρμισάμενοι ἀπέβημεν, ἐπισκοποῦντες δὲ τὴν χώραν εὕρισκομεν
οἰκουμένην τε καὶ γεωργουμένην. ἡμέρας μὲν οὖν οὐδὲν αὐτόθεν
καθεωρῶμεν, νυκτὸς δὲ ἐπιγενομένης ἐφαίνοντο ἡμῖν καὶ ἄλλαι
πολλαὶ νῆσοι πλησίον, αἱ μὲν μείζους, αἱ δὲ μικρότεραι, πυρὶ τὴν
χραιοὶαν προσεοικυῖαι, καὶ ἄλλη δέ τις γῆ κάτω, καὶ πόλεις ἐν αὐτῇ
καὶ ποταμοὺς ἔχουσα καὶ πελάγη καὶ ὕλας καὶ ὄρη. ταύτην οὖν
τὴν καθ' ἡμᾶς οἰκουμένην εἰκάζομεν.

ἀεροδρομέω: to traverse the air
αὐτόθεν: from the very spot
γεωργέω: to farm
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
ἐπιγίνομαι: come into being, happen
ἐπισκοπέω: to look at, inspect
καταλάμπω: to shine
κάτω: below
κολπώω: to swell, fill (with wind)
λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright
μέγας: big, great
μείζων, ον: greater
μικρότερος, -α, -ον: smaller
νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
ὀγδοος, -η, -ον: eighth
ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
οἰκουμένος: inhabited
ὀρμίζω: to moor, anchor
ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill
πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
ποταμός, ό: a river, stream
προσέοικα: to resemble
προσφέρω: to put in (a ship)
σφαιροειδής, -ές: spherical
φαίνομαι: to appear
φῶς, φωτός, τό: light
χραιοά, ἡ: color

κολπώσας τὴν ὀθόνην: “billowing out the canvas”
καθορῶμεν: vivid present, “we spot”
καταλαμπομένην: pr. part., “all lit up”
προσενεχθέντες: ao. pas. part. of προσ-φέρω, “having put in”
εὕρισκομεν οἰκουμένην τε καὶ γεωργουμένην: ind. st., “we discover that (the island) is inhabited and being farmed”
ἡμέρας μὲν...νυκτὸς δε ἐπιγενομένης: gen of time within which, “by day...as night came on”
καθεωρῶμεν: perf. 1 pl. of κατα-όράω, “we spotted”
τὴν χώραν: acc. of respect, “in color”
προσεοικυῖαι: perf. part. nom. pl. f., “resembling”
γῆ κάτω: “another land below”
ταύτην...εἰκάζομεν: “we surmised that this was the world inhabited by us”

Lucian

Greek numbers:

	Cardinal	Ordinal	Adverbial
1	<i>εἷς, μία, ἓν</i> one	<i>πρῶτος</i> first	<i>ἅπαξ</i> once
2	<i>δύο</i> two	<i>δεύτερος</i> second	<i>δίς</i> twice
3	<i>τρεις, τρία</i> three	<i>τρίτος</i> third	<i>τρίς</i> thrice
4	<i>τέτταρες, τέτταρα</i>	<i>τέταρτος</i>	<i>τετράκις</i>
5	<i>πέντε</i>	<i>πέμπτος</i>	<i>πεντάκις</i>
6	<i>ἕξ</i>	<i>ἕκτος</i>	<i>ἑξάκις</i>
7	<i>ἑπτὰ</i>	<i>ἕβδομος</i>	<i>ἑπτάκις</i>
8	<i>ὀκτώ</i>	<i>ὄγδοος</i>	<i>ὀκτάκις</i>
9	<i>ἐννέα</i>	<i>ἐνατος</i>	<i>ἐνάκις</i>
10	<i>δέκα</i>	<i>δέκατος</i>	<i>δεκάκις</i>
11	<i>ἕνδεκα</i>	<i>ἐνδέκατος</i>	<i>ἐνδεκάκις</i>
12	<i>δώδεκα</i>	<i>δωδέκατος</i>	
13	<i>τρεις καὶ δέκα</i>	<i>τρίτος καὶ δέκατος</i>	
20	<i>εἴκοσι</i>	<i>εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν</i>	<i>εἰκοσάκις</i>
21	<i>εἷς καὶ εἴκοσι</i>	<i>πρῶτος καὶ εἰκοστός</i>	<i>εἰκοσάκις ἅπαξ</i>
30	<i>τριακόνα</i>	<i>τριακοστός</i>	<i>τριακοντάκις</i>
40	<i>τετταράκοντα</i>	<i>τετταρακοστός</i>	<i>τετταρακοντάκις</i>
50	<i>πεντήκοντα</i>	<i>πεντηκοστός</i>	<i>πεντηκοντάκις</i>
60	<i>ἑξήκοντα</i>	<i>ἑξηκοστός</i>	<i>ἑξηκοντάκις</i>
70	<i>ἑβδομήκοντα</i>	<i>ἑβδομηκοστός</i>	<i>ἑβδομηκοντάκις</i>
80	<i>ὄγδοήκοντα</i>	<i>ὄγδοηκοστός</i>	<i>ὄγδοηκοντάκις</i>
90	<i>ἐνενήκοντα</i>		
100	<i>ἑκατόν</i>	<i>ἑκατοστός, -ή, -όν</i>	<i>ἑκατοντάκις</i>
200	<i>διακόσιοι, -αι, -α</i>	<i>διακοσιοστός</i>	<i>διακοσιάκις</i>
300	<i>τριακόσιοι</i>		
1,000	<i>χίλιοι, -αι, -α</i>	<i>χιλιοστός, -ή, -όν</i>	<i>χιλιάκις</i>
2,000	<i>δισχίλιοι</i>		
3,000	<i>τρισχίλιοι</i>		
10,000	<i>μύριοι, -αι, -α</i>		
20,000	<i>δισμύριοι</i> or <i>δύο μυριάδες</i>		
30,000	<i>τρισμύριοι</i> or <i>τρεις μυριάδες</i>		
50,000	<i>πεντακισμύριοι</i> or <i>πέντε μυριάδες</i>		
80,000	<i>ὀκτακισμύριοι</i> or <i>ὀκτώ μυριάδες</i>		
100,000	<i>δέκα μυριάδες</i>		
60,000,000	<i>ἑξακισχίλιοι μυριάδες</i>		

A True Story

[11] Δόξαν δὲ ἡμῖν καὶ ἔτι πορρωτέρω προελθεῖν, συνελήφθημεν τοῖς Ἴππογύποις παρ' αὐτοῖς καλουμένοις ἀπαντήσαντες. οἱ δὲ Ἴππόγυποι οὗτοί εἰσιν ἄνδρες ἐπὶ γυπῶν μεγάλων ὀχούμενοι καὶ καθάπερ ἵπποις τοῖς ὀρνέοις χρώμενοι· μεγάλοι γὰρ οἱ γῦπες καὶ ὡς ἐπίπαν τρικέφαλοι. μάθοι δ' ἂν τις τὸ μέγεθος αὐτῶν ἐντεῦθεν· νεὼς γὰρ μεγάλης φορτίδος ἱστοῦ ἕκαστον τῶν πτερῶν μακρότερον καὶ παχύτερον φέρουσι. τούτοις οὖν τοῖς Ἴππογύποις προστέτακται περιπετομένοις τὴν γῆν, εἴ τις εὐρεθείη ξένος, ἀνάγειν ὡς τὸν βασιλέα· καὶ δὴ καὶ ἡμᾶς

ἀνάγω: to lead up

ἀπαντάω: to encounter

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

γύψ, ἡ: a vulture

ἐντεῦθεν: from this

ἐπίπαν: on the whole, for the most part

θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view, behold

Ἴππόγυποι, οἱ: Vulture-cavalry

ἵππος, ὁ: a horse

ἱστός, ὁ: a mast

καλέω: to call

μανθάνω: to learn

ναῦς, νεὼς, ἡ: a ship

ὄρνεον, τό: a bird

ὀχέω: to uphold, bear

παχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick, stout

περιπέτομαι: to fly around

πόρρω: far off

προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance

προστάσσω: to place, post at

πτερόν, τό: feather

τρικέφαλος, -ον: three-headed

φορτίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a ship of burden

χράομαι: to use

δόξαν: ao. part. acc. s. neut. of *δοκέω*, used absolutely, “since it seemed a good idea”
πορρωτέρω: “further”

συνελήφθημεν: ao. pas. of *συλ-λαμβάνω* “we were captured”

τοῖς Ἴππογύποις: dat. pl. with *ἀπαντήσαντες*, “meeting up with the Horse-vultures”

ἀπαντήσαντες: ao. part. of *ἀπαντάω*

ὀχούμενοι: pr. part. pas. of *ὀχέω*, “being borne”

ὀρνέοις χρώμενοι: “using the birds”

ὡς ἐπίπαν: “for the most part”

μάθοι ἂν: pot. opt. of *μανθάνω*, “someone could learn”

ἱστοῦ: gen. of comparison after *μακρότερον καὶ παχύτερον*, “bigger than the mast of a big commercial ship”

τούτοις...προστέτακται: perf. pas. of *προσ-τάσσω*, used impersonally, “to these it has been commissioned to...”

εἴ τις εὐρεθείη ξένος, ἀνάγειν: general condition with apodosis changed to an infinitive in an indirect command after *προστέτεκται*, “if any stranger were found, to lead.” The direct version would have been *εἰάν τις εὐρέθη ξένος, ἀνάγετε*, “if any stranger is found, lead him...”

Lucian

συλλαβόντες ἀνάγουσιν ὡς αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ θεασάμενος καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς στολῆς εἰκάσας, «Ἕλληνες ἄρα,» ἔφη, «ὕμεις, ᾧ ξένοι;» συμφησάντων δέ, «Πῶς οὖν ἀφίκεσθε,» ἔφη, «τοσοῦτον ἀέρα διελθόντες;» καὶ ἡμεῖς τὸ πᾶν αὐτῷ διηγοῦμεθα· καὶ ὃς ἀρξάμενος τὸ καθ' αὐτόν ἡμῖν διεξήει, ὡς καὶ αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος ὢν τοῦνομα Ἐνδυμίων ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμετέρας γῆς καθεύδων ἀναρπασθείη ποτὲ καὶ ἀφικόμενος βασιλεύσειε τῆς χώρας· εἶναι δὲ τὴν γῆν ἐκείνην ἔλεγε

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air

ἀναρπάζω: to snatch up

ἄρα: particle introducing a question

ἄρχω: to be first, begin

βασιλεύω: to be king, to rule, reign

διέξερχομαι: to narrate

διέρχομαι: to go through

Ἕλληνες: Greek

Ἐνδυμίων, -ωνος, ὁ: Endymion

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

καθεύδω: to sleep

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name

ποτέ: at some time

πῶς: how?

στολή, ἡ: an equipment, armament

σύμφημι: to assent, agree

ἀπὸ τῆς στολῆς εἰκάσας: “surmising from our clothes”

συμφησάντων (sc. ἡμῶν): gen. abs., “with us assenting”

ἀφίκεσθε: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “how did you arrive?”

ὃς: “he”

διεξήει: impf. 3 s. of δια-εξ-έρχομαι, “narrated” (lit. “went through”)

Ἐνδυμίων: The mortal Endymion was loved by Selene, the Moon goddess, who sought for him eternal youth (or perpetual sleep).

ὡς...ἀναρπασθείη καὶ βασιλεύσειε: optatives in ind. st. after the past tense διεξήει

ἀναρπασθείη: ao. pas. 3. s. of ἀνα-ἀρπάζω, “that he had been snatched up”

εἶναι...ἔλεγε: “he said that that land was...” λέγω can take the acc. + inf. form of ind. st.

Indirect statement in secondary sequence:

One of the three main forms of indirect statement in Greek is **ὅτι** or **ὡς** + the indicative after verbs of saying, like **φημι** and **λέγω**. The mood of the direct speech can always be retained. But if the verb of saying is a past tense, the mood of the original statement can be changed to the corresponding tense of the optative. The difference between the two forms cannot be rendered in English, but the optative version is considered “less vivid” because it is not as close to the original words of the direct statement.

ἡμῖν διεξήει, ὡς ἀναρπασθείη ποτὲ καὶ βασιλεύσειε τῆς χώρας

ἡμῖν διεξήει, ὡς ἀνηρπάσθη ποτὲ καὶ ἐβασίλευσε τῆς χώρας

He explained that he had been snatched up once and made king of this land.

The original statement was **ἀνηρπάσθη ποτὲ καὶ ἐβασίλευσα**.

A True Story

τὴν ἡμῖν κάτω φαινομένην σελήνην. ἀλλὰ θαρρεῖν τε παρεκελεύετο καὶ μηδένα κίνδυνον ὑφορᾶσθαι· πάντα γὰρ ἡμῖν παρέσεσθαι ὦν δεόμεθα. [12] «Ἦν δὲ καὶ κατορθώσω,» ἔφη, «τὸν πόλεμον ὃν ἐκφέρω νῦν πρὸς τοὺς τὸν ἥλιον κατοικοῦντας, ἀπάντων εὐδαιμονέστατα παρ' ἐμοὶ καταβιώσεσθε.» καὶ ἡμεῖς ἠρόμεθα τίνες εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς διαφορᾶς· «Ὁ δὲ Φαέθων,» φησὶν, «ὁ τῶν ἐν τῷ ἡλίῳ κατοικούντων βασιλεύς - οἰκείται γὰρ δὴ κάκεινος ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ σελήνη - πολὺν ἤδη πρὸς ἡμᾶς πολεμεῖ χρόνον. ἤρξατο δὲ ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύτης· τῶν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ τῇ ἐμῇ ποτε τοὺς ἀπορωτάτους συναγαγὼν ἐβουλήθη ἀποικίαν εἰς τὸν Ἑωσφόρον στείλαι, ὄντα ἔρημον καὶ ὑπὸ μηδενὸς

αἰτία, ἡ: a cause, purpose
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement, colony
ἄπορος, -ον: without resources
ἄρχω: to begin
βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
διαφορά, ἡ: a difference
ἐκφέρω: to carry out of
ἐρωτάω: to ask, enquire
εὐδαιμόνων, -ον: blessed, fortunate
Ἑωσφόρος, ὁ: Morning Star
θαρσέω: to be of good courage, take heart

καταβιώω: to live out one's life
κατοικέω: to dwell in
κάτω: down
κίνδυνος, ὁ: a danger
παρακελεύομαι: to order
πόλεμος, ὁ: a battle, war
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
στέλλω: to set in order, establish
συνάγω: to bring together
ὑφοράω: to suspect
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon

κάτω φαινομένην: "appearing from below"

θαρρεῖν: pr. inf., an ind. command after παρεκελεύετο "he ordered us to take heart"

ὑφορᾶσθαι...παρέσεσθαι: infinitives in implied ind. st. "(saying) that no danger should be suspected, that all would be present"

παρέσεσθαι: fut. inf. of πάριμι

ἦν (=ἐάν) κατορθώσω (ao. subj.): fut. more vivid condition "If I succeed...."

καταβιώσεσθε: fut. of καταβιώω, "you will live out your life"

τίνες εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι: ind. quest. with optative in sec. sequence after ἠρόμεθα, ao. of ἐρωτάω, "we asked who the enemy were"

οἰκείται: pr. pas. "is inhabited"

ἤρξατο: ao. of ἀρχω, "it started"

τῶν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ τῇ ἐμῇ: "of those in my empire"

συναγαγὼν: ao. part. of συν-άγω, "having gathered"

ἐβουλήθη στείλαι: "I wished to send"

ὄντα ἔρημον: modifying Ἑωσφόρον, "since it was empty"

Lucian

κατοικούμενον· ὁ τοίνυν Φαέθων φθονήσας ἐκώλυσε τὴν ἀποικίαν κατὰ μέσον τὸν πόρον ἀπαντήσας ἐπὶ τῶν Ἴππομυρμήκων. τότε μὲν οὖν νικηθέντες - οὐ γὰρ ἤμεν ἀντίπαλοι τῇ παρασκευῇ - ἀνεχωρήσαμεν· νῦν δὲ βούλομαι αὐθις ἐξενεγκεῖν τὸν πόλεμον καὶ ἀποστεῖλαι τὴν ἀποικίαν. ἦν οὖν ἐθέλητε, κοινωνήσατέ μοι τοῦ στόλου, γῦπας δὲ ὑμῖν ἐγὼ παρέξω τῶν βασιλικῶν ἓνα ἐκάστῳ καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ὄπλισιν· αὐριον δὲ ποιησόμεθα τὴν ἔξοδον.»
«Οὕτως,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «γιγνέσθω, ἐπειδὴ σοι δοκεῖ.»

ἀναχωρέω: to go back
ἀντίπαλος, -ον: evenly matched
ἀπαντάω: to encounter
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement, colony
ἀποστέλλω: to send out
αὐριον: tomorrow
βασιλικός, -ή, -όν: royal, kingly
γύψ, ἡ: a vulture
ἐθέλω: to wish
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each
ἐκφέρω: to carry out
ἔξοδος, -ον: a departure, foray

Ἴππομύρμηξ, -ηκος, ὁ: a horse-ant
κοινωνέω: to participate
κωλύω: to hinder, prevent
νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
ὄπλασις, -εως, ἡ: an equipment, arming
παρασκευή, ἡ: preparation
παρέχω: to furnish, provide
πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, war
πόρος, ὁ: a way, passage
στόλος, ὁ: a mission
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon
φθονέω: to be jealous

φθονήσας: ao. part., “since he was jealous”
ἀπαντήσας: ao. part., “by opposing”
ἐπὶ τῶν Ἴππομυρμήκων: “at the head of his Horse-ants”
νικηθέντες: ao. pas. part. of νικάω, “having been victorious”
ἀνεχωρήσαμεν: ao. of ἀναχωρέω, “we retreated”
ἐξενεγκεῖν: ao. inf. of ἐκ-φέρω, “to carry out”
ἦν ἐθέλητε: fut. more vivid cond., “if you wish...”
κοινωνήσατέ: ao. imper. “join my expedition”
παρέξω: fut. of παρα-έχω: “I will provide”
τῶν βασιλικῶν ἓνα: “one of my royal vultures”
οὕτως γιγνέσθω: 3. s. imper., “let it be so”
ἐπειδὴ σοι δοκεῖ: “since it seems good to you”

ἴημι, ἦσω, ἦκα, εἶκα, εἶμαι, εἶθην to release, to let go

This troublesome -μι verb originally had a stem with a consonant which dropped out very early and was never written using the Greek alphabet (ϣε). When the consonant dropped out all that was left was a vowel with rough breathing (ἐ). The simple stem was used for the aorist system; reduplicated stems were used for the present tense system (ϣιϣε=ἴε) and the perfect system (ϣεϣε=εἶ). Compare with δίδωμι, ἔδωκα and δέδωκα for the verb δίδωμι. ἴημι is found usually with prefixes like ἀπό, πρό, κατά, ἀνά, ἐπί, etc., producing compounds like ἀφίημι, προῖημι, καθίημι, ἀνίημι, ἐφίημι. Its basic meaning is “to release, to let go,” hence in compounds “to send away, forth, down, up, upon,” etc.

A True Story

[13] Τότε μὲν οὖν παρ' αὐτῷ ἐστιαθέντες ἐμείναμεν, ἔωθεν δὲ διαναστάντες ἐτασσόμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ σκοποὶ ἐσήμαινον πλησίον εἶναι τοὺς πολεμίους. τὸ μὲν οὖν πλήθος τῆς στρατιᾶς δέκα μυριάδες ἐγένοντο ἄνευ τῶν σκευοφόρων καὶ τῶν μηχανοποιῶν καὶ τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῶν ξένων συμμάχων· τούτων δὲ ὀκτακισμύριοι μὲν ἦσαν οἱ Ἴππόγυποι, δισμύριοι δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τῶν Λαχανοπτέρων. ὄρνεον δὲ καὶ τοῦτό ἐστι μέγιστον, ἀντὶ τῶν πτερῶν λαχάνοις πάντη λάσιον, τὰ δὲ ὠκύπτερα ἔχει θριδακίνης φύλλοις μάλιστα προσεικότα. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις οἱ Κεγχροβόλοι τετάχατο καὶ οἱ Σκοροδομάχοι. ἦλθον δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς

ἄνευ: without + gen.

δέκα: ten

διανίσταμαι: to get up, arise

δισμύριοι: twenty thousand

ἔωθεν: at daybreak

θριδάκινος: of lettuce

Ἴππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry

Κεγχροβόλοι, οἱ: Millet-throwers

λάσιος, -ον: hairy, shaggy

λάχανον, -ου, τό: vegetables, greens

Λαχανοπτερός, ὁ: Grass-plumer

μένω: to stay

μηχανοποιός, ὁ: an engineer

μυριάς, -άδος, ἡ: a thousand

ξενόω: to make one's friend and guest

ὀκτακισμύριοι: eighty thousand

ὄρνεον, τό: a bird

πάντη: on every side

πεζός, ὁ: a footsoldier

πλήθος, -εος, τό: a great number

προσέοικα: to be like, resemble

πτερόν, τό: a feather

σημαίνω: to indicate, signal

σκευοφόρος, -ου, ὁ: a porter

σκοπός, ὁ: a lookout, watcher

Σκοροδομάχοι, οἱ: Garlic-fighters

στρατία, ἡ: an army

σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally

τάσσω: to arrange, put in order

φύλλον, τό: a leaf

ὠκύπτερος, -ον: swift-winged

They decide to join the Moon people and their allies in a war against the Sun. The various hosts are described.

ἐστιαθέντες: ao. pas. part. of ἐστιάω, "having been treated as guests"

διαναστάντες: ao. part. of δια-ανα-ἵστημι, "having risen"

ἐτασσόμεθα: impf. mid., "we arranged ourselves"

εἶναι τοὺς πολεμίους: ind. st. after ἐσήμαινον, "that the enemy was near"

δέκα μυριάδες ἄνευ τῶν ...: "100,000 without auxiliaries and allies," the fantastic numbers echo Herodotus' account of the Persian host.

δισμύριοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῶν Λαχανοπτέρων: "20,000 riding on Grass-plumers."

ἀντὶ τῶν πτερῶν: "instead of plumage"

τὰ ὠκύπτερα: "wing-feathers"

ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις: "next to these"

τετάχατο: plupf 3 pl. mid., "had arrayed themselves"

ἦλθον δὲ αὐτῷ: "came with him (i.e. Endymion)"

ἄρκτου σύμμαχοι, τρισμύριοι μὲν Ψυλλοτοξόται, πεντακισμύριοι δὲ Ἄνεμοδρόμοι· τούτων δὲ οἱ μὲν Ψυλλοτοξόται ἐπὶ ψυλλῶν μεγάλων ἰππάζονται, ὅθεν καὶ τὴν προσηγορίαν ἔχουσιν· μέγεθος δὲ τῶν ψυλλῶν ὅσον δώδεκα ἐλέφαντες· οἱ δὲ Ἄνεμοδρόμοι πεζοὶ μὲν εἰσιν, φέρονται δὲ ἐν τῷ ἀέρι ἄνευ πτερῶν· ὁ δὲ τρόπος τῆς φορᾶς τοιόσδε. χιτῶνας ποδήρεις ὑπεζωσμένοι κολπώσαντες αὐτοὺς τῷ ἀνέμῳ καθάπερ ἰστία φέρονται ὥσπερ τὰ σκάφη. τὰ πολλὰ δ' οἱ τοιοῦτοι ἐν ταῖς μάχαις πελτασταί εἰσιν. ἐλέγοντο δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ὑπὲρ τὴν Καππαδοκίαν ἀστέρων ἤξειν Στρουθοβάλανοι μὲν ἑπτακισμύριοι, Ἴππογέρανοι δὲ πεντακισχίλιοι. τούτους ἐγὼ οὐκ ἔθεασάμην· οὐ γὰρ ἀφίκοντο.

Ἄνεμοδρόμοι, οἱ: Wind-walkers

ἄρκτος, ἡ: a bear

ἀστήρ, -έρος, ὁ: a star

δώδεκα: twelve

ἐλέφας, -αντος: an elephant

ἑπτακισμύριοι, -αι, -α: seventy thousand

ἦκω: to come

θεάομαι: to look at, see

ἰππάζομαι: to drive horses and chariot

Ἴππογέρανοι: crane-cavalry

ἰστίον, τό: a sail

καθάπερ: just as

Καππαδοκίος, -α, -ον: Cappadocian

κολπῶω: to swell, to fill (with wind)

μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight

ὅθεν: whence

πεζός, ὁ: a footsoldier

πελταστής, -οῦ, ὁ: one who bears a light shield

πεντακισμύριοι, -αι: five times ten thousand

πεντακισχίλιοι, -αι: five thousand

ποδήρης, -ες: reaching to the feet

προσηγορία, ἡ: a name

πτερόν, τό: feather

σκάφος, -εος, τό: (the hull of) a ship

Στρουθοβάλανοι, οἱ: Sparrow-acorns

τρिसμύριοι, -αι, -α: three times ten thousand

τρόπος, ὁ: a turn, course

ὑποζώννυμι: to undergird

φορά, ἡ: a carrying

χιτῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: a tunic

ψύλλα, -ης, ἡ: a flea

Ψυλλοτοξότης, -ου, ὁ: a flea-archer

ἀπὸ τῆς ἄρκτου: “from the Bear” i.e. the constellation Ursa Major

πεζοὶ μὲν...φέρονται δὲ: “while foot-soldiers, yet are carried...”

ὑπεζωσμένοι: perf. pas. part., “having been girdled”

ὥσπερ τὰ σκάφη: “like sails”

τὰ πολλὰ: acc. of resp., “for the most part”

ἀφίκοντο: ao. 3 pl. of ἀφικνέομαι, “they arrived”

A True Story

Uses of the subjunctive and optative in subordinate clauses:

The subjunctive and optative are used in various kinds of subordinate clauses that do not make a statement about a specific state of affairs (as opposed to the indicative). The subjunctive, often with **ἄν**, is used when the main verb is a primary tense: either present, future or present perfect. The optative, never with **ἄν**, is used when the main verb is a secondary tense. Note that the subjunctive, which has primary endings, is used with tenses that have primary endings; just as the optative, which itself has secondary endings, is used with those tenses that have secondary endings. This simple fact should help you keep the sequence of moods straight.

1. In purpose clauses, the particles **ἵνα**, **ὅπως**, and **ὥς** are used with the subjunctive in primary sequence, optative in secondary sequence:

ἔρχεται ἵνα πειθῆ τοὺς ἄνδρας: “he is going in order to persuade the men.”
ἦλθεν ἵνα πείθῃ τοὺς ἄνδρας: “he went in order to persuade the men.”

2. With verbs of fearing, **μὴ** plus the subjunctive is used in primary sequence, optative in secondary sequence:

φοβοῦμαι μὴ ἀφίκηται ἡ στρατία: “I fear that the army will come”
ἐφοβείτο μὴ ἡ στρατία ἀφίκοιτο: “He feared that the army would come”

3. Indefinite clauses use **ἄν** plus the subjunctive in primary sequence, optative without **ἄν** in secondary sequence:

ὅστις ἂν τοῦτο ποιῆ μῶρος ἐστίν: “whoever does this is a fool.”
μένομεν ἕως ἂν ἔλθῃ: “we are waiting until he comes.”
ὅστις τοῦτο ποιῶν μῶρος ἦν: “whoever did this was a fool.”
ἐμένομεν ἕως ἔλθοι: “we waited until such time as he would come.”

4. Analogous to the previous type of clause is the use of the subjunctive with **ἄν** to express a general condition in present time, optative without **ἄν** in past time:

ἐὰν ἔλθωσι, σῶοι ἔσμεν: “If ever they go, we are safe”
εἰ ἔλθοιεν, σῶοι ἦσαν: “if they ever came, we were safe”

Distinguish these from the future more vivid and future less vivid conditions:

ἐὰν ἔλθωσι, σῶοι ἐσόμεθα: “If they go, we will be safe”
εἰ ἔλθοιεν, σῶοι ἂν εἶεν: “If they were to go, we would be safe”

5. For the optative in indirect statement, for which there is no parallel with the subjunctive, see above p. 22.

διόπερ οὐδὲ γράψαι τὰς φύσεις αὐτῶν ἐτόλμησα· τεράστια γὰρ καὶ ἄπιστα περὶ αὐτῶν ἐλέγετο.

[14] Αὕτη μὲν ἡ τοῦ Ἐνδυμίωνος δύναμις ἦν. σκευὴ δὲ πάντων ἡ αὐτή· κράνη μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν κνάμων, μεγάλοι γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῖς οἱ κύαμοι καὶ καρτεροί· θώρακες δὲ φολιδωτοὶ πάντες θέρμιννοι· τὰ γὰρ λέπη τῶν θέρμων συρράπτοντες ποιοῦνται θώρακας, ἄρρηκτον δὲ ἐκεῖ γίνεται τοῦ θέρμου τὸ λέπος ὡσπερ κέρας· ἀσπίδες δὲ καὶ ξίφη οἶα τὰ Ἑλληνικά. [15] ἐπειδὴ δὲ καιρὸς ἦν, ἐτάξαντο ὧδε· τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν κέρας εἶχον οἱ Ἴππόγυποι καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς ἀρίστους περὶ αὐτὸν ἔχων· καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐν τούτοις ἦμεν· τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον οἱ Λαχανόπτεροι· τὸ μέσον δὲ

ἄπιστος: not to be trusted
 ἄριστος: best
 ἄρρηκτος, -ον: unbroken
 ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a round shield
 βασιλεὺς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
 γράφω: to write
 δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, strength
 ἐκεῖ: there, in that place
 Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Hellenic, Greek
 Ἐνδυμίων, -ωνος, ὁ: Endymion
 εὐώνυμος, ἡ: on the left
 θέρμις, -η, -ον: of lupines
 θέρμος, ὁ: a lupine
 θώραξ, -ακος, ὁ: a breastplate
 Ἴππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
 καιρός, ὁ: the proper time

καρτερός, -ά, -όν: harder
 κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal
 κράνος, -εος, τό: a helmet
 κύαμος, ὁ: a bean
 Λαχανόπτερος, ὁ: Grass-plumer
 λέπος, -εος, τό: rind, husk, scale
 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
 ξίφος, -εος, τό: a sword
 σκευή, ἡ: equipment
 συρράπτω: to sew or stitch together
 τεράστιος, -ον: monstrous
 τολμάω: to undertake, take heart
 φολιδωτός, -ή, -όν: of scales
 φύσις, ἡ: a nature, condition
 ὧδε: thus

γράφαι: ao. inf. of γράφω, “to write”

τεράστια καὶ ἄπιστα ἐλέγετο: After all this fantastic account, the author demures to report anything he did not see himself, for what he heard about these creatures is “unbelievable.”

ἀπὸ τῶν κνάμων: “helmets from beans”

φολιδωτοὶ θέρμιννοι: “overlapping legume skins”

τὰ λέπη: “the husks”

συρράπτοντες: pr. part. of συν-ράπτω, “stitching together”

ἐτάξαντο: ao. mid. of τάσσω, “they arranged themselves”

δεξιὸν κέρας: “right wing” (lit. “horn”)

ἐν τούτοις: “among these”

τὸ εὐώνυμον: “the left wing”

A True Story

οἱ σύμμαχοι ὡς ἐκάστοις ἐδόκει. τὸ δὲ πεζὸν ἦσαν μὲν ἀμφὶ τὰς ἑξακισχιλίας μυριάδας, ἐτάχθησαν δὲ οὕτως. ἀράχνη παρ' αὐτοῖς πολλοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι γίνονται, πολλὴ τῶν Κυκλάδων νήσων ἕκαστος μεῖζων. τούτοις προσέταξεν διυφῆναι τὸν μεταξὺ τῆς σελήνης καὶ τοῦ Ἑωσφόρου ἀέρα. ὡς δὲ τάχιστα ἐξεργάσαντο καὶ πεδίον ἐποίησαν, ἐπὶ τούτου παρέταξε τὸ πεζόν· ἠγείτο δὲ αὐτῶν Νυκτερίων ὁ Εὐδιάνακτος τρίτος αὐτός.

[16] Τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον εἶχον οἱ Ἴππομύρμηκες καὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς ὁ Φαέθων· θηρία δὲ ἐστὶ μέγιστα, ὑπόπτερα, τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν μύρμηξι προσοικότα πλὴν τοῦ μεγέθους· ὁ γὰρ μέγιστος αὐτῶν καὶ δίπλεθρος ἦν. ἐμάχοντο δὲ

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
ἀράχνης, -ου, ὁ: a spider
δίπλεθρος, -ον: two hundred feet
διυφαίνω: to fill up by weaving
ἑξακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α: six thousand
ἐξεργάζομαι: to work out, finish off
εὐώνυμος: on the left
Ἑωσφόρος, ὁ: Morning Star
ἠγέομαι: to lead
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal
Ἴππομύρμηξ, -ηκος, ὁ: a horse-ant
Κυκλάδες, αἱ: the Cyclades
μεταξύ: between + gen.
μυριάς, -άδος, ἡ: a thousand

μύρμηξ, -ηκος, ὁ: an ant
νυκτέριος, -α, -ον: by night
παρατάσσω: to place side by side, draw up
in battle-order
πεδίον, τό: a plain, flat
πεζός, ὁ: a footsoldier
προσέοικα: to be like, resemble
προστάσσω: to place, post at
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally
ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: quick, swift
τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third
ὑπόπτερος, -ον: winged
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon

ὡς ἐκάστοις ἐδόκει: “arrayed however they wanted”

τὸ δὲ πεζὸν: “as for the infantry”

ἀμφὶ τὰς ἑξακισχιλίας μυριάδας: “around 60,000,000”

ἐτάχθησαν: ao. pas. of τάσσω, “they were arranged”

Κυκλάδων νήσων: The Cyclades islands, a circular group of islands between Crete and mainland Greece.

προσέταξεν: ao. act., “he commissioned”

διυφῆναι: ao. pas. inf. of δια-ύφαίνω, “to weave”

ὡς τάχιστα: “as quickly as possible”

ἠγείτο: impf of ἠγέομαι, “he led”

Νυκτερίων ὁ Εὐδιάνακτος: “Owlett, son of Fairweather”

τρίτος αὐτός: “himself the third,” i.e., along with two others

τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν μύρμηξι προσοικότα: “very similar to our ants”

οὐ μόνον οἱ ἐπ' αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτοὶ μάλιστα τοῖς κέρασιν· ἐλέγοντο δὲ οὗτοι εἶναι ἀμφὶ τὰς πέντε μυριάδας. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ αὐτῶν ἐτάχθησαν οἱ Ἄεροκῶνωπες, ὄντες καὶ οὗτοι ἀμφὶ τὰς πέντε μυριάδας, πάντες τοξόται κῶνωψι μεγάλοις ἐποχούμενοι· μετὰ δὲ τούτους οἱ Ἄεροκόρδακες, ψιλοὶ τε ὄντες καὶ πεζοί, πλὴν μάχιμοί γε καὶ οὗτοι· πόρρωθεν γὰρ ἐσφενδόνων ραφανίδας ὑπερμεγέθεις, καὶ ὁ βληθεὶς οὐδ' ἐπ' ὀλίγον ἀντέχειν ἐδύνατο, ἀπέθνησκε δὲ δυσωδίας τινὸς τῷ τραύματι ἐγγινομένης· ἐλέγοντο δὲ χρίειν τὰ βέλη μαλάχης ἰῶ. ἐχόμενοι δὲ αὐτῶν ἐτάχθησαν οἱ Καυλομύκητες, ὀπλίται ὄντες καὶ ἀγχέμαχοι,

ἀγχέμαχος, -ον: fighting hand to hand
 Ἄεροκόρδακες, οἱ: Sky-dancers
 Ἄεροκῶνωπες, οἱ: Air-gnat
 ἀντέχω: to hold against
 ἀποθνήσκω: to die
 βάλλω: to throw
 βέλος, -εος, τό: a missile, shot
 δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side
 δύναμαι: to be able
 ἐγγίνομαι: to be born, bred in
 ἐποχέομαι: to be carried upon, ride upon
 ἰός, ὄ: poison
 Καυλομύκητες, οἱ: Stalk-mushrooms
 κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal
 κῶνωψ, -ωπος, ὄ: a mosquito

μαλάχη, ἡ: the mallow plant
 μάχιμος, -ος, -ον: fit for battle, warlike
 μυριάς, -άδος, ἡ: a great number, 10,000
 ὀπλίτης, -ου, ὄ: heavy-armed soldier
 πεζός, ὄ: a footsoldier
 πόρρωθεν: from afar
 ραφανίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a radish
 σφενδονάω: to sling, to use the sling
 τάσσω: to appoint, assign
 τοξότης, -ου, -α, ὄ: a Bowman, archer
 τραῦμα, -ατος, τό: a wound, injury
 ὑπερμεγέθης: very large
 χρίω: to anoint
 ψιλός: bare, light-armed

οἱ ἐπ' αὐτῶν: "the ones riding them"

ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτοὶ: "but they themselves fight"

ἐποχούμενοι: "riding on"

ψιλοὶ τε ὄντες καὶ πεζοί: "light-armed and on foot"

πλὴν μάχιμοί γε: "but fierce indeed"

ἐσφενδόνων: impf. of σφενδονάω, "they were slinging"

ραφανίδας ὑπερμεγέθεις: "huge radishes"

βληθεὶς: ao. pas. of βάλλω, "anyone struck"

ἀπέθνησκε: impf. of customary action, "he would die"

δυσωδίας τινὸς...ἐγγινομένης: gen. abs., "a foul odor being born in"

μαλάχης ἰῶ: dat. of means, "with the poison of mallow," which was thought to have a healing power

ἐχόμενοι αὐτῶν: "staying beside them"

ἐτάχθησαν: ao. pas. of τάσσω, "they were stationed"

A True Story

τὸ πλῆθος μύριοι· ἐκλήθησαν δὲ Καυλομύκητες, ὅτι ἀσπίσι μὲν μυκητίναις ἐχρῶντο, δόρασι δὲ καυλίνοις τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν ἀσπαράγων. πλησίον δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ Κυνοβάλανοι ἕστησαν, οὓς ἔπεμψαν αὐτῷ οἱ τὸν Σείριον κατοικοῦντες, πεντακισχίλιοι, ἄνδρες κυνοπρόσωποι ἐπὶ βαλάνων πτερωτῶν μαχόμενοι. ἐλέγοντο δὲ κἀκείνῳ ὑστερίζειν τῶν συμμάχων οὓς τε ἀπὸ τοῦ Γαλαξίου μετεπέμπετο σφενδονήτας καὶ οἱ Νεφελοκένταυροι. ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνοι μὲν τῆς μάχης ἤδη κεκριμένης ἀφίκοντο, ὡς μήποτε ὤφελον· οἱ σφενδονῆται δὲ οὐδὲ ὄλως παρεγένοντο, διόπερ φασὶν ὕστερον αὐτοῖς ὀργισθέντα τὸν Φαέθοντα πυρπολῆσαι τὴν χώραν.

ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a round shield
ἀσπάραγος, ἡ: asparagus
βάλανος, ἡ: an acorn
Γαλαξίας, -ου, ὁ: the Milky Way
δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: a spear
καλέω: to call, summon
καύλιος, -η, -ον: made of a stalk
Καυλομύκητες, οἱ: Stalk-mushrooms
κρίνω: to decide
Κυνοβάλανοι, οἱ: Dog-acorns
κυνοπρόσωπος, -ον: dog-faced
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat
μεταπέμπω: to send after
μυκητίνη, ἡ: a mushroom
μυρίος, -ος, -ον: ten thousand

Νεφελοκένταυρος, ὁ: a cloud-centaur
ὄλως: completely
ὀργίζω: to make angry, irritate
ὀφείλω: to owe, have to pay for
παραγίνομαι: to be present, attend
πεντακισχίλιοι, -αι: five thousand
πλήθος, -εος, τό: a great number
πτερωτός, -ή, -όν: feathered
πυρπολέω: to devastate with fire
Σείριος, ὁ: the Dog Star
σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally
σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὁ: a slinger
ὑστερίζω: to come after, come later
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon

τὸ πλῆθος: acc. of respect, “in number”
ἐκλήθησαν: ao. pas. 3 pl. of καλέω, “they were called”
μυκητίναις, καυλίνοις: dat. after ἐχρῶντο, “they used mushrooms, stalks”
ἐχρῶντο: impf. of χράομαι
ἀσπίσι, δόρασι: “for shields,” “for spears”
ἕστησαν: ao. intr. of ἵστημι, “they stood”
οὓς ἔπεμψαν: “whom they sent”
κἀκείνῳ (= καὶ ἐκείνῳ): “also to that one”
οἱ μὲν: (sc. οἱ μὲν): “some of his allies”
μετεπέμπετο: impf. mid. “whom he sent for”
ἀφίκοντο: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “they arrived”
ὡς μήποτε (sc. ἀφίκεσθαι) ὤφελον: past unfulfilled wish, “Would that they had not (arrived)!”
ὀργισθέντα: ao. part. pas. acc. s. of ὀργίζομαι, modifying Φαέθοντα, “being made angry”
Φαέθοντα πυρπολῆσαι: ind. statement after φασὶν, “that Phaethon burned...”

[17] Τοιαύτη μὲν καὶ ὁ Φαέθων ἐπήει παρασκευῆ. συμμίζαντες δὲ ἐπειδὴ τὰ σημεῖα ἦρθη καὶ ὠγκήσαντο ἐκατέρων οἱ ὄνοι - τούτοις γὰρ ἀντὶ σαλπιστῶν χρῶνται - ἐμάχοντο. καὶ τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἡλιωτῶν αὐτίκα ἔφυγεν οὐδ' εἰς χεῖρας δεξιόμενον τοὺς Ἴππογύπους, καὶ ἡμεῖς εἰπόμεθα κτείνοντες· τὸ δεξιὸν δὲ αὐτῶν ἐκράτει τοῦ ἐπὶ τῷ ἡμετέρῳ εὐωνύμου, καὶ ἐπεξήλθον οἱ Ἄεροκῶνωπες διώκοντες ἄχρι πρὸς τοὺς πεζούς. ἐνταῦθα δὲ κάκεινων ἐπιβοηθούντων ἔφυγον ἐγκλίναντες, καὶ μάλιστα ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο τοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ σφῶν νενικημένους.

Ἄεροκῶνωψ, ὄ: a Sky-mosquito
 αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, feel
 ἀραρίσκω: to fasten, make ready
 ἄχρι: all the way
 δέχομαι: to take, accept, receive
 διώκω: to pursue, chase
 ἐγκλίνω: to bend in, incline
 ἐκάτερος: each of two, either, each singly
 ἐνταῦθα: here, there
 ἐπεξέρχομαι: to go out against, march on
 ἐπιβοηθέω: to come to aid, to help
 ἔπομαι: to follow
 εὐώνυμος, ἦ: on the left

Ἡλιώτης, ὄ: Sunite
 Ἴππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
 κρατέω: to be strong, mighty, powerful
 κτείνω: to kill, slay
 νικάω: to conquer, defeat, prevail
 ὄγκάομαι: to bray
 ὄνος, ὄ: an ass
 παρασκευή, ἦ: preparation
 πεζός, ὄ: a footsoldier
 σαλπίστος, ὄ: a trumpeter
 σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark
 συμμίσγνυμι: to mix together, commingle
 φεύγω: to flee

The signals are given and the forces join battle. The sun people are routed, but when reinforcements arrive, the moon people are beaten back.

ἐπήει: impf. of ἐπέρχομαι, "he was attacking"
 ἦρθη: ao. pas. of ἀραρίσκω, "were made ready"
 ὠγκήσαντο: ao. mid. of ὀγκέω, "brayed"
 ἔφυγεν: ao. of φεύγω
 δεξιόμενον: ao. part. nom. s. of δέχομαι, "receiving into hands," i.e., before making contact
 εἰπόμεθα: impf. of ἔπομαι, "we followed"
 ἐκράτει: impf. of κρατέω, "their right defeated our left"
 ἐπεξήλθον: ao. of ἐπι-ἐκ-έρχομαι, "they advanced"
 κάκεινων (=καὶ ἐκείνων) ἐπιβοηθούντων: gen. abs., "with these (the infantry) coming to the rescue"
 ἐγκλίναντες: ao. part. of ἐγκλίνω, "breaking"
 ἦσθοντο: ao. of αἰσθάνομαι, "they perceived"
 νενικημένους: perf. part. in ind. st. after ἦσθοντο, "that those on their left had been defeated"

A True Story

τῆς δὲ τροπῆς λαμπρᾶς γεγενημένης πολλοὶ μὲν ζῶντες ἠλίσκοντο, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἀνηροῦντο, καὶ τὸ αἷμα ἔρρει πολὺ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν νεφῶν, ὥστε αὐτὰ βάπτεσθαι καὶ ἐρυθρὰ φαίνεσθαι, οἷα παρ' ἡμῖν δυομένου τοῦ ἡλίου φαίνεται, πολὺ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν γῆν κατέσταζεν, ὥστε με εἰκάζειν μὴ ἄρα τοιούτου τινὸς καὶ πάλαι ἄνω γενομένου Ὅμηρος ὑπέλαβεν αἵματι ὕσαι τὸν Δία ἐπὶ τῷ τοῦ Σαρπηδόνοσ θανάτῳ.

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
 ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, conquered
 βάπτω: to dip in water
 δύομαι: (of the sun) to set
 εἰκάζω: to make like, portray
 ἐρυθρός, -ά, -όν: red
 Ζεὺς, Διός, ὁ: Zeus
 θάνατος, ὁ: death
 καταστάζω: to let fall in drops

λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, radiant
 νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
 Ὅμηρος, -ου, ὁ: Homer
 πάλαι: long ago
 Σαρπηδών, -όνος, ὁ: Sarpedon
 τροπή, ἡ: a turning, victory
 ὑπολαμβάνω: to believe, suppose
 ὕω: to rain
 φαίνομαι: to appear, seem

τῆς δὲ τροπῆς λαμπρᾶς γεγενημένης: gen. abs., “the victory being brilliant”
 ἠλίσκοντο: impf. of ἀλίσκομαι, “were captured”
 ἀνηροῦντο: impf. of ἀναιρέω, “were slain”
 ἔρρει impf. of ῥέω, “was flowing”
 ὥστε βάπτεσθαι...φαίνεσθαι: result clauses
 δυομένου τοῦ ἡλίου: gen abs., “the sun setting”
 κατέσταζεν: impf., “dripped down”
 ὥστε με εἰκάζειν: result clause, “so that I speculated...”
 μὴ ἄρα...ὑπέλαβεν: indirect question after εἰκάζειν, “whether Homer supposed”
 τοιούτου τινὸς...γενομένου: gen. abs., “when such a thing happened”
 ὕσαι τὸν Δία: ind. st. after ὑπέλαβεν, “supposed that Zeus was causing rain...”
 Zeus’ weeping blood at the death of Sarpedon occurs in Iliad 16.

τάσσω (Att. τάττω): “I arrange”

Verbs ending in a glottal stem (κ, γ, χ) often form their present stem with a -σσω (Attic -ττω): φυλλάττω (φυλακ), ταρράττω (ταρραγ), αἰνίσσομαι (αἰνιγ), πράσσω (πραγ). The conjugation of τάσσω is typical:
 imperfect: ἔτασσον/ἔταττον: they were arranging

fut.	τάξω: I will arrange
ao. act.	ἔταξε: he arranged
ao. mid.	ἐτάξαντο: they arranged themselves
ao. pas.	ἐτάχθησαν: they were arranged
perf. mid.	τέταγμαi: I arranged myself/ was arranged
plupf. mid/pas:	(ἐ)τετάχατο: they had arranged themselves/ had been arranged

[18] Ἀναστρέψαντες δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς διώξεως δύο τρόπαια ἐστήσαμεν, τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀραχνίων τῆς πεζομαχίας, τὸ δὲ τῆς ἀερομαχίας ἐπὶ τῶν νεφῶν. ἄρτι δὲ τούτων γινομένων ἠγγέλλοντο ὑπὸ τῶν σκοπῶν οἱ Νεφελοκένταυροι προσελαύνοντες, οὓς ἔδει πρὸ τῆς μάχης ἐλθεῖν τῷ Φαέθοντι. καὶ δὴ ἐφαίνοντο προσιόντες, θέαμα παραδοξότατον, ἐξ ἵππων πτερωτῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων συγκείμενοι· μέγεθος δὲ τῶν μὲν ἀνθρώπων ὅσον τοῦ Ῥοδίων κολοσσοῦ ἐξ ἡμισείας ἐς τὸ ἄνω, τῶν δὲ ἵππων ὅσον νεῶς μεγάλης φορτίδος. τὸ μέντοι πλῆθος αὐτῶν οὐκ ἀνέγραψα, μὴ τῷ καὶ ἄπιστον δόξῃ - τοσοῦτον ἦν. ἠγείτο δὲ

ἀγγέλλω: to bear a message
 ἀερομαχία, ἡ: an air battle
 ἀναγράφω: to write down, record
 ἀναστρέφω: to turn back, return
 ἄπιστος: unbelievable
 ἀράχνιον, τό: a spider's web
 ἄρτι: just then
 διώξις, -εως, ἡ: chase, pursuit
 θέαμα, -ατος, τό: a sight, spectacle
 ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, mare
 κολοσσός, ὁ: a colossus
 μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight
 ναῦς, νεῶς, ἡ: a ship
 Νεφελοκένταυρος, ὁ: a Cloud-centaur

νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
 παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical
 πεζομαχία, ἡ: an infantry battle
 πλῆθος, -εος, τό: size
 προσελαύνω: to drive, advance
 πτερωτός, -ή, -όν: feathered
 Ῥόδιος, -α, -ον: Rhodian, from Rhodes
 σκοπός, ὁ: a lookout, watcher
 σύγκειμαι: to combine
 τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο: so large, so much
 τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy
 φορτίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a ship of burden,
 merchantman

ἐστήσαμεν: ao. act. of ἵστημι, “we set up”

δύο τρόπαια: “two trophies.” Trophies were piles of weapons that marked the turning point (τρόπος) of the battle.

ἄρτι δὲ τούτων γινομένων: gen. abs., “these things were just happening”

ἠγγέλλοντο: impf. pas. of ἀγγέλλω, “they were reported to be advancing”

οὓς ἔδει...ἐλθεῖν: “for whom it was necessary to come”

προσιόντες: pr. part of προσέρχομαι after ἐφαίνοντο, “they appeared to be approaching”

συγκείμενοι: “composed”

ὅσον τοῦ Ῥοδίων κολοσσοῦ: “as big as the Colossus of Rhodes,” an enormous statue straddling the entrance to the harbor at Rhodes, one of the ancient wonders of the world.

τῶν μὲν ἀνθρώπων: “of the human part”

ἐξ ἡμισείας: “from the waist”

ἀνέγραψα: ao. 1. s. of ἀναγράφω

μὴ τῷ (=τινι)...δόξῃ: neg. purpose clause, “lest it seem to anyone”

A True Story

αὐτῶν ὁ ἐκ τοῦ ζῳδιακοῦ τοξότης. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθοντο τοὺς φίλους νενικημένους, ἐπὶ μὲν τὸν Φαέθοντα ἔπεμπον ἀγγελίαν αὐθις ἐπιέναι, αὐτοὶ δὲ διαταξάμενοι τεταραγμένοι ἐπιπίπτουσι τοῖς Σεληνίταις, ἀτάκτως περὶ τὴν διώξιν καὶ τὰ λάφυρα διεσκεδασμένοι· καὶ πάντα μὲν τρέπουσιν, αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν βασιλέα καταδιώκουσι πρὸς τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὰ πλεῖστα τῶν ὀρνέων αὐτοῦ κτείνουσιν· ἀνέσπασαν δὲ καὶ τὰ τρόπαια καὶ κατέδραμον ἅπαν τὸ ὑπὸ τῶν ἀραχνῶν πεδίον ὑφασμένον, ἐμὲ δὲ καὶ δύο τινὰς τῶν ἐταίρων ἐζώγρησαν. ἤδη δὲ παρῆν καὶ ὁ Φαέθων καὶ αὐθις ἄλλα τρόπαια ὑπ' ἐκείνων ἴστατο.

ἀγγελία, ἡ: a message, tidings, news

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, see

ἀνασπάω: to pluck up, take up

ἅπας: whole, all, entire

ἀράχνης, -ου, ὁ: a spider

ἄτακτος, -ον: not in battle-order

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

διασκεδάννυμι: to scatter, disperse

διατάσσω: to draw up, arrange

διώξις, -εως, ἡ: chase, pursuit

ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon

ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate

ζωγρέω: to take alive, take captive

ζωδιακός, ὁ: the zodiac

καταδιώκω: to pursue closely

κατατρέχω: to run down

κτείνω: to kill, slay

λάφυρα, τά: spoils

νικάω: to conquer, prevail

ὄρνειον, τό: a bird

πεδίον, τό: a plain, flat

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

Σεληνίτης, ὁ: Moonite

ταράσσω: to stir up, trouble

τοξότης, -ου, ὁ: a bowman, archer

τρέπω: to turn

τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy

ὑφαίνω: to weave

Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon

φίλος, ὁ: a friend

ὁ ἐκ τοῦ ζῳδιακοῦ τοξότης: i.e. the constellation Sagittarius

ἦσθοντο: ao. of αἰσθάνομαι, "they perceived"

τοὺς φίλους νενικημένους: ind. st., "that their friends were defeated"

ἔπεμπον...ἐπιέναι: indirect command, "sent a message to attack"

ἐπιέναι: pr. inf. of ἐπέρχομαι

διαταξάμενοι: ao. part. mid. of δια-τάσσω, "having arrayed themselves"

ἐπιπίπτουσι: vivid present, "they fall upon"

τεταραγμένοις: perf. part. dat. pl. of ταράττω, "disordered," modifying Σεληνίτας

διεσκεδασμένοις: perf. part. pas. dat. pl. of διασκεδάννυμι, "scattered"

αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν βασιλέα: "the king himself"

ἀνέσπασαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἀνασπάω, "they plucked up"

κατέδραμον: ao. 3 pl. of κατατρέχω, "they overran"

ὑφασμένον: perf. part. pas. of ὑφαίνω, "woven"

ἐζώγρησαν: ao. 3 pl. of ζωγρέω, "they captured alive"

ἴστατο: impf. pas. of ἵστημι, "were being set up"

Ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν ἀπηγόμεθα ἐς τὸν ἥλιον αὐθήμερον τῶ χεῖρε
ὀπίσω δεθέντες ἀραχνίου ἀποκόμματι. [19] οἱ δὲ πολιορκεῖν μὲν
οὐκ ἔγνωσαν τὴν πόλιν, ἀναστρέψαντες δὲ τὸ μεταξὺ τοῦ ἀέρος
ἀπετείχιζον, ὥστε μηκέτι τὰς αὐγὰς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου πρὸς τὴν
σελήνην διήκειν. τὸ δὲ τεῖχος ἦν διπλοῦν, νεφελωτόν· ὥστε σαφῆς
ἔκλειψις τῆς σελήνης ἐγεγόνει καὶ νυκτὶ διηνεκεῖ πᾶσα κατείχετο.
πιεζόμενος δὲ τούτοις ὁ Ἐνδυμίων πέμψας ἰκέτευε καθαιρεῖν τὸ
οἰκοδόμημα καὶ μὴ σφᾶς περιορᾶν ἐν σκότῳ βιοτεύοντας,

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὄ: the air
ἀναστρέφω: to turn back
ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off
ἀπόκομμα, -ατος, τό: a splinter, shred
ἀποτειχίζω: to wall off
ἀράχνιον, τό: a spider's web
αὐγή, ἡ: sunlight
αὐθήμερος, -ον: on the very day
βιοτεύω: to live
γινώσκω: to know
διήκω: to extend, reach
διηνεκής, -ές: continuous, unbroken
διπλός, -η, -ον: twofold, double
ἔκλειψις, -εως, ἡ: eclipse
Ἐνδυμίων, ὄ: Endymion
ἥλιος, ὄ: the sun
ἰκετεύω: to beg

καθαίρω: to take down
κατέχω: to hold fast
μηκέτι: no longer
νεφελωτός, -ή, -όν: made of clouds
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: night
οἰκοδόμημα, -ατος, τό: a building,
structure
ὀπίσω: backwards
πέμπω: to send, dispatch
πιέζω: to press
πολιορκέω: to besiege
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
σκότος, -εος, ὄ: darkness, gloom
τεῖχος, -εος, τό: a wall
χεῖρ, ἡ: a hand

τῶ χεῖρε: dual acc. of respect, "by the hands"
δεθέντες: ao. part. pas. of δέω, "bound"
ἀποκόμματι: dat. of means, "piece of web"
ἔγνωσαν: aor. of γινώσκω, "they decided"
ἀπετείχιζον: impf. of ἀποτειχίζω, "they built"
ὥστε...διήκειν: result clause, "so that they didn't reach through (to)"
διήκειν: from δια-ἤκω
ὥστε...ἐγεγόνει...κατείχετο: result clauses with the indicative emphasize the
actual result
ἐγεγόνει: pluperf. of γίγνομαι, "there was"
κατείχετο: impf. of κατα-ἔχω, "was enshrouded"
πέμψας: ao. part., "by sending"
καθαίρειν: from κατα-αἰρέω, "to pull down"
σφᾶς: acc. pl., "them"
περιορᾶν: from περι-όραω, to "overlook" and hence to "allow"

ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ καὶ φόρους τελέσειν καὶ σύμμαχος ἔσεσθαι καὶ μηκέτι πολεμήσειν, καὶ ὀμήρους ἐπὶ τούτοις δοῦναι ἤθελεν. οἱ δὲ περὶ τὸν Φαέθοντα γενομένης δις ἐκκλησίας τῇ προτεραίᾳ μὲν οὐδὲν παρέλυσαν τῆς ὀργῆς, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ μετέγνωσαν, καὶ ἐγένετο ἡ εἰρήνη ἐπὶ τούτοις·

[20] Κατὰ τὰδε συνθήκας ἐποιήσαντο Ἡλιῶται καὶ οἱ σύμμαχοι πρὸς Σεληνίτας καὶ τοὺς συμμαχοὺς, ἐπὶ τῷ καταλύσει μὲν Ἡλιώτας τὸ διατείχισμα καὶ μηκέτι ἐς τὴν σελήνην ἐσβάλλειν, ἀποδοῦναι δὲ καὶ τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ῥήτου ἕκαστον χρήματος, τοὺς δὲ Σεληνίτας ἀφείναι μὲν αὐτονόμους τοὺς γε

αἰχμάλωτος, -ον: taken prisoner
ἀποδίδωμι: to give back, return
αὐτόνομος, -ον: independent
ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge
διατείχισμα, -ατος, τό: a dividing wall
δίδωμι: to give
δίς: twice, doubly
ἐθέλω: to wish
εἰρήνη, ἡ: peace
εἰσβάλλω: to throw into, invade
ἐκκλησία, ἡ: an assembly
Ἡλιώτης, ὁ: Sunite
καταλύω: to put down, destroy
μεταγινώσκω: to change one's mind,
repent
μηκέτι: no more, no longer

ὄμηρος, ὁ: a hostage
ὀργή, ἡ: anger
παραλύω: to loose, slacken
προτεραῖος, -α, -ον: on the first day
ῥητός, -ή, -όν: stated, specified
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
Σεληνίτης, ὁ: Moonite
σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally
σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally
συνθήκη, ἡ: an agreement, treaty
τελέω: to complete, fulfill, accomplish
ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise
ὑστεραῖος, -α, -ον: on the next day
φόρος, ὁ: a tribute
χρήμα, -ατος, τό: an amount of money,
ransom

ὑπισχνεῖτο: impf. of ὑπισχνέομαι, “he promised,” taking the future infinitives
τελέσειν, ἔσεσθαι, πολεμήσειν

A treaty is arranged between the two parties.

γενομένης δις ἐκκλησίας: gen abs. “the assembly meeting twice.” For the change of heart, compare the Mytilenian debate in Thucydides (3, 36). Particulars of the settlement recall the Athenian-Spartan treaty in Thucydides 5, 18.

παρέλυσαν: ao. of παρα-λύω, “they slackened”

μετέγνωσαν: ao. from μετα-γινώσκω, “they relented”

κατὰ τὰδε: “according to the following terms”

ἐπὶ τῷ + infinitive: “on the condition that”

ἀποδοῦναι: ao. inf. of ἀποδίδωμι “that they hand over”

ἀφείναι: pr. inf. of ἀφίημι, “that they allow”

Lucian

ἄλλους ἀστέρας, ὅπλα δὲ μὴ ἐπιφέρειν τοῖς Ἡλιώταις, συμμαχεῖν δὲ τῇ ἀλλήλων, ἣν τις ἐπίη· φόρον δὲ ὑποτελεῖν ἐκάστου ἔτους τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Σεληνιτῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Ἡλιωτῶν δρόσου ἀμφορέας μυρίους, καὶ ὀμήρους δὲ σφῶν αὐτῶν δοῦναι μυρίους, τὴν δὲ ἀποικίαν τὴν ἐς τὸν Ἑωσφόρον κοινῇ ποιεῖσθαι, καὶ μετέχειν τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον· ἐγγράψαι δὲ τὰς συνθήκας στήλη ἠλεκτρίνη καὶ ἀναστήσαι ἐν μέσῳ τῷ ἀέρι ἐπὶ τοῖς μεθορίοις. ὤμοσαν δὲ Ἡλιωτῶν μὲν Πυρωνίδης καὶ Θερεΐτης καὶ Φλόγιος, Σεληνιτῶν δὲ Νύκτωρ καὶ Μήνιος καὶ Πολυλάμπης.

ἀμφορεύς, -έως: an amphora, jar

ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up

ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement, colony

ἀστήρ, -έρος, ὁ: a star

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

δίδωμι: to give

δρόσος, ἡ: dew

ἐγγράφω: to inscribe

ἐπέρχομαι: to attack

ἐπιφέρω: bear up, carry upon

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

Ἑωσφόρος, ὁ: Morning Star

ἠλεκτρίνος, -η, -ον: made of amber

Ἡλιώτης, ὁ: Sunit

κοινός, -ή, -όν: in common

μεθόριος, -α, -ον: lying between as a boundary

μετέχω: to share in

μυρίος, -ος, -ον: ten thousand

ὄμηρος, ὁ: a hostage

ὄμνυμι: to swear

ὄπλον, τό: a tool, weapon

Σεληνίτης, ὁ: Moonite

στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone

συμμαχέω: to be an ally, succor (+ *dat.*)

συνθήκη, ἡ: a composition, term

ὑποτελέω: to pay

φόρος, ὁ: a tribute

συμμαχεῖν τῇ (sc. γῆ): “that they be allies on behalf of this land”

ἣν τις ἐπίη: general condition, “if anyone attacks”

ἐπίη: pr. subj. 3. s of **ἐπέρχομαι**

ἐκάστου ἔτους: “each year”

δρόσου ἀμφορέας μυρίους: “10,000 jars of dew”

κοινῇ ποιεῖσθαι: “that they make in common”

ἀναστήσαι: ao. act. inf. of **ἀνα-ίστημι**, “be set up”

ὤμοσαν: ao. 3 pl. of **ὄμνυμι**, “they swore”

For the Sun: Firebrace, Parcher and Burns

For the Moon: Darkling, Moony and Allbright

Result clauses

ὥστε introduces result clauses either with an infinitive or with a finite verb.

ὥστε + infinitive indicates a possible or intended result, without emphasizing its actual occurrence. The infinitive does not express time, but only aspect.

ὥστε + indicative indicates that the result actually occurred as a fact. Both time and aspect are indicated by the form of the verb. Any form of the verb that can be used in a main clause (e.g., potential optative) can be used with **ὥστε**.

A True Story

[21] Τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο· εὐθύς δὲ τὸ τεῖχος καθηρέϊτο καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἀπέδωσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικόμεθα ἐς τὴν σελήνην, ὑπηντίαζον ἡμᾶς καὶ ἠσπάζοντο μετὰ δακρῶν οἳ τε ἐταῖροι καὶ ὁ Ἐνδυμίων αὐτός. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἠξίου με μείναι τε παρ' αὐτῷ καὶ κοινωνεῖν τῆς ἀποικίας, ὑπισχνούμενος δώσειν πρὸς γάμον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ παῖδα· γυναῖκες γὰρ οὐκ εἰσὶ παρ' αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδαμῶς ἐπειθόμην, ἀλλ' ἠξίου ἀποπεμφθῆναι κάτω ἐς τὴν θάλατταν. ὡς δὲ ἔγνω ἀδύνατον ὄν πείθειν, ἀποπέμπει ἡμᾶς ἐστίαςας ἐπὶ τὰς ἡμέρας.

ἀδύνατος, -ον: unable, impossible
αἰχμάλωτος, -ον: taken prisoner
ἀξιόω: to think worthy, expect
ἀποδίδωμι: to give back, return
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement, colony
ἀποπέμπω: to send away, to dismiss
ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid
farewell
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
γάμος, ὁ: a wedding
γινώσκω: to know
γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman
δάκρυον, τό: a tear
δίδωμι: to give
εἰρήνη, ἡ: peace
ἐστίαω: to entertain as a guest

ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion
εὐθύς, -εἶα, -ύ: immediately, at once
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea
καθαίρω: to take down
κάτω: down
κοινωνέω: to have a share in, take part in
οὐδαμῶς: in no way
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a son
πείθω: to win over, persuade
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
τεῖχος, -εος, τό: a wall
ὑπαντιάζω: to encounter
ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise

καθηρέϊτο: impf. of **κατα-αἰρέω**, “was torn down”
ἀπέδωσαν: ao. 3 pl. of **ἀποδίδωμι**, “they returned”
ἀφικόμεθα: ao. “we arrived”
ὑπηντίαζον: impf. of **ὑπο-ἀντιάζω**, “they greeted”
ἠξίου: impf. 3 s. of **ἀξιόω**, “he requested”
δώσειν: fut. inf of **δίδωμι**
τὸν ἑαυτοῦ παῖδα: “his own son”
οὐ ἐπειθόμην: impf. pas. “I was not persuaded”
ἠξίου: impf. 1 s. of **ἀξιόω**, “I requested”
ἀποπεμφθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. of **ἀποπέμπω**, “to be sent away”
ἔγνω: ao. 3 s. of **γινώσκω**, “he realized”
ἀδύνατον ὄν: ind. st. after **ἔγνω**, “that it was impossible”
ἐστίαςας: ao. part. nom. s. of **ἐστίαω**, “having entertained as a guest”

[22] Ἄ δὲ ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ διατρίβων ἐν τῇ σελήνῃ κατενόησα καινὰ καὶ παράδοξα, ταῦτα βούλομαι εἰπεῖν. πρῶτα μὲν τὸ μὴ ἐκ γυναικῶν γεννᾶσθαι αὐτούς, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῶν ἄρρένων· γάμοις γὰρ τοῖς ἄρρεσι χρῶνται καὶ οὐδὲ ὄνομα γυναικὸς ὄλως ἴσασι. μέχρι μὲν οὖν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἐτῶν γαμείται ἕκαστος, ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων γαμει αὐτός· κύουσι δὲ οὐκ ἐν τῇ νηδυί, ἀλλ' ἐν ταῖς γαστροκνημίαις· ἐπειδὴν γὰρ συλλάβῃ τὸ ἔμβρυον, παχύνεται ἡ κνήμη, καὶ χρόνῳ ὕστερον ἀνατεμόντες ἐξάγουσι νεκρά, θέντες δὲ αὐτὰ πρὸς τὸν ἄνεμον κεχηνότα ζωοποιούσιν. δοκεῖ δέ μοι καὶ

ἀνατέμνω: to cut open

ἄνεμος, ὄ: wind

ἄρσιν, ὄ: male

γαμέομαι: to be married

γάμος, ὄ: a wedding

γαστροκνημία, ἡ: calf

γεννάω: to beget, give birth

γυνή, -αῖκος, ἡ: a woman

διατρίβω: to spend time

ἔμβρυον, τό: a young one

ἐξάγω: to lead out

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year, age

ζωοποιέω: to give life

καινός, -ή, -όν: new, strange

κατανοέω: to observe

κνήμη, ἡ: the shin

κύω: to conceive

μεταξύ: between + gen.

νεκρός, ὄ: a corpse, dead body

νηδύς, -ύος, ἡ: the belly

οἶδα: to know

ὄλως: completely

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name

παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical

παχύνω: to thicken, fatten

σελήνη, ἡ: the moon

συλλαμβάνω: to collect, conceive

χάσκω: to have one's mouth open, yawn

χράομαι: to use

χρόνος, ὄ: time

The author gives an ethnographical report reminiscent of Ctesias and Herodotus.

ἄ δὲ ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ: "as for what happened in the interval"

κατενόησα: ao. of κατανοέω, "I observed"

τὸ μὴ γεννᾶσθαι: articular inf., "that they are not born"

γεννᾶσθαι: ao. pas. inf of γεννάω

ἄρρεσι: dat. pl. with χρῶνται, "they use males"

ἴσασι: pr. 3 pl. of οἶδα, "they know"

γαμείται: "is married" vs. γαμει "marries"

γαστροκνημία: "calf," lit. "the belly of the shin"

ἐπειδὴν (ἐπειδη + ἄν) συλλάβῃ: general temporal clause, "whenever he conceives"

συλλάβῃ: ao. subj. of συλλαμβάνω, here "conceives"

ἀνατεμόντες: ao. part. nom. pl. of ἀποτέμνω, "having cut"

θέντες: ao. part. of τίθημι, "having placed"

κεχηνότα: perf. part. acc. pl. n. of χάσκω, modifying αὐτὰ (νεκρά), "(with mouths) gaping"

A True Story

ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐκέιθεν ἤκειν τῆς γαστροκνημίας τοῦνομα, ὅτι παρ' ἐκείνοις ἀντὶ γαστρὸς κυοφορεῖ. μείζον δὲ τούτου ἄλλο διηγῆσομαι. γένος ἐστὶ παρ' αὐτοῖς ἀνθρώπων οἱ καλούμενοι Δενδρίται, γίνεται δὲ τὸν τρόπον τούτον. ὄρχιν ἀνθρώπου τὸν δεξιὸν ἀποτεμόντες ἐν γῆ φυτεύουσιν, ἐκ δὲ αὐτοῦ δένδρον ἀναφύεται μέγιστον, σάρκινον, οἶον φαλλός· ἔχει δὲ καὶ κλάδους καὶ φύλλα· ὁ δὲ καρπὸς ἐστὶ βάλανος πηχυαῖος τὸ μέγεθος.

αναφύομαι: to grow out, produce
ἀποτέμνω: to cut off, sever
βάλανος, ἡ: an acorn
γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: the belly
γαστροκνημία, ἡ: calf
γένος, -οῦς, τό: race, kind
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
Δενδρίτης, ὁ: Arboreal
δένδρον, τό: a tree
ἐκέιθεν: from that place, thence
Ἕλληνας: Greek
ἤκω: to come
καλέω: to call

καρπός, ὁ: fruit
κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a branch
κυοφορέω: to be pregnant
μείζων, -ον: greater
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name
ὄρχις, -ιος, ὁ: a testicle
πηχυαῖος, -α, -ον: a cubit long
σάρκινος, -η, -ον: of flesh
τρόπος, ὁ: a way, manner
φαλλός, ὁ: a phallus
φύλλον, τό: a leaf
φυτεύω: to plant

μείζον τούτου: “greater than this”
διηγῆσομαι: fut. “I will narrate”
ἀποτεμόντες: ao. part., “having cut off”

Indirect statement after verbs of knowing, perceiving, hearing or showing

Some verbs take the accusative + participle construction for indirect speech instead of accusative + infinitive. If the subject of the participle is the same as the subject of the main clause that governs the indirect discourse, the nominative is used instead of the accusative (if it is expressed) and the participle will agree with it. No matter which construction is used, translate indirect statement with "that" plus a finite verb.

ἤσθοντο τοὺς φίλους νενικημένους: they saw that their friends had been captured.
ἤσθοντο (αὐτοί) νενικήμενοι: they saw that they (themselves) had been captured.

ἐπειδὴν οὖν πεπανθῶσιν, τρυγήσαντες αὐτὰς ἐκκολάπτουσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. αἰδοῖα μέντοι πρόσθετα ἔχουσιν, οἱ μὲν ἐλεφάντινα, οἱ δὲ πένητες αὐτῶν ξύλινα, καὶ διὰ τούτων ὀχεύουσι καὶ πλησιάζουσι τοῖς γαμέταις τοῖς ἑαυτῶν. [23] ἐπειδὴν δὲ γηράση ὁ ἄνθρωπος, οὐκ ἀποθνήσκει, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ καπνὸς διαλυόμενος ἀῆρ γίνεται. τροφή δὲ πᾶσιν ἡ αὐτή· ἐπειδὴν γὰρ πῦρ ἀνακαύσωσιν, βατράχους ὀπτῶσιν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνθράκων· πολλοὶ δὲ παρ' αὐτοῖς εἰσιν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι πετόμενοι· ὀπτωμένων δὲ περικαθεσθέντες ὥσπερ δὴ περὶ τράπεζαν κάπτουσι τὸν ἀναθυμιώμενον καπνὸν

ἀῆρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
 αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals
 ἀναθυμιάω: to rise
 ἀνακαίω: to light up
 ἄνθραξ, -ακος, ὁ: charcoal, coal
 ἀποθνήσκω: to die
 βάτραχος, ὁ: a frog
 γαμέτης, -ου, ὁ: a spouse
 γηράσκω: to grow old, become old
 διαλύω: to disperse
 ἐκκολάπτω: to scrape out
 ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory
 καπνός, ὁ: smoke

κάπτω: to gulp down
 ξύλινος, -η, -ον: wooden
 ὀπτῶω: to roast, broil
 ὀχεύω: to mount
 πένης, -ητος, ὁ: a poor man
 πεπαίνω: to ripen
 πέτομαι: to fly
 πλησιάζω: to bring near
 πρόσθετος, -ον: added on
 τράπεζα, -ης, ἡ: a table
 τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food
 τρυγάω: to gather

ἐπειδὴν πεπανθῶσιν: general temporal clause, “whenever they have bloomed”
 πεπανθῶσιν: ao. pas. subj. of πεπαίνω
 τρυγήσαντες: ao. part. of τρυγάω, “having harvested”
 ὀχεύουσι: “they mount”
 πλησιάζουσι: “they have intercourse”
 ἐπειδὴν γηράση: general temporal clause, “whenever they grow old”
 γηράση: ao. subj. of γηράω
 ὁ ἄνθρωπος: the definite article is generic rather than particular, i.e. “men” as a class, not “the man”
 διαλυόμενος: pr. part. mid., “dissolved”
 ἀνακαύσωσιν: aor. subj. of ἀνακαίω, in gen. temp. clause, “whenever they burn”
 εἰσιν πετόμενοι: periphrastic, “are flying”
 ὀπτωμένων (sc. αὐτῶν): gen. abs., “while they are cooking”
 περικαθεσθέντες: ao. part. pas. of περι-κατα-ἕζομαι, “sitting down around”
 ἀναθυμιώμενον: pr. part. acc. s. of ἀναθυμιάω, “rising”

A True Story

καὶ εὐωχοῦνται. σίτω μὲν δὴ τρέφονται τοιούτω· ποτὸν δὲ αὐτοῖς ἔστιν ἀήρ ἀποθλιβόμενος εἰς κύλικα καὶ ὑγρὸν ἀνιείς ὥσπερ δρόσον. οὐ μὴν ἀπουροῦσιν γε καὶ ἀφοδεύουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τέτρηνται ἥπερ ἡμεῖς, οὐδὲ τὴν συνουσίαν οἱ παῖδες ἐν ταῖς ἔδραις παρέχουσιν, ἀλλ' ἐν ταῖς ἰγνύαις ὑπὲρ τὴν γαστροκνημίαν· ἐκεῖ γάρ εἰσι τετρημένοι.

Καλὸς δὲ νομίζεται παρ' αὐτοῖς ἢν πού τις φαλακρὸς καὶ ἄκομος ἦ, τοὺς δὲ κομήτας καὶ μυσάττονται. ἐπὶ δὲ τῶν κομητῶν ἀστέρων τοῦναντίον τοὺς κομήτας καλοὺς νομίζουσιν· ἐπεδήμουν γάρ τινες, οἳ καὶ περὶ ἐκείνων διηγοῦντο. καὶ μὴν καὶ γένεια

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
ἄκομος, -ον: hairless
ἀνήμι: to send forth, yield
ἀποθλίβω: to press, squeeze out
ἀπουρέω: pass urine
ἀστήρ, -έρος, ὁ: a star
ἀφοδεύω: to discharge excrement
γαστροκνημία, ἡ: calf
γένειον, τό: a chin, beard
δρόσος, ἡ: dew
ἔδρα, ἡ: the rear
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite
ἐπιδημέω: to be at home, live
εὐωχέω: to eat abundantly
ἥπερ: in the same way as

ἰγνύς: the back of the knee
καλός, ὁ: beauty
κομήτης, -ου, ὁ: long-haired
κύλιξ, -ικος, ἡ: a drinking cup
μυσάττομαι: to feel disgust at
νομίζω: to believe, hold as a custom
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a boy
παρέχω: to furnish, provide
ποτόν, τό: a drink
σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
συνουσία, ἡ: intercourse
τετραίνω: to perforate
τρέφω: to nourish
ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: wet, fluid
φαλακρός, -ά, -όν: bald

ἀποθλιβόμενος: pr. part. modifying ἀήρ, “squeezed”
ἀνιείς: pr. part. nom. s. ἀνα-ΐημι, modifying ἀήρ, “producing”
ἀπουροῦσιν: from ἀπο-ουρέω, “they do not urinate”
ἀφοδεύουσιν: “they do not poop”
τέτρηνται: perf. 3 pl. pas. of τετραίνω, “they are perforated”
ἥπερ ἡμεῖς: “where we are”
ἐν ταῖς ἔδραις: “in their rears”
εἰσι τετρημένοι: periphrastic perf. “they are perforated”
ἢν πού τις...ἦ: pres. general condition, “if anyone is...”
κομητῶν ἀστέρων: “long-haired stars,” i.e., “comets”
τοῦναντίον (τὸ ἐναντίον): “(it is) the opposite”
ἐπεδήμουν: impf. of ἐπι-δημέω, “some traveled”
διηγοῦντο: impf. of διηγέομαι, “they told me”

φύουσιν μικρὸν ὑπὲρ τὰ γόνατα. καὶ ὄνυχας ἐν τοῖς ποσὶν οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ἀλλὰ πάντες εἰσὶν μονοδάκτυλοι. ὑπὲρ δὲ τὰς πυγὰς ἐκάστω αὐτῶν κράμβη ἐκπέφυκε μακρὰ ὥσπερ οὐρά, θάλλουσα ἐς αἰεὶ καὶ ὑπτίου ἀναπίπτοντος οὐ κατακλωμένη. [24] ἀπομύττονται δὲ μέλι δριμύτατον· κάπειδαν ἢ πονῶσιν ἢ γυμνάζονται, γάλακτι πᾶν τὸ σῶμα ἰδρούσιν, ὥστε καὶ τυροὺς ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πῆγγυσθαι, ὀλίγον τοῦ μέλιτος ἐπιστάξαντες· ἔλαιον δὲ

αἰεὶ: always, forever
ἀναπίπτω: to fall back
ἀπομύττω: to have a runny nose
γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk
γόνυ, τό: the knee
γυμνάζω: to train naked, take exercise
δριμύς, -εἶα, -ύ: sharp, pungent
ἐκφύω: to grow from
ἔλαιον, -ου, τό: olive-oil
ἐπειδάν: whenever
ἐπιστάζω: let fall in drops, instill
θάλλω: to bloom
ιδρώω: to sweat, perspire
κατακλάω: to break, snap off

κράμβη, ἡ: cabbage
μέλι, -ιτος, τό: honey
μονοδάκτυλος, -ον: one-fingered
ὄνυξ, -υχος, ό: a nail, claw
οὐρά, ἡ: the tail
πῆγγυμι: to form together, congeal
πονέω: to work hard, do work
πούς, ποδός, ό: a foot
πυγή, -ῆς, ἡ: the rump, buttocks
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body
τυρός, ό: cheese
ὑπτίος, -α, -ον: backward
φύω: to produce, grow

ὑπὲρ δὲ τὰς πυγὰς: “over the rump”
ἐκπέφυκε: perf. 3 s. of ἐκ-φύω, “has grown out”
ὥσπερ οὐρά: “like a tail”
ἐς αἰεὶ: “forever”
ὑπτίου ἀναπίπτοντος: gen abs. with conditional force, “falling down on the back”
κατακλωμένη: pr. part. of κατακλάω, “breaking”
κάπειδαν ἢ πονῶσιν ἢ γυμνάζονται: general temporal clauses, “whenever they work or exercise”
πᾶν τὸ σῶμα: acc. of respect, “the whole body”
ὥστε...πῆγγυσθαι: result clause, “so that cheese can be made”
ἐπιστάξαντες: ao. part. act. of ἐπιστάζω, with instrumental force, “by letting drip”

General conditions and temporal clauses

A present general condition has ἐὰν (Attic ἤν) + subj. in the protasis; present indicative in the apodosis.

A general or indefinite temporal clause in the present has the same form, with **δταν** or **ἐπειδάν** (whenever) instead of ἐὰν.

ἐπειδάν γηράσῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, οὐκ ἀποθνήσκει: When(ever) men become old, they do not die.

ἐὰν γηράσῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, οὐκ ἀποθνήσκει: If (ever) men become old, they do not die.

A True Story

ποιοῦνται ἀπὸ τῶν κρομμύων πάνυ λιπαρόν τε καὶ εὐῶδες ὥσπερ μύρον. ἀμπέλους δὲ πολλὰς ἔχουσιν ὑδροφόρους· αἱ γὰρ ῥᾶγες τῶν βοτρύων εἰσὶν ὥσπερ χάλαζα, καί, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, ἐπειδὴν ἐμπεσῶν ἄνεμος διασειῇ τὰς ἀμπέλους ἐκείνας, τότε πρὸς ἡμᾶς καταπίπτει ἢ χάλαζα διαρραγέντων τῶν βοτρύων. τῇ μέντοι γαστρὶ ὅσα πήρα χρῶνται τιθέντες ἐν αὐτῇ ὄσων δέονται· ἀνοικτὴ γὰρ αὐτοῖς αὕτη καὶ πάλιν κλειστή ἐστίν· ἐντέρων δὲ οὐδὲν ὑπάρχειν αὐτῇ φαίνεται, ἢ τοῦτο μόνον, ὅτι δασεῖα πᾶσα ἔντοσθε καὶ λάσιός ἐστιν, ὥστε καὶ τὰ νεογνά, ἐπειδὴν ῥιγώσῃ, ἐς ταύτην ὑποδύεται.

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind

ἀνοικτός, -ή, -όν: opened

βότρυον, τό: a cluster of grapes

γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: the belly

δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: hairy, shaggy

διαρρήγνυμι: to burst, break apart

διασειώ: to shake violently

ἐπίπτω: fall upon

ἐντερον, τό: an intestine

ἐντοσθε: within, inside

εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant

καταπίπτω: to fall or drop down

κλειστός, -ή, -όν: closed

κρόμμυον, -ου, τό: onion

λάσιος, -ος, -ον: furry, woolly

λιπαρός, -ά, -όν: clear, shiny

μύρον, -ου, τό: sweet-oil, myrrh

νεογνός, -ή, -όν: a newborn

πάλιν: again

πήρα, ἡ: a pocket, pouch

ῥάξ, ῥαγός, ἡ: a grape

ῥιγώω: to be cold

τίθημι: to set, put, place

ὑδροφόρος, -ον: carrying-producing

ὑπάρχω: to begin, make a beginning

ὑποδύομαι: to plunge in

χάλαζα, -ης, ἡ: hail

ὑδροφόρους: modifying ἀμπέλους, “water-producing vines”

ἐπειδὴν...διασειῇ: general temporal clause, “whenever the wind shakes”

διασειῇ: ao. subj. of διασειώ

ἐμπεσῶν: ao. part. act. of ἐμ-πίπτω, “falling upon”

διαρραγέντων τῶν βοτρύων: gen. abs., “the bunches bursting”

ὅσα πήρα: “just like a purse”

ἐντέρων οὐδὲν: “nothing of entrails”

ὑπάρχειν αὐτῇ φαίνεται: “appears to be in it”

ἢ τοῦτο μόνον, ὅτι: “except only this, that...”

ὥστε...ὑποδύεται: result clause

ἐπειδὴν ῥιγώσῃ: general clause, “whenever it is cold”

ἡ: subj. 3 s. of εἶμι

[25] Ἐσθῆς δὲ τοῖς μὲν πλουσίοις ὑαλίνη μαλθακή, τοῖς πένησι δὲ χαλκῇ ὑφαντῇ· πολύχαλκα γὰρ τὰ ἐκεῖ χωρία, καὶ ἐργάζονται τὸν χαλκὸν ὕδατι ἀποβρέξαντες ὥσπερ τὰ ἔρια. περὶ μέντοι τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν, οἴους ἔχουσιν, ὀκνῶ μὲν εἰπεῖν, μὴ τίς με νομίσῃ ψεύδεσθαι διὰ τὸ ἄπιστον τοῦ λόγου. ὅμως δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ἐρῶ· τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς περιαιρετοὺς ἔχουσι, καὶ ὁ βουλόμενος ἐξελῶν τοὺς αὐτοῦ φυλάττει ἔστ' ἂν δεηθῆ ἰδεῖν· οὕτω δὲ ἐνθέμενος ὀρᾷ· καὶ πολλοὶ τοὺς σφετέρους ἀπολέσαντες παρ' ἄλλων χρησάμενοι ὀρώσιν. εἰσὶ δ' οἱ καὶ πολλοὺς ἀποθέτους

ἄπιστος: unbelievable

ἀποβρέχω: to wet

ἀπόθετος, -ον: stored up

ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy, lose

ἐκεῖ: there, in that place

ἐντίθημι: to put in

ἐξαιρέω: to take out

ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor

ἔριον, τό: wool

ἔσθῆς, -ῆτος, ῆ: dress, clothing

ἔσται: up to the time that, until

λόγος, ὁ: a tale, account

μαλθακός, -ή, -όν: soft

νομίζω: to think

ὀκνέω: to shrink from, hesitate

ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye

πένης, -ητος, ὁ: poor

περιαιρετός, -ή, -όν: removable

πλούσιος, -α, -ον: rich, wealthy, opulent

πολύχαλκος, -ον: abounding in bronze

σφέτερος, -α, -ον: their

ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass

ὑδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

ὑφαντός, -ή, -όν: woven, spun

φυλάσσω: to guard, keep safe

χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: bronze

χαλκός, ὁ: copper

χωρίον, τό: a place, spot

ψεύδω: to lie

ὑαλίνη μαλθακή: “soft glass”

χαλκῇ ὑφαντῇ: “spun bronze”

τὰ ἐκεῖ χωρία: the def. article makes the adverb an attributive adjective, “the places there”

ἐργάζονται: “they work it”

ἀποβρέξαντες: ao. part. of ἀποβρέχω with instrumental force, “by soaking”

ὥσπερ τὰ ἔρια: “just like wool”

οἴους ἔχουσιν: “what sort (of eyes) they have”

μὴ τίς με νομίσῃ: neg. purpose clause, “lest anyone think”

νομίσῃ: ao. subj. of νομίζω

ἐρῶ: future of λέγω, “I will say”

ὁ βουλόμενος: “he who wishes”

ἐξελῶν: ao. part. nom. s. of ἐξ-αίρέω, “having removed”

ἔστ' ἂν δεηθῆ: indefinite, “until he needs to see” (whenever that may be)

δεηθῆ: ao. pas. subj. of δέω

ἐνθέμενος: ao. part. mid. of ἐντίθημι, “having put it in”

ἀπολέσαντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-ἄλλυμι, “having lost”

χρησάμενοι: ao. part. of χράομαι, “having borrowed”

εἰσὶ δ' οἱ: “the rich are those who...”

A True Story

ἔχουσιν, οἱ πλούσιοι. τὰ ὦτα δὲ πλατάνων φύλλα ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς
πλὴν γε τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν βαλάνων· ἐκείνοι γὰρ μόνοι ξύλινα ἔχουσιν.
[26] καὶ μὴν καὶ ἄλλο θαῦμα ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐθεασάμην·
κάτοπτρον μέγιστον κεῖται ὑπὲρ φρέατος οὐ πάνυ βαθέος. ἂν μὲν
οὖν εἰς τὸ φρέαρ καταβῆ τις, ἀκούει πάντων τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν ἐν τῇ
γῇ λεγομένων, ἐὰν δὲ εἰς τὸ κάτοπτρον ἀποβλέψῃ, πάσας μὲν
πόλεις, πάντα δὲ ἔθνη ὁρᾷ ὥσπερ ἐφεστῶς ἐκάστοις· τότε καὶ
τοὺς οἰκείους ἐγὼ ἐθεασάμην καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν πατρίδα, εἰ δὲ
κάκεῖνοι ἐμὲ ἐώρων, οὐκέτι ἔχω τὸ ἀσφαλὲς εἰπεῖν. ὅστις δὲ
ταῦτα μὴ πιστεύει οὕτως ἔχειν, ἂν ποτε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκείσε
ἀφίκηται, εἴσεται ὡς ἀληθῆ λέγω.

ἀποβλέπω: to look into
ἀσφαλής, -ές: firm, certain
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
βαθύς, -εία, -ύ: deep or high
βάλανος, ἡ: an acorn
βασιλείον, τό: a royal dwelling, palace
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a people, country
ἐκείσε: thither, to that place
ἐπίστημι: to stand upon or by
θαῦμα, -ατος, τό: a wonder, marvel
θεάομαι: to look at, view, behold
καταβαίνω: to step down, go down

κάτοπτρον, τό: a mirror
κεῖμαι: to be laid, be placed
ξύλινος, -η, -ον: wooden
οἰκείος, ό: a relative
οὖς, ὠτός, τό: an ear
πάτριη, -ίδος, ἡ: fatherland
πιστεύω: to trust, believe
πλάτανος, ἡ: a plane-tree
πλούσιος, -α, -ον: rich, wealthy
πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
φρέαρ, τό: a well
φύλλον, τό: a leaf

πλὴν γε τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν βαλάνων: “except the men born from acorns”
ἐθεασάμην: a.o. 1 s. of **θεάομαι**, “I saw”
ἂν...καταβῆ τις: pres. general condition, “if anyone goes down”
καταβῆ: a.o. subj. 3 s. of **καταβαίνω**
παρ' ἡμῖν: “among us”
ἐὰν...ἀποβλέψῃ: pr. general condition, “if someone looks”
ἀποβλέψῃ: a.o. subj. of **ἀποβλέπω**
ὥσπερ ἐφεστῶς: perf. part. act. nom. s. of **ἐπι-ἵστημι**, “as if standing”
καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους: “also my household”
ἐώρων: impf. 3 pl. of **ὁράω**, “I saw”
ἔχω: “I am able”
ἂν...ἀφίκηται, εἴσεται: fut. more vivid condition, “if he gets there, he will know”
ἀφίκηται: a.o. subj. of **ἀφικνέομαι**
εἴσεται: fut. of **οἶδα**

[27] Τότε δ' οὖν ἀσπασάμενοι τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτόν, ἐμβάντες ἀνήχθημεν· ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἔδωκεν ὁ Ἐνδυμίων, δύο μὲν τῶν ὑάλινων χιτώνων, πέντε δὲ χαλκοῦς, καὶ πανοπλίαν θερμίνην, ἃ πάντα ἐν τῷ κήτει κατέλιπον. συνέπεμψε δὲ ἡμῖν καὶ Ἴππογύπους χιλίους παραπέμψοντας ἄχρι σταδίων πεντακοσίων. [28] ἐν δὲ τῷ παράπλω πολλὰς μὲν καὶ ἄλλας χώρας παρημείψαμεν, προσέσχομεν δὲ καὶ τῷ Ἑωσφόρῳ ἄρτι συνοικιζομένῳ, καὶ ἀποβάντες ὑδρευσάμεθα. ἐμβάντες δὲ εἰς τὸν ζῳδιακὸν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ παρήειμεν τὸν ἥλιον, ἐν χρῶ τὴν γῆν

ἀμφί: on both sides
 ἀριστερός: on the left, to port
 ἄρτι: just
 ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid
 farewell
 ἄχρι: up to
 βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
 δῶρον, τό: a gift, present
 ἐμβαίνω: to embark
 Ἐνδυμίων, -ωνος, ὁ: Endymion
 Ἑωσφόρος, ὁ: Morning Star
 ζῳδιακός, ὁ: the zodiac
 θέρμιος, -η, -ον: of lupines
 Ἴππογυποί, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
 καταλείπω: to leave behind

πανοπλία, ἡ: a suit of armor
 παραμείβω: to pass by
 παραπέμπω: to convey, escort
 παράπλος, ὁ: a sailing along, a coasting
 voyage
 προσέχω: to put in
 συμπέμπω: to send with
 συνοικίζω: to colonize
 ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass
 ὑδρεύω: to draw water
 χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: of bronze, brazen
 χίλιοι, -αι: a thousand
 χιτών, -ῶνος, ὁ: a tunic
 χρῶς, ὁ: the surface, edge

Departing from the Moon, they arrive in Lamptown, descending past Cloud-Cuckooland, finally landing on the sea again.

ἀσπασάμενοι: ao. part. of ἀσπάζομαι, “bidding farewell”
 ἐμβάντες: ao. part. of ἐμβαίνω, “embarking”
 ἀνήχθημεν: ao. pas. 1 pl. ἀνα-ἄγω, “we put out to sea”
 ἔδωκεν: ao. 1 pl. of δίδωμι
 ἃ πάντα ἐν τῷ κήτει κατέλιπον: “all of which I left behind in the whale,”
 anticipating an episode to be narrated next
 συνέπεμψε: ao. 3 s. of συμπέμπω, “he sent along”
 παραπέμψοντας: fut. part. of purpose, “to escort”
 παρημείψαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of παρὰ-ἀμείβω, “we passed by”
 προσέσχομεν: ao. 1 pl. of πρὸς-ἔχω, “we put in”
 ἄρτι συνοικιζομένῳ: “just now being colonized”
 ἀποβάντες, ἐμβάντες: ao. part. “having disembarked,” “having boarded”
 παρήειμεν: impf. of παρὰ-ἔρχομαι, “we passed”
 ἐν χρῶ “close to the surface”

A True Story

παραπλέοντες· οὐ γὰρ ἀπέβημεν καίτοι πολλὰ τῶν ἐταίρων ἐπιθυμούντων, ἀλλ' ὁ ἄνεμος οὐκ ἐφήκεν. ἐθεώμεθα μέντοι τὴν χώραν εὐθαλή τε καὶ πίονα καὶ εὐυδρον καὶ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν μεστήν. ἰδόντες δ' ἡμᾶς οἱ Νεφελοκένταυροι, μισθοφοροῦντες παρὰ τῷ Φαέθοντι, ἐπέπτησαν ἐπὶ τὴν ναῦν, καὶ μαθόντες ἐνσπόνδους ἀνεχώρησαν. [29] ἤδη δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἴππόγυποι ἀπεληλύθεσαν.

Πλεύσαντες δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν, περὶ ἐσπέραν ἀφικόμεθα ἐς τὴν Λυχνόπολιν καλουμένην, ἤδη τὸν κάτω πλοῦν διώκοντες. ἡ δὲ πόλις αὕτη κείται μεταξὺ τοῦ Πλειάδων καὶ

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good
ἀναχωρέω: to go back
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
ἀποβαίνω: to step off, disembark
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive at
διώκω: to pursue
εἶδον: to see
ἐνσπονδος, -ον: included in a treaty
ἐπιθυμέω: to desire
ἐσπέρα, ἡ: evening
εὐθαλής, -ές: blooming, flourishing
εὐυδρος, -ον: well-watered
ἐφήμι: to permit
ἐφίπταμαι: to fly up
θεάομαι: to look on, view, behold
Ἴππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
καίτοι: and indeed

καλέω: to call
κάτω: down, downward
κεῖμαι: to be laid
Λυχνόπολις, ἡ: Lamptown
μανθάνω: to learn
μεστός, -ή, -όν: full, filled
μεταξύ: between + *gen.*
μισθοφορέω: to receive wages, be in the service of
ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship
Νεφελοκένταυρος, ὁ: a cloud-centaur
παραπλέω: to sail along
πίων, ονος: fertile
Πλειάδες, -ων, αἱ: the Pleiades
πλέω: to sail, go by sea
πλόος, ὁ: a sailing, voyage
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon

οὐκ ἐφήκεν: ao. 3 s. of ἐπι-ἴημι, “did not allow”
ἐθεώμεθα: impf. of θεάομαι, “we saw”
τὴν χώραν (sc. οὔσαν): ind. st. after θεάομαι, “that the land was”
μισθο-φοροῦντες: pres. part. “employed for pay”
ἐπέπτησαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἐπι-πέτομαι, “they flew at or upon”
μαθόντες: ao. part. of μανθάνω, “once they learned”
ἀνεχώρησαν: ao. of ἀναχωρέω, “they retreated”
ἀπεληλύθεσαν: plupf. of ἀπο-ἔρχομαι, “they had left”
τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν: acc. of duration of time, “the following night and day”
ἀφικόμεθα: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι
τὸν κάτω πλοῦν: “the downward journey”
Πλειάδων, Ὑάδων: constellations

Lucian

τοῦ Ἰάδων ἀέρος, ταπεινότερα μέντοι πολὺ τοῦ ζῳδιακοῦ. ἀποβάντες δὲ ἄνθρωπον μὲν οὐδένα εὖρομεν, λύχνους δὲ πολλοὺς περιθέοντας καὶ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ καὶ περὶ τὸν λιμένα διατρίβοντας, τοὺς μὲν μικροὺς καὶ ὥσπερ πένητας, ὀλίγους δὲ τῶν μεγάλων καὶ δυνατῶν πάνυ λαμπροὺς καὶ περιφανεῖς. οἰκήσεις δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ λυχνεῶνες ἰδίᾳ ἐκάστω πεποίηντο, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὀνόματα εἶχον, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ φωνὴν προἰεμένων ἠκούομεν, καὶ οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς ἠδίκουν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐπὶ ξένια ἐκάλουν· ἡμεῖς δὲ ὅμως ἐφοβούμεθα, καὶ οὔτε δειπνήσαι οὔτε ὑπνώσαι τις ἡμῶν ἐτόλμησεν. ἀρχεῖα δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει πεποιήται, ἔνθα ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν διὰ νυκτὸς ὄλης κάθηται ὀνομαστὶ καλῶν ἕκαστον·

ἀγορά, -ᾶς, ἡ: the public square
 ἀδικέω: to do wrong, harm
 ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
 ἀποβαίνω: to step off, disembark
 ἀρχεῖον, τό: the senate-house, town-hall
 ἄρχων, -οντος, ὁ: a ruler, chief
 δειπνέω: to eat dinner
 διατρίβω: to pass time
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν: strong, powerful
 εὐρίσκω: to find
 ζῳδιακός, -ή, -όν: zodiac
 ἴδιος: one's own
 καθήμι: to set down
 καλέω: to call, summon
 λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, radiant
 λιμὴν, -ένος, ὁ: a harbor
 λυχνεῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: a place to keep lamps
 in, sconce

λύχνος, ὁ: a lamp
 ξενία, ἡ: hospitality
 οἰκησις, -εως, ἡ: a dwelling, habitation
 ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few
 ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire
 ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name
 ὀνομαστὶ: by name
 πένης, -ητος, ὁ: a poor man
 περιθέω: to run round
 περιφαίνομαι: to be visible all round
 πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
 προίημι: to send out, emit
 ταπεινός, -ή, -όν: low
 τολμάω: to undertake, venture
 Ἰάδες, -ων, αἱ: the Hyades
 ὑπνώω: to sleep
 φοβέω: to frighten
 φωνή, ἡ: a sound, utterance

εὖρομεν (=ἤυρομεν): ao. of εὐρίσκω., “we found”
 περιθέοντας: pr. part. of περιθέω, “running around”
 πεποίηντο: plupf. pas. of ποιέω, “had been made”
 εἶχον: impf. of ἔχω, “they have names”
 φωνὴν προἰεμένων: pr. part. of προ-ἴημι, gen. after ἠκούομεν, “we heard them talking”
 ἠδίκουν: impf. of ἀδικέω, “they harmed”
 ἐκάλουν: impf. of καλέω, “they summoned”
 δειπνήσαι, ὑπνώσαι: ao. infinitives after ἐτόλμησεν, “to eat, to sleep”
 πεποιήται: perf. 3. s. pas. of ποιέω, “was built”
 κάθηται: from κατα-ἤμαι, “sits down”

A True Story

ὅς δ' ἂν μὴ ὑπακούσῃ, καταδικάζεται ἀποθανεῖν ὡς λιπῶν τὴν τάξιν· ὁ δὲ θάνατός ἐστι σβεσθῆναι. παρεστῶτες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἐωρῶμεν τὰ γινόμενα καὶ ἠκούομεν ἅμα τῶν λύχνων ἀπολογουμένων καὶ τὰς αἰτίας λεγόντων δι' ἃς ἐβράδυνον. ἔνθα καὶ τὸν ἡμέτερον λύχνον ἐγνώρισα, καὶ προσειπὼν αὐτὸν περὶ τῶν κατ' οἶκον ἐπυρθανόμεν ὅπως ἔχοιεν· ὁ δέ μοι ἅπαντα ἐκεῖνα διηγῆσατο. Τὴν μὲν οὖν νύκτα ἐκείνην αὐτοῦ ἐμείναμεν, τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ ἄραντες ἐπλέομεν ἤδη πλησίον τῶν νεφῶν· ἔνθα δὴ καὶ τὴν Νεφελοκοκκυγίαν πόλιν ἰδόντες ἐθαυμάσαμεν, οὐ μέντοι ἐπέβημεν αὐτῆς· οὐ γὰρ εἶα τὸ πνεῦμα. βασιλεύειν μέντοι αὐτῶν

αἶρω: to take up, raise
αἰτία, ἡ: a charge, accusation
ἅμα: at once, at the same time
ἀποθνήσκω: to die
ἀπολογέομαι: to defend oneself
βασιλεύω: to rule, reign
βραδύνω: to delay, be late
γνωρίζω: to discover, recognize
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full
ἐπιβαίνω: to go into, visit
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our
θάνατος, ὁ: death
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel
καταδικάζω: to pass judgment against

λείπω: to leave, desert
λύχνος, ὁ: a lamp
μένω: to stay, remain
Νεφελοκοκκυγία, ἡ: Cloudcuckootown
νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
οἶκος, ὁ: a house, dwelling
παρίστημι: to set beside, make standing
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing, wind
προσείπον: to speak to
πυνθάνομαι: to learn
σβέννυμι: to quench, put out
τάξις, -εως, ἡ: a battle line, rank
ὑπακούω: to listen, attend to

ὅς ἂν μὴ ὑπακούσῃ: pres. general condition, “whoever does not obey...”
ὡς λιπῶν τὴν τάξιν: “for deserting”
λιπῶν: ao. part. nom. s. of **λείπω**
σβεσθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. of **σβέννυμι**, “to be put out”
παρεστῶτες: perf. part. nom. pl. of **περι-ἵστημι**, “standing around”
ἐωρῶμεν: impf. of **ὄράω**, “we saw”
ἐγνώρισα: ao. 1 s. of **γνωρίζω**, “I recognized”
ὅπως ἔχοιεν: ind. question taking the optative in secondary sequence, “how things were”
ἐμείναμεν: ao. of **μένω**, “we waited”
τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ (sc. **ἡμέρα**): “on the following day”
ἄραντες: ao. part. of **αἶρω**, “getting underway”
Νεφελοκοκκυγίαν: Cloud-Cuckooland, a utopian fantasy in Aristophanes’ *The Birds*.
ἐπέβημεν: ao. of **ἐπι-βαίνω**, “we disembarked onto”
εἶα: impf. 3 s. of **εἶάω**, “allow”

ἐλέγετο Κόρωνος ὁ Κοττυφίωνος. καὶ ἐγὼ ἐμνήσθην Ἄριστοφάνους τοῦ ποιητοῦ, ἀνδρὸς σοφοῦ καὶ ἀληθοῦς καὶ μάτην ἐφ' οἷς ἔγραψεν ἀπιστουμένου. τρίτη δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἡμέρα καὶ τὸν ὠκεανὸν ἤδη σαφῶς ἐωρῶμεν, γῆν δὲ οὐδαμοῦ, πλὴν γε τῶν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι· καὶ αὐταὶ δὲ πυρώδεις καὶ ὑπεραυγεῖς ἐφαντάζοντο. τῇ τετάρτῃ δὲ περὶ μεσημβρίαν μαλακῶς ἐνδιδόντος τοῦ πνεύματος καὶ συνιζάνοντος ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν καθεῖθμεν. [30] ὡς δὲ τοῦ ὕδατος ἐψαύσαμεν, θαυμασίως ὑπερηδόμεθα καὶ ὑπερεχαίρομεν καὶ πᾶσαν ἐκ τῶν παρόντων εὐφροσύνην ἐπιούμεθα καὶ ἀποβάντες ἐνηχόμεθα· καὶ γὰρ ἔτυχε γαλήνη οὖσα καὶ εὐσταθοῦν τὸ πέλαγος.

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
 ἀπιστέω: to disbelieve, distrust
 Ἄριστοφάνης, ὁ: Aristophanes
 γαλήνη, ἡ: still, calm
 ἐνδίδωμι: to give out
 εὐσταθέω: to be steady, favorable
 εὐφρόσυνος, -η, -ον: in good cheer, merry
 θαυμασίως: wonderfully
 κατήμι: to let down
 μαλακῶς: gently
 μάτην: in vain, idly, fruitlessly
 μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon
 μιμνήσκω: to remind, put
 νήχομαι: to swim
 οὐδαμοῦ: nowhere
 πλὴν: except + gen.

πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing, wind
 ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet
 πυρώδης, -ες: like fire, fiery
 σαφής, -ές: clear, plain
 σοφός, -ή, -όν: skilled, wise
 συνιζάνω: to sink in, collapse
 τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth
 τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third
 τυγχάνω: to happen
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
 ὑπεραυγής, -ές: shining brightly
 ὑπερήδομαι: to be happy
 ὑπερχαίρω: to rejoice exceedingly at
 φαντάζομαι: to appear
 ψαύω: to touch
 ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ὁ: the ocean

ἐμνήσθην: ao. pas. 1. s. of μιμνήσκομαι, “I remembered”
 μάτην...ἀπιστουμένου: “undeservedly not believed”
 ἐφ' οἷς ἔγραψεν: ao. of γράφω, “for what he wrote”
 ἐωρῶμεν: impf. of ὁράω
 ἐφαντάζοντο: impf. with inceptive force, “they began to seem fiery”
 ἐνδιδόντος τοῦ πνεύματος καὶ συνιζάνοντος: gen. abs., “the wind falling”
 καθεῖθμεν: ao. pas. of κατα-ἵημι, “we were set down”
 ἐψαύσαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of ψαύω, “we touched”
 ὑπερηδόμεθα: impf. of ὑπερ-ἡδομαι, “we were super-pleased”
 ἐπιούμεθα: impf. mid. of ποιέω, “we made ourselves merry”
 ἐνηχόμεθα: impf. of νήχομαι, “we went swimming”
 ἔτυχε οὖσα: “happened to be”
 ἔτυχε: ao. of τυγχάνω

A True Story

Ἔοικε δὲ ἀρχὴ κακῶν μειζόνων γίνεσθαι πολλάκις ἢ πρὸς τὸ βέλτιον μεταβολή· καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς δύο μόνας ἡμέρας ἐν εὐδία πλεύσαντες, τῆς τρίτης ὑποφαινούσης πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα τὸν ἥλιον ἄφνω ὀρώμεν θηρία καὶ κήτη πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, ἐν δὲ μέγιστον ἀπάντων ὅσον σταδίων χιλίων καὶ πεντακοσίων τὸ μέγεθος· ἐπήει δὲ κεχηγὸς καὶ πρὸ πολλοῦ ταραττον τὴν θάλατταν ἀφρῶ τε περικλυζόμενον καὶ τοὺς ὀδόντας ἐκφαῖνον πολὺ τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν φαλλῶν ὑψηλοτέρους, ὅξεῖς δὲ πάντας ὥσπερ σκόλοπας καὶ λευκοὺς ὥσπερ ἐλεφαντίνους. ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν τὸ ὕστατον ἀλλήλους προσειπόντες καὶ περιβαλόντες ἐμένομεν· τὸ δὲ ἤδη παρήν καὶ

ἀνίσχω: to lift up

ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares

ἀφρός, ὄ: foam

βελτίων, -ον: better

ἐκφαίνω: to show, reveal

ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory

εὐδία, ἡ: fair weather

θηρίον, τό: a wild creature

κάκη, ἡ: an evil, ill

κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster

λευκός, -ή, -όν: bright, shining, white

μένω: to stay, remain

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing

ὀδών, -όντος, ὄ: a tooth

ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, keen

πεντακόσιοι: five hundred

περιβάλλω: to throw around, embrace

περικλύζομαι: to be washed all round

πλέω: to sail, go by sea

προσλέγω: to address, speak to

σκόλοψ, -οπος, ὄ: a pointed object, hook

ταράττω: to stir, stir up

τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third

ὑποφαίνω: to bring to light, (of the sun) to rise

ὕστατος, -η, -ον: last, final

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, tall

φαλλός, ὄ: phallus

χάσκω: to have one's mouth open, gape

χίλιοι, -αι: a thousand

After sailing a few days, they encounter a whale that swallows them whole. They explore the interior of the whale, coming upon a man and his son who farm a portion of land inside.

ἔοικε...γίνεσθαι: "seems to be"

τῆς τρίτης (sc. ἡμέρας) ὑποφαινούσης: gen. abs., "the third day breaking"

ἀνίσχοντα: pr. part. acc., "rising"

ἐπήει: impf. of ἐπέρχομαι, "he attacked"

κεχηγὸς: perf. part. nom. s. neut. of χάσκω, "with mouth wide open"

ταράττον: pr. part. nom. s. neut., "disturbing"

ἐκφαῖνον: pr. part. nom. s. neut., "showing"

ὑψηλοτέρους: "teeth more upright than phalluses"

τὸ ὕστατον προσειπόντες: "having said our goodbyes"

περιβαλόντες: ao. part. of περιβάλλω, "having embraced"

παρήν: impf. 3. s. of παρα-εἶμι, "he was present"

ἀναρροφήσαν ἡμᾶς αὐτῇ νηϊ κατέπιεν. οὐ μέντοι ἔφθη συναράξει τοῖς ὀδοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τῶν ἀραιωμάτων ἢ ναῦς ἐς τὸ ἔσω διεξέπεσεν. [31] ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔνδον ἦμεν, τὸ μὲν πρῶτον σκότος ἦν καὶ οὐδὲν ἑωρῶμεν, ὕστερον δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀναχανόντος εἶδομεν κύτος μέγα καὶ πάντη πλατὺ καὶ ὑψηλόν, ἱκανὸν μυριάνδρω πόλει ἐνοικεῖν. ἔκειντο δὲ ἐν μέσῳ καὶ μεγάλοι καὶ μικροὶ ἰχθύες καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ θηρία συγκεκομμένα, καὶ πλοίων ἰστία καὶ ἄγκυραι, καὶ ἀνθρώπων ὀστέα καὶ φορτία, κατὰ μέσον δὲ καὶ γῆ καὶ λόφοι

ἄγκυρα, ἦ: anchor

ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth, gape wide

ἀραιώμα: interstice, crevice, chink

γῆ, γῆς, ἦ: earth, land

διεκπίπτω: to slip through, into

εἶδον: to see

ἔνδον: inside, within

ἐνοικεῖω: to live in, exist in

ἔσω: to the interior

θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast

ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: adequate, sufficient

ἰστίον, τό: a sail

ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὄ: a fish

καταπίνω: to gulp or swallow down

κέμαι: to be laid, located

κύτος, -εος, τό: a hollow, cavity

λόφος, ὄ: a hill, ridge

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle

μυριάνδρος, -ον: containing ten thousand inhabitants

ναῦς, νεώς, ἦ: a ship

ὀδών, -όντος, ὄ: a tooth

ὀστέον, τό: a bone

πάντη: on every side

πλατύς, -εῖα, -ύ: wide, broad

πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel

πόλις, -εως, ἦ: a city

σκότος, -εος, τό: darkness, gloom

συγκόπτω: to cut up, mangle

συναράσσω: to dash in pieces, shatter

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised

φθάνω: to come or do first or before

φορτίον, τό: a load, burden, cargo

ἀναρροφήσαν: ao. part. s. neut. of ἀναρροφέω, “with a gulp”

αὐτῇ νηϊ: “ship and all”

κατέπιεν: ao. 3. s. of καταπίνω, “swallowed”

οὐ ἔφθη: ao. 3. s. of φθάνω, with συναράξει, “he just missed,” literally, “he did not anticipate”

συναράξει: ao. inf. of συν-ἀράσσω, “shattering”

τοῖς ὀδοῦσιν: dat. of means, “with his teeth”

διεξέπεσεν: ao. 3. s. of δια-εκ-πίπτω, “fell through”

ἦμεν: impf. 1 pl. of εἶμι

ἑωρῶμεν: impf. 1 pl. of ὁράω

ἀναχανόντος: ao. part. gen. s. of ἀνα-χάσκω with αὐτοῦ, “him opening (his mouth)”

ἱκανὸν ἐνοικεῖν: epexegetic infinitive, “sufficient to dwell in”

συγκεκομμένα: perf. part. nom. pl. neut. of συγκόπτω, “mangled”

A True Story

ἦσαν, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, ἐκ τῆς ἰλύος ἦν κατέπινε συνιζάνουσα. ὕλη γοῦν ἐπ’ αὐτῆς καὶ δένδρα παντοῖα ἐπεφύκει καὶ λάχανα ἐβεβλαστήκει, καὶ ἐώκει πάντα ἐξεργασμένοις· περίμετρον δὲ τῆς γῆς στάδιοι διακόσιοι καὶ τεσσαράκοντα. ἦν δὲ ἰδεῖν καὶ ὄρνεα θαλάττια, λάρους καὶ ἀλκύνους, ἐπὶ τῶν δένδρων νεοττεύοντα.

[32] Τότε μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ πολὺν ἔδακρῦομεν, ὕστερον δὲ ἀναστήσαντες τοὺς ἐταίρους τὴν μὲν ναῦν ὑπεστηρίξαμεν, αὐτοὶ δὲ τὰ πυρεῖα συντριψάντες καὶ ἀνακαύσαντες δεῖπνον ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἐποιούμεθα. παρέκειτο δὲ ἄφθονα καὶ παντοδαπὰ κρέα τῶν ἰχθύων, καὶ ὕδωρ ἔτι τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Ἑωσφόρου εἶχομεν. τῇ

ἀλκύνων, -όνος, ἦ: the kingfisher
 ἀνακαίω: to light up
 ἀνίστημι: to raise up, rouse
 ἄφθονος, -ον: plentiful
 βλαστάνω: to bud, sprout
 δακρῦω: to weep, shed tears
 δεῖπνον, τό: dinner
 δένδρον, τό: a tree
 διακόσιοι, -αι, -α: two hundred
 ἐξεργάζομαι: to work out, manage
 ἐταῖρος, ό: a comrade, companion
 ἐώκει: it seemed good
 Ἑωσφόρος, ό: Morning Star
 θαλάττιος, -α, -ον: of the sea
 ἰλύς, ὕος, ἦ: mud, slime, dirt
 ἰχθύς, -ύος, ό: a fish
 καταπίνω: to gulp down, swallow
 κρέας, τό: flesh, meat

λάρος, ό: a cormorant, seagull
 λάχανον, -ου, τό: vegetables, greens
 νεοττεύω: to nest
 ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
 παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν: of all sorts
 παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts or kinds
 παράκειμαι: to lie beside or before
 περίμετρον, τό: the perimeter
 πυρεῖον, τό: a piece of wood, stick
 στάδιον, τό: a stade
 συνιζάνω: to sink in, settle down
 συντριβω: to rub together
 τεσσαράκοντα: forty
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
 ὕλη, ἦ: a forest
 ὑποστηρίζω: to underprop, shore up
 φύω: to produce, grow

ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ: “it seems to me”
 συνιζάνουσα: pr. part. nom. s. fem., “settling”
 ἦν κατέπινε: impf. of κατα-πίνω, “which he had swallowed”
 ἐπεφύκει: plupf. of φύω, “had grown”
 ἐβεβλαστήκει: plupf. of βλαστάνω, “had sprouted”
 ἐώκει: plupf. of εἶοικα + dat.
 ἐξεργασμένοις: pf. part. pas. of ἐξεργάζω, “cultivated”
 ἦν δὲ ἰδεῖν: “it was possible to see”
 νεοττεύοντα: pr. part. nom. pl. neut., “nesting”
 ἀναστήσαντες: ao. part. act. of ἀνα-ίστημι “standing up (our comrades)”
 ὑπεστηρίξαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of ὑποστηρίζω, “we shored up”
 συντριψάντες: ao. part. of συντριβω, “having rubbed together”
 εἶχομεν: impf. of ἔχω, “we had”

ἐπιούση δὲ διαναστάντες, εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι τὸ κῆτος, ἐωρῶμεν ἄλλοτε μὲν ὄρη, ἄλλοτε δὲ μόνον τὸν οὐρανόν, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ νήσους· καὶ γὰρ ἠσθανόμεθα φερομένου αὐτοῦ ὀξέως πρὸς πᾶν μέρος τῆς θαλάττης. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤδη ἐθάδες τῇ διατριβῇ ἐγενόμεθα, λαβὼν ἐπτὰ τῶν ἐταίρων ἐβάδιζον ἐς τὴν ὕλην περισκοπήσασθαι τὰ πάντα βουλόμενος. οὐπω δὲ πέντε ὄλους διελθὼν σταδίους εὗρον ἱερὸν Ποσειδῶνος, ὡς ἐδήλου ἢ ἐπιγραφῇ, καὶ μετ' οὐ πολὺ καὶ τάφους πολλοὺς καὶ στήλας ἐπ' αὐτῶν πλησίον τε πηγὴν ὕδατος διαυγοῦς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ κυνὸς ὑλακὴν ἠκούομεν καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο πόρρωθεν καὶ τινα καὶ ἔπαυλιν εἰκάζομεν.

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, to see

ἄλλοτε: at some times, at other times

ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth, gape wide

βαδίζω: to go slowly, to walk

βούλομαι: to will, wish

δηλόω: to show, exhibit, reveal

διανίσταμαι: to arise

διατριβή, ἡ: a way of spending time

διαυγής, -ές: transparent

διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through

ἐθάς, -άδος, ὁ: accustomed to

εἰκάζω: to liken

ἔπαυλος, ὁ: a farmhouse

ἐπιγραφῇ, ἡ: an inscription

εὐρίσκω: to find

ἱερὸν, τό: a sanctuary

καπνός, ὁ: smoke

κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale

κύων, ἡ: a dog

λαμβάνω: to take

μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share

νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

ὄλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire

ὀξέως: swiftly

ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill

οὐπω: not yet

οὐρανός, ὁ: heaven

περισκοπέω: to look round

πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams

πολλάκις: many times, often

πόρρωθεν: from afar

Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: Poseidon

στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone, marker

τάφος, ὁ: a grave

ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

ὑλακή, ἡ: a barking, howling

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

φαίνομαι: to appear, seem

φέρω: to bear, carry

τῇ ἐπιούσῃ: dat. of time when, "on the next day"

διαναστάντες: ao. part. intrans. of **δια-ανα-ίστημι**, "arising"

εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι: past general condition, "if ever he opened"

ἐωρῶμεν: impf. "we saw"

ἠσθανόμεθα: impf. of **αἰσθάνομαι**, "we would see"

φερομένου: pr. mid. part. "carrying himself"

περισκοπήσασθαι: ao. inf. of **περισκοπέω**, "to investigate"

διελθὼν: ao. part. of **δια-έρχομαι**, "having gone through"

εὗρον (=ἠἔδρον): ao. of **εὐρίσκω**, "I found"

καὶ τινα καὶ ἔπαυλιν εἰκάζομεν: "and something we supposed to be a farmhouse too"

A True Story

[33] Σπουδῆ οὖν βαδίζοντες ἐφιστάμεθα πρεσβύτη καὶ νεανίσκῳ μάλα προθύμως πρασιάν τινα ἐργαζομένοις καὶ ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τῆς πηγῆς ἐπ' αὐτὴν διοχετεύουσιν· ἡσθέντες οὖν ἄμα καὶ φοβηθέντες ἔστημεν· κάκεινοι δὲ ταῦτὸ ἡμῖν ὡς τὸ εἰκὸς παθόντες ἀναυδοὶ παρειστήκεσαν· χρόνῳ δὲ ὁ πρεσβύτης ἔφη, «Τίνες ὑμεῖς ἄρα ἐστέ, ὦ ξένοι; πότερον τῶν ἐναλίω δαιμόνων ἢ ἀνθρωποὶ δυστυχεῖς ἡμῖν παραπλήσιοι; καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἀνθρωποὶ ὄντες καὶ ἐν γῆ τραπεύμενοι νῦν θαλάττιοι γεγόναμεν καὶ συννηχόμεθα τῷ περιέχοντι τούτῳ θηρίῳ, οὐδ' ὁ πάσχομεν ἀκριβῶς εἰδότες·

ἀκριβῶς: exactly, certainly
ἄμα: at once, at the same time
ἀναυδος, -ον: speechless, silent
βαδίζω: to go, walk
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ: divine spirit, god
διοχετεύομαι: to be watered, be irrigated
δυστυχῆς, -ές: unlucky, unfortunate
ἐνάλιος, -α, -ον: of the sea
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor
ἐφίστημι: to stand upon
ἡδομαι: to enjoy, be delighted, take pleasure
θαλάττιος, -α, -ον: of or from the sea
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
ἴστημι: to stand up
μάλα: very, exceedingly
νεανίσκος, ὁ: a youth, boy

οἶδα: to know
παραπλήσιος, -α, -ον: such as, resembling
παρίστημι: to make to stand, set up
πάσχω: to receive an impression from without, to suffer
πάσχω: to suffer, feel
περιέχω: to encompass, surround
πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams
πότερος, -α, -ον: which of the two?
πρασιά, ἡ: a garden-plot
πρέσβυς, -εως, ὁ: an old man
πρόθυμος, -ον: ready, willing, eager, zealous
σπουδή, ἡ: haste, speed
συννήχομαι: to swim with
τρέφω: to breed, rear
φοβέω: to frighten
χρόνος, ὁ: time

ἐφιστάμεθα: impf. mid. of **ἐπι-ἴστημι**, “we approached”
ἐργαζομένοις, διοχετεύουσιν: pr. part. dat. pl., modifying **πρεσβύτη καὶ νεανίσκῳ**
ἡσθέντες: ao. part. of **ἡδομαι**, “being overjoyed”
φοβηθέντες: ao. part. pas. of **φοβέομαι**, “being made afraid”
ἔστημεν: ao. 1 pl. of **ἴστημι**, “we stopped”
τὸ αὐτὸ παθόντες: ao. part. of **πάσχω**, “having had the same experience”
ὡς τὸ εἰκός: “as is likely” **εἰκός** is the part. of **εἰόικα**
παρειστήκεσαν: plupf. 3 pl. of **παρα-ἴστημι**, “they stood”
τραφέντες: ao. part. pas. of **τρέφω**, “nourished”
γεγόναμεν: perf. 1 pl. of **γίνομαι**
συννηχόμεθα: pr. 1 pl. of **συν-νήχω**, “we swim about with”
περιέχοντι: pr. part. dat. s. of **περι-έχω**, “which encompasses”
εἰδότες: part. of **οἶδα**, “knowing”

Lucian

τεθνάναι μὲν γὰρ εἰκάζομεν, ζῆν δὲ πιστεύομεν.» πρὸς ταῦτα ἐγὼ εἶπον· «Καὶ ἡμεῖς τοι ἄνθρωποι, νεήλυδές μὲν, ὦ πάτερ, αὐτῷ σκάφει πρῶην καταποθέντες, προήλθομεν δὲ νῦν βουλόμενοι μαθεῖν τὰ ἐν τῇ ὕλῃ ὡς ἔχει· πολλὴ γὰρ τις καὶ λάσιος ἐφαίνετο. δαίμων δέ τις, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἡμᾶς ἤγαγεν σέ τε ὀψομένους καὶ εἰσομένους ὅτι μὴ μόνοι ἐν τῷδε καθείργμεθα τῷ θηρίῳ· ἀλλὰ φράσον γε ἡμῖν τὴν σαυτοῦ τύχην, ὅστις τε ὦν καὶ ὅπως δεῦρο εἰσῆλθες.» ὁ δὲ οὐ πρότερον ἔφη ἐρεῖν οὐδὲ πεύσεσθαι παρ' ἡμῶν,

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring	ὅπως: how?
δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ: divine spirit, god	ὀράω: to see
δεῦρο: hither	ὅστις: who?
εἰκάζω: to liken	πατήρ, ὁ: a father, sir
εἰσέρχομαι: to come to, enter into	πιστεύω: to trust, believe
ζάω: to live	προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast	πρώιος: early
καταπίνω: to gulp, swallow down	πυνθάνομαι: to learn, enquire
κατείργω: to drive into, shut in	σκάφος, -εος, τό: (the hull of) a ship
λάσιος, -ος, -ον: shaggy, rough, overgrown	τύχη, ἡ: fortune
μανθάνω: to learn	ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
μονός: only	φαίνομαι: to appear, seem
νήλυς, -υδος, ὁ: newly come, a new-comer	φράζω: to point out, indicate, show

τεθνάναι: perf. inf. of *θνήσκω*, “to be dead”
αὐτῷ σκάφει: “boat and all”
καταποθέντες: ao. part. pas. of *κατα-πίνω*, “having been swallowed up”
προήλθομεν: ao. of *προ-έρχομαι*, “we set out”
μαθεῖν: ao. inf. of *μανθάνω*, “to learn”
ὡς ἔχει: ind. question, “how things are”
ἤγαγεν: ao. of *ἄγω*, “led”
ὀψομένους: fut. part. of *οράω*, expressing purpose, “to see you”
εἰσομένους: fut. part. of *οἶδα*, expressing purpose, “to know”
καθείργμεθα: perf. 1 pl. of *κατα-ἐργάζω*, “we are shut up”
φράσον: ao. imper. of *φράζω*, “tell us”
ὅστις τε ὦν καὶ ὅπως δεῦρο εἰσῆλθες: ind. quest., “who you are and how you came here”
οὐ πρότερον ἔφη: the negative of *φημι* means “deny” or “refuse”
ἐρεῖν: fut. inf. of *λέγω*
πεύσεσθαι: fut. inf. of *πυνθάνομαι*, “or to inquire”

A True Story

πρὶν ξενίων τῶν παρόντων μεταδοῦναι, καὶ λαβὼν ἡμᾶς ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὴν οἰκίαν - ἐπεποίητο δὲ αὐτάρκη καὶ στιβάδας ἐνφοδομήτο καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐξήρτιστο - παραθεῖς δὲ ἡμῖν λάχανά τε καὶ ἀκρόδρνα καὶ ἰχθύς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ οἶνον ἐγχεάς, ἐπειδὴ ἱκανῶς ἐκορέσθημεν, ἐπυνθάνετο ἃ πεπόνθοιμεν· καὶ γὰρ πάντα ἐξῆς διηγησάμην, τὸν τε χειμῶνα καὶ τὰ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ καὶ τὸν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι πλοῦν, καὶ τὸν πόλεμον, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα μέχρι τῆς εἰς τὸ κῆτος καταδύσεως.

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
ἀκρόδρνα, τά: fruit-tree produce
αὐτάρκης, -ες: sufficient, independent
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail
ἐγχύνω: to pour out
ἐνοικοδομέω: to build in
ἐξαρτίζω: to complete, finish
ἐξῆς: one after another, in order
ἱκανῶς: sufficiently, enough
ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὄ: a fish
κατάδυσσις, -εως, ἦ: a going down into, descent
κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
κορέννυμι: to sate, satisfy
λάχανον, -ου, τό: vegetables, greens

μεταδίδωμι: to give part of, give a share of
μέχρι: to a given point, even so far
νήσος, -ου, ἦ: an island
ξένιος, -α, -ον: belonging to a friend and guest, hospitable
οἰκία, ἦ: a building, house, dwelling
οἶνος, ὄ: wine
παρατίθημι: to place beside
πάσχω: to suffer, endure
πόλεμος, ὄ: battle, fight, war
πρὶν: before
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry, enquire
στιβάς, -άδος, ἦ: a bed of straw, bunk
χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὄ: a storm

πρὶν + inf.: “before”

μεταδοῦναι: ao. inf. of μετα-δίδωμι, “providing”

λαβὼν: ao. part. of λαμβάνω, “having taken us”

ἦγεν: impf. of ἄγω, “he led”

ἐπεποίητο: plupf. mid. of ποιέω, “he had made it sufficient”

ἐνφοδομήτο: plupf. mid. of ἐν-οικοδομέω, “he had built into it”

ἐξήρτιστο: plupf. pas. of ἐξ-ἀρτίζω, “he had furnished”

παραθεῖς: ao. part. act. of παρατίθημι, “having set before”

ἐγχεάς: ao. part. nom. s. of ἐγ-χέω, “having poured out”

ἐκορέσθημεν: ao. pas. of κορέω, “we were sated”

ἃ πεπόνθοιμεν: ind. quest. with opt. in sec. seq. after ἐπυνθάνετο, “they inquired what we had suffered”

πεπόνθοιμεν: perf. opt. of πάσχω, “we had experienced”

διηγησάμην: ao. 1 s. mid. of δια-ἡγέομαι, “I narrated”

[34] Ὁ δὲ ὑπερθαυμάσας καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν μέρει τὰ καθ' αὐτὸν διεξήει λέγων, «Τὸ μὲν γένος εἰμί, ὦ ξένοι, Κύπριος, ὄρμηθεις δὲ κατ' ἐμπορίαν ἀπὸ τῆς πατρίδος μετὰ παιδός, ὃν ὄρατε, καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν οἰκετῶν ἔπλεον εἰς Ἰταλίαν ποικίλον φόρτον κομίζων ἐπὶ νεῶς μεγάλης, ἣν ἐπὶ στόματι τοῦ κήτους διαλελυμένην ἴσως ἐωράκατε. μέχρι μὲν οὖν Σικελίας εὐτυχῶς διεπλεύσαμεν· ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ἀρπασθέντες ἀνέμῳ σφοδρῶ τριταῖοι ἐς τὸν ὠκεανὸν ἀπηνέχθημεν, ἔνθα τῷ κήτει περιτυχόντες καὶ

ἀνεμος, ὄ: wind

ἀποφέρω: to carry off

ἀρπάζω: to take up, carry off

γένος, -οῦς, τό: race, kind

διαλύω: to break apart, wreck

διαπλέω: to sail across

διεξέρχομαι: to go through, to recount

ἐκεῖθεν: from that place, thence

ἐμπορία, ἡ: commerce, trade

εὐτυχής, -ές: successful, fortunate

ἴσως: equally, in like manner

Ἰταλία, ἡ: Italy

κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale

κομίζω: to take care of, provide for

Κύπριος, -α, -ον: of Cyprus, Cyprian

μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share

μέχρι: to a given point, even so far

ναῦς, νεῶς, ἡ: a ship

οἰκέτης, -ου, ὄ: a house-slave, menial

ὀρμάω: to set in motion, set out

παῖς, παιδός, ὄ: a child

πάτρη, ἴδος, ἡ: fatherland

περιτυγχάνω: to fall in with, meet with

ποικίλος, -η, -ον: many-colored, spotted

Σικελία, -ου, ἡ: Sicily

στόμα, τό: the mouth

σφοδρός, -ά, -όν: excessive, violent

τριταῖος, -α, -ον: on the third day

ὑπερθαυμάζω: to wonder exceedingly

φόρτος, ὄ: a load, a ship's freight or cargo

ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ὄ: the ocean

The man tells his story and gives information about the many other inhabitants of the whale.

ὑπερθαυμάσας: ao. part. of ὑπερθαυμάζω, “being amazed”

τὰ καθ' αὐτὸν: “about his own adventures”

διεξήει: impf. of δια-εκ-έρχομαι, “he began relating”

τὸ γένος: acc. of resp., “by race”

ὄρμηθεις: ao. part. nom. s. ὀρμάω, “having set out”

ὃν ὄρατε: “whom you see”

διαλελυμένην: perf. part. acc. s. διαλύω, “wrecked”

ἐωράκατε: perf. 2 pl. of ὀράω, “you have seen”

διεπλεύσαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of διαπλέω, “we sailed”

ἀρπασθέντες: ao. part. pas. of ἀρπάζω, “having been taken”

ἀπηνέχθημεν: ao. pas. 1 pl. of ἀπο-φέρω, “we were carried away”

περιτυχόντες: ao. part. of περιτυγχάνω, “falling in with”

A True Story

αὐτανδροὶ καταποθέντες δύο ἡμεῖς μόνοι τῶν ἄλλων ἀποθανόντων, ἐσώθημεν. θάψαντες δὲ τοὺς ἐταίρους καὶ ναὸν τῷ Ποσειδῶνι δειμάμενοι τουτονὶ τὸν βίον ζῶμεν, λάχανα μὲν κηπεύοντες, ἰχθῦς δὲ σιτούμενοι καὶ ἀκρόδρυα. πολλή δέ, ὡς ὀράτε, ἡ ὕλη, καὶ μὴν καὶ ἀμπέλους ἔχει πολλὰς, ἀφ' ὧν ἡδύτατος οἶνος γεννᾶται· καὶ τὴν πηγὴν δὲ ἴσως εἶδετε καλλίστου καὶ ψυχροτάτου ὕδατος. εὐνὴν δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν φύλλων ποιούμεθα, καὶ πῦρ ἄφθονον καίομεν, καὶ ὄρνεα δὲ θηρεύομεν τὰ εἰσπετόμενα, καὶ ζῶντας ἰχθῦς ἀγρεύομεν ἐξιόντες ἐπὶ τὰ βραγχία τοῦ θηρίου,

ἀγρεύω: to catch

ἀκρόδρυα, τὰ: produce

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a grape vine, tendril

αὐτανδρος, -ον: together with the men, men and all

ἄφθονος, -ον: plentiful

βίος, ὁ: a life

βραγχία, τὰ: the gills

γεννάω: to produce, yield

δέμω: to build

εἶδον: to see

εἰσπέτομαι: to fly in

ἐξέρχομαι: to go into

ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate

εὐνή, ἡ: a bed

ζάω: to live

ἡδύς, -εἶα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant

θάπτω: to bury, honor with funeral rites

θηρεύω: to hunt, go hunting

θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast

ἴσως: equally, in like manner

ἰχθῦς, -ύος, ὁ: a fish

κάλλιστος, -η, -ον: most beautiful

καταπίνω: to gulp down, swallow

κηπεύω: to grow, raise in a garden

λάχανον, -ον, τό: vegetables, greens

ναός, -ῶ, ὁ: the dwelling of a god, a temple

οἶνος, ὁ: wine

ὄρνεον, τό: a bird

πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams

Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: Poseidon

πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire

σιτέομαι: to eat

σώζω: to save

ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

φύλλον, τό: a leaf

ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill

καταποθέντες: ao. pas. of καταπίνω, “swallowed”

τῶν ἄλλων ἀποθανόντων: gen. abs., “the others having died”

ἀποθανόντων: ao. part. of ἀποθνήσκω

ἐσώθημεν: ao. pas. of σώζω, “we were saved”

δειμάμενοι: ao. part. mid. of δέμω, “having built”

εἶδετε: ao. 2 pl. of ὀράω, “you saw”

εἰσπετόμενα: pr. part. acc. pl. neut. of εἰσπέτομαι, “flying around”

ἐξιόντες: pr. part. of ἐξέρχομαι, “by going into”

ἐνθα καὶ λουόμεθα, ὁπότεν ἐπιθυμήσωμεν. καὶ μὴν καὶ λίμνη οὐ πόρρω ἐστὶν σταδίων εἴκοσι τὴν περίμετρον, ἰχθύς ἔχουσα παντοδαπούς, ἐν ἧ καὶ νηχόμεθα καὶ πλέομεν ἐπὶ σκάφους μικροῦ, ὃ ἐγὼ ἐναυπηγησάμην. ἔτη δέ ἐστιν ἡμῖν τῆς καταπόσεως ταῦτα ἐπτὰ καὶ εἴκοσι. [35] καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἴσως φέρειν δυνάμεθα, οἱ δὲ γείτονες ἡμῶν καὶ πάροιχοι σφόδρα χαλεποὶ καὶ βαρεῖς εἰσιν, ἄμικτοί τε ὄντες καὶ ἄγριοι.» «Ἥ γάρ,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «καὶ ἄλλοι τινές εἰσιν ἐν τῷ κήτει;» «Πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν,» ἔφη, «καὶ ἄξενοι καὶ τὰς μορφὰς ἀλλόκοτοι· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐσπέρια τῆς ὕλης καὶ οὐραία Ταριχᾶνες οἰκοῦσιν, ἔθνος ἐγχελυωπὸν καὶ

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: wild, savage
 ἀλλόκοτος, -ον: of unusual form, strange
 ἄμικτος, -ον: unmingled, unsociable
 ἄξενος, -ον: inhospitable
 βαρύς, -εῖα, -ύ: unpleasant, stern
 γείτων, -ονος, ὄ: a neighbor
 δύναμαι: to be able, capable
 ἐγχελυωπός, -όν: eel-eyed
 ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a people
 ἐπιθυμέω: to desire, wish
 ἐσπέριος, -α, -ον: western
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
 ἴσως: equally, in like manner
 ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὄ: a fish
 κατάποσις, -εως, ἦ: a gulping down, swallowing
 κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
 λίμνη, ἦ: a pool, lake

λούω: to wash, bathe
 μορφή, ἦ: form, shape
 ναυπηγέω: to build ships
 νηχόμεαι: to swim
 ὁπότεν: whenever
 οὐραῖος, ὄ: tail-end
 παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν: of every kind, of all sorts
 πάροιχος, -ον: dwelling beside or near
 περίμετρον, τό: the circumference
 πόρρω: further
 σκάφος, -εος, τό: (the hull of) a ship, a skiff
 σφόδρα: very, exceedingly
 Ταριχᾶνες, οἰ: Broilers
 ὕλη, ἦ: a forest
 χαλεπός, -ή, -όν: hard to bear, grievous

λουόμεθα: pr. mid. "we wash ourselves"
 ὁπότεν ἐπιθυμήσωμεν: general temporal clause, "whenever we wish"
 ἐπιθυμήσωμεν: ao. subj. of ἐπιθυμέω
 καὶ μὴν καὶ: "indeed there is even..."
 τὴν περίμετρον: "in circumference"
 ἐν ἧ: "in which"
 ἐναυπηγησάμην: ao. 1 s. mid. of ναυπηγέομαι, "I built a ship"
 ἦ γάρ: "do you mean to tell me that..."
 μὲν οὖν: "certainly!"
 τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐσπέρια: "the western parts"

A True Story

καραβοπρόσωπον, μάχιμον καὶ θρασὺ καὶ ὠμοφάγον· τὰ δὲ τῆς
έτέρας πλευρᾶς κατὰ τὸν δεξιὸν τοῖχον Τριτωνομένδητες, τὰ μὲν
ἄνω ἀνθρώποις εὐικότες, τὰ δὲ κάτω τοῖς γαλεώταις, ἦττον
μέντοι ἄδικοί εἰσιν τῶν ἄλλων· τὰ λαιὰ δὲ Καρκινόχειρες καὶ
Θυνοκέφαλοι συμμαχίαν τε καὶ φιλίαν πρὸς ἑαυτοὺς
πεποιημένοι· τὴν δὲ μεσόγαιαν νέμονται Παγουρίδαι καὶ
Ψηττόποδες, γένος μάχιμον καὶ δρομικώτατον· τὰ ἑῷα δέ, τὰ
πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στόματι, τὰ πολλὰ μὲν ἔρημά ἐστι, προσκλυζόμενα
τῇ θαλάττῃ· ὅμως δὲ ἐγὼ ταῦτα ἔχω φόρον τοῖς Ψηττόποσιν
ὑποτελῶν ἐκάστου ἔτους ὄστρεια πεντακόσια. [36] τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ

ἄδικος, -ον: unjust, wicked
γαλεώτης, -ου, ὄ: a catfish
γένος, -οῦς, τό: race, kind
δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right
δρομικός, -ή, -όν: good at running, swift
ἐρήμος, -ον: desolate, lonely, solitary
ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
ἑῷος, -α, -ον: eastern
ἦττων: less
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea
θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: bold, courageous
θυνοκέφαλος, ὄ: cod-headed
καραβοπρόσωπος, -ον: crab-faced
καρκινόχειρες, -ων: with crab's claws for
hands
κάτω: below
λαιός, -ά, -όν: on the left

μάχιμος, -ος, -ον: warlike
μεσογαία, ἡ: the inland parts, interior
νέμω: to hold, inhabit
ὄστρειον, τό: an oyster
πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred
πλευρά, -ᾶς, ἡ: a side
προσκλύζω: to wash with waves
στόμα, τό: the mouth
συμμαχία, ἡ: an alliance
τοῖχος, ὄ: a wall
Τριτωνομένδητες, οἱ: Mergoats
ὑποτελέω: to pay tribute
φιλία, ἡ: friendship
φόρος, ὄ: tribute
Ψηττόποδες, οἱ: Sole-feet
ὠμοφάγος, -ον: eating raw flesh

τὰ δὲ τῆς έτέρας πλευρᾶς: "as for those on each side"

κατὰ τὸν δεξιὸν: "on the right"

τὰ λαιὰ: "on the left"

πεποιημένοι: perf. part. mid., "having made to each other"

τὴν δὲ μεσόγαιαν: "in the middle"

τὰ ἑῷα δέ: "the eastern part"

ταῦτα ἔχω: "I inhabit these parts"

ἐκάστου ἔτους: gen. s., "each year"

χώρα ἐστίν· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρή ὀρᾶν ὅπως δυνησόμεθα τοσοῦτοις ἔθνεσι μάχεσθαι καὶ ὅπως βιοτεύσομεν.» «Πόσοι δέ,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «πάντες οὗτοί εἰσιν;» «Πλείους,» ἔφη, «τῶν χιλίων.» «Ἔπλα δὲ τίνα ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς;» «Οὐδέν,» ἔφη, «πλὴν τὰ ὀστᾶ τῶν ἰχθύων.» «Οὐκοῦν,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «ἄριστα ἂν ἔχοι διὰ μάχης ἐλθεῖν αὐτοῖς, ἅτε οὖσιν ἀνόπλοις αὐτούς γε ὠπλισμένους· εἰ γὰρ κρατήσομεν αὐτῶν, ἀδεῶς τὸν λοιπὸν βίον οἰκήσομεν.»

ἀδεής, -ές: without fear, fearless

ἀνοπλος, -ον: without weapons

ἄριστος: best

βίος, ὁ: life

βιοτεύω: to live

δύναμαι: to be able

ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a people

ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ: a fish

κρατέω: to be strong, mighty, powerful

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat

οἰκέω: to inhabit, occupy

ὀπλίζω: to arm

ὄπλον, τό: weapon

ὀστέον, τό: bone

οὐκοῦν: therefore, then, accordingly

πλείων, -ον: more

πόσος, -η, -ον: how many

χίλιος: a thousand

χώρα, ἡ: land, space

ὅπως δυνησόμεθα...βιοτεύσομεν: fut. indicatives in object clause after ὀρᾶν “to see how we will be able...”

οὐδέν πλὴν: “nothing except...”

οὐκοῦν: anticipating agreement to the proposal

ἄριστα ἂν ἔχοι: potential optative, “it would be best”

ἅτε οὖσιν: ἅτε + participle, indicating the ground for the proposal, “inasmuch as they are unarmed”

αὐτούς ὠπλισμένους: “but we are armed”

εἰ κρατήσομεν...: future emotional using the future indicative in the protasis, “if we shall prevail”

A True Story

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἀπελθόντες ἐπὶ ναῦν παρεσκευαζόμεθα. αἰτία δὲ τοῦ πολέμου ἔμελλεν ἔσεσθαι τοῦ φόρου ἢ οὐκ ἀπόδοσις, ἤδη τῆς προθεσμίας ἐνεστώσης. καὶ δὴ οἱ μὲν ἔπεμπον ἀπαιτοῦντες τὸν δασμόν· ὁ δὲ ὑπεροπτικῶς ἀποκρινάμενος ἀπεδίωξε τοὺς ἀγγέλους. πρῶτοι οὖν οἱ Ψηττόποδες καὶ οἱ Παγουρίδαι χαλεπαίνοντες τῷ Σκινθάρῳ - τοῦτο γὰρ ἐκαλεῖτο - μετὰ πολλοῦ θορύβου ἐπήεσαν. [37] ἡμεῖς δὲ τὴν ἔφοδον ὑποπτεύοντες ἐξοπλισάμενοι ἀνεμένομεν, λόχον τινὰ προτάξαντες ἀνδρῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι. προείρητο δὲ τοῖς ἐν τῇ ἐνέδρᾳ, ἐπειδὴν

ἀγγελος, ὁ: a messenger, envoy
αἰτία, ἡ: a cause
ἀναμένω: to wait for, await
ἀπαιτέω: to demand back, demand
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
ἀποδιώκω: to chase away
ἀπόδοσις, -εως, ἡ: a payment
ἀποκρίνω: to answer
δασμός, ὁ: a sharing of spoil
ἐνέδρα, ἡ: a lying in wait, ambush
ἐνίστημι: to put, set, place in
ἐξοπλίζω: to arm completely
ἐπέρχομαι: to attack
ἔφοδος, ἡ: an approach, attack
θορύβος, ὁ: a noise, uproar, clamor

καλέω: to call
λόχος, ὁ: an ambush
παρασκευάζω: to get ready, prepare
πέμπω: to send, dispatch
πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war
προερέω: to say beforehand
προθέσμιος: appointed
προτάσσω: to place or post in front
Σκινθάρως, ὁ: Scintharus
ὑπεροπτικός, -ή, -όν: contemptuous, disdainful
ὑποπτεύω: to suspect, anticipate
φόρος, ὁ: that which is brought in, tribute
χαλεπαίνω: to be severe, sore
Ψηττόποδες, οἱ: Sole-foot

They decide to join forces and revolt from the masters who demand tribute. They defeat the enemy and dwell in the whale, living a life of ease.

ἔδοξε ταῦτα: “these things seemed agreeable”

ἀπελθόντες: ao. part. of ἀπέρχομαι, “departing”

ἔμελλεν ἔσεσθαι: “was to be”

ἢ οὐκ ἀπόδοσις: “the non-payment”

τῆς προθεσμίας (sc. ἡμέρας) ἐνεστώσης: gen. abs., “the appointed day having arrived”

ἐνεστώσης: perf. act. part. of ἐν-ίστημι

καὶ δὴ: introducing a climax, “finally...”

ἀπεδίωξε: ao. of ἀπο-διώκω, “he drove off”

ἐπήεσαν: impf. of ἐπέρχομαι, “they attacked”

ἀνεμένομεν: impf. of ἀνα-μένω, “we were waiting”

προτάξαντες: ao. part. of προ-τάσσω, “having stationed”

προείρητο: plupf. 3 s. pas. of προ-λέγω, used impersonally, “it had been directed”

ἴδωσι παρεληλυθότας τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπανίστασθαι· καὶ οὕτως ἐποίησαν. ἐπαναστάντες γὰρ κατόπιν ἔκοπτον αὐτούς, καὶ ἡμεῖς δὲ αὐτοὶ πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι τὸν ἀριθμὸν ὄντες - καὶ γὰρ ὁ Σκίνθαρος καὶ ὁ παῖς αὐτοῦ συνεστρατεύοντο - ὑπηντιάζομεν, καὶ συμμίζαντες θυμῷ καὶ ῥώμῃ διεκινδυνεύομεν. τέλος δὲ τροπὴν αὐτῶν ποιησάμενοι κατεδιώξαμεν ἄχρι πρὸς τοὺς φωλεούς. ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν πολεμίων ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν, ἡμῶν δὲ εἰς ὁ κυβερνήτης, τρίγλης πλευρᾷ διαπαρεῖς τὸ μετάφρενον. [38] ἐκείνην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ τὴν νύκτα ἐπηυλισάμεθα

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

ἀριθμός: number

ἄχρι: all the way

διακινδυνεύω: to hazard all

διαπαρήμι: to pierce through

ἑβδομήκοντα: seventy

ἑκατόν: a hundred

ἐπανίστημι: to fall upon

ἐπαυλιζομαι: to encamp on the field

θυμός, ὁ: the soul, emotion

καταδιώκω: to pursue closely

κατόπιν: from behind

κόπτω: to strike

κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: pilot

μετάφρενον, τό: the part behind the midriff

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child

παρέρχομαι: to go by, to pass by

πλευρά, -ās, ἡ: lung

ῥώμη, ἡ: bodily strength, strength, might

Σκίνθαρος, ὁ: Scintharus

συμμίγνυμι: to mix together

συστρατεύω: to join in an expedition

τέλος, -εος, τό: finally

τρίγλη, ἡ: the red mullet

τροπή, ἡ: a turning, flight

ὑπαντιάζω: to encounter

φωλεός, ὁ: den

ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσι: general temporal clause, “whenever they saw”

ἴδωσι: ao. subj. of εἶδον

παρεληλυθότας: perf. part. acc. pl. of παρα-ἔρχομαι “once they had passed by”

ἐπανίστασθαι: pres. inf. of ἐπι-ανα-ἵστημι in ind. command after προεἰρηγο: “to fall upon them”

ἐπαναστάντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-ἀνα-ἵστημι

καὶ γὰρ...καί: “since both he and his son...”

ὑπηντιάζομεν: impf. of ὑπο-ἀντιάζω, “met them head on”

συμμίζαντες: ao. part. of συμμίγνυμι, “engaging”

κατεδιώξαμεν: ao. of κατα-διώκω, “we routed”

ἀπέθανον: ao. of ἀποθνήσκω, “died”

διαπαρεῖς: ao. part. nom. s. of δια-παρα-ἵημι, “having been run through”

ἐπηυλισάμεθα: ao. of ἐπι-αυλιζω, “we bivouacked”

A True Story

τῇ μάχῃ καὶ τρόπαιον ἐστήσαμεν ῥάχιν ξηρὰν δελφίνος ἀναπήξαντες. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι αἰσθόμενοι παρήσαν, τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν κέρας ἔχοντες οἱ Ταριχᾶνες - ἡγείτο δὲ αὐτῶν Πήλαμος - τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον οἱ Θυννοκέφαλοι, τὸ μέσον δὲ οἱ Καρκινόχειρες· οἱ γὰρ Τριτωνομένδητες τὴν ἡσυχίαν ἦγον οὐδετέροις συμμαχεῖν προαιρούμενοι. ἡμεῖς δὲ προαπαντήσαντες αὐτοῖς παρὰ τὸ Ποσειδώνιον συνεμίξαμεν πολλῇ βοῇ χρώμενοι, ἀντήχει δὲ τὸ κύτος ὥσπερ τὰ σπήλαια. τρεψάμενοι δὲ αὐτούς, ἄτε γυμνήτας ὄντας, καὶ καταδιώξαντες ἐς τὴν ὕλην τὸ λοιπὸν ἐπεκρατοῦμεν τῆς γῆς. [39] καὶ μετ' οὐ πολὺ κήρυκας

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive
ἀναπήγνυμι: to transfix, impale
ἀντηχέω: to sound or sing in answer
βοή, ἦ: a loud cry, shout
γῆ, γῆς, ἦ: earth
γυμνής, -ῆτος, ὄ: a light-armed
 footsoldier, slinger
δεξιός, -ά, -όν: right
ἐπικρατέω: to rule over
εὐώνυμος, -α, -ον: left
ἡσυχία, ἦ: quiet
θυννοκέφαλος, ὄ: tunny-headed
καρκινόχειρες, -ων: with crab's claws for
 hands
καταδιώκω: to pursue closely
κέρας, τό: horn, flank of an army
κήρυξ, -υκος, ὄ: a herald

κύτος, -εος, τό: a hollow
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
μάχη, ἦ: battle
ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry
οὐδέτερος, -α, -ον: neither of the two
Ποσειδώνιον, τό: Temple of Poseidon
προαιρέω: to choose
προαπαντάω: to go forth to meet
ῥάχis, -εως, ὄ: the lower part of the back
σπήλαιον, τό: a grotto, cave
συμμαχέω: to be an ally
συμμίγνυμι: to mix together
Ταριχᾶνες, οἱ: Broilers
τρέπω: to turn or direct
Τριτωνομένδητες, οἱ: Mergoats
τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy
ὕλη, ἦ: a forest
ὑστεραίῳ, -α, -ον: on the next day

τῇ μάχῃ: “on the battlefield”
ἐστήσαμεν: ao. act. of ἵστημι, “we set up”
ἀναπήξαντες: ao. part. of ἀνα-πήγνυμι, “by impaling”
αἰσθόμενοι: ao. part. of αἰσθάνομαι, “having heard of”
τὴν ἡσυχίαν ἦγον: “they were staying out of the action”
προαπαντήσαντες: ao. part. of προ-απο-αντέω, “having gone out to meet them”
συνεμίξαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of συμμίγνυμι, “we engaged them”
ἀντήχει: impf. of ἀντ-ηχέω, “was resounding”
ἄτε γυμνήτας ὄντας: ἄτε + participle giving the cause of action, “because they were light-armed”
ἐπεκρατοῦμεν: impf. of ἐπι-κρατέω, “we ruled over”

ἀποστείλαντες νεκρούς τε ἀνηροῦντο καὶ περὶ φιλίας διελέγοντο·
 ἡμῖν δὲ οὐκ ἐδόκει σπένδεσθαι, ἀλλὰ τῇ ὑστεραία χωρήσαντες ἐπ’
 αὐτοὺς πάντας ἄρδην ἐξεκόψαμεν πλὴν τῶν Τριτωνομενδήτων.
 οὗτοι δὲ ὡς εἶδον τὰ γινόμενα, διαδράντες ἐκ τῶν βραγχίων
 ἀφήκαν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. ἡμεῖς δὲ τὴν χώραν ἐπελθόντες
 ἔρημον ἤδη οὖσαν τῶν πολεμίων τὸ λοιπὸν ἀδεῶς κατῴκουμεν,
 τὰ πολλὰ γυμνασίους τε καὶ κυνηγεσίους χρώμενοι καὶ
 ἀμπελουργοῦντες καὶ τὸν καρπὸν συγκομιζόμενοι τὸν ἐκ τῶν
 δένδρων, καὶ ὅλως ἐώκειμεν τοῖς ἐν δεσμοτηρίῳ μεγάλῳ καὶ
 ἀφύκτῳ τρυφῶσι καὶ λελυμένοις.

ἀδεής, -ές: without fear	θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea
ἀμπελουργέω: to dress vines	καρπός, ὁ: fruit
ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise	κυνηγέσιον, τό: a pack of hounds
ἀποστέλλω: to send out	λύω: to loose, free
ἄρδην: wholly	νεκρός, ὁ: corpse
ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge	οἰκέω: inhabit
ἄφυκτος, -ον: from which none escape	σπένδω: to pour a drink-offering, make peace
γυμνάσιον, τό: bodily exercises	συγκομίζω: to carry or bring together
δένδρον, τό: a tree	Τριτωνομένδητες, οἱ: Mergoats
δεσμοτήριον, τό: a prison	τρυφάω: to live luxuriously
διαδιδράσκω: to run off, get away, escape	ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: on the day after
διαλέγομαι: to discourse	φιλία, ἡ: friendly love, affection, friendship
ἐκκόπτω: to cut out, knock out	χώρα, ἡ: space, land
ἐπέρχομαι: to go upon	χωρέω: to give way, go
ἐρήμος, -ον: desolate, lonely, solitary	

ἀποστείλαντες: ao. part. of ἀποστέλλω, “having sent”
 ἀνηροῦντο: impf. of ἀνα-αἰρέω, “they were seeking back”
 χωρήσαντες: ao. part. of χωρέω, “having marched”
 ἐξεκόψαμεν: ao. of ἐκκόπτω, “we exterminated”
 διαδράντες: ao. part. of δια-διδράσκω, “having run out through”
 αὐτοὺς ἀφήκαν: ao. of ἀφίημι, “they threw themselves”
 ἐπελθόντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-ἔρχομαι, “having occupied”
 κατῴκουμεν: impf. of κατα-οἰκέω, “we dwell”
 ἀμπελουργοῦντες: pr. part. of ἀμπελουργέω, “tending vines”
 καὶ ὅλως: “and generally”
 ἐώκειμεν: plupf. of εἰοίκα, “we resembled” + dat.
 τρυφῶσι: pr. part. dat. pl. τρυφάω, “(men) living luxuriously”
 λελυμένοις: perf. part. dat. pl. λύω, “freed”

A True Story

Ἐνιαυτὸν μὲν οὖν καὶ μῆνας ὀκτῶ τοῦτον διήγομεν τὸν τρόπον. [40] τῷ δ' ἐνάτῳ μηνὶ πέμπτη ἵσταμένου, περὶ τὴν δευτέραν τοῦ στόματος ἀνοιξιν - ἅπαξ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο κατὰ τὴν ὥραν ἐκάστην ἐποίει τὸ κῆτος, ὥστε ἡμᾶς πρὸς τὰς ἀνοίξεις τεκμαίρεσθαι τὰς ὥρας - περὶ οὖν τὴν δευτέραν, ὥσπερ ἔφην, ἀνοιξιν, ἄφνω βοή τε πολλή καὶ θόρυβος ἠκούετο καὶ ὥσπερ κελεύσματα καὶ εἰρεσίαι· ταραχθέντες οὖν ἀνειρπύσαμεν ἐπ' αὐτὸ τὸ στόμα τοῦ θηρίου καὶ στάντες ἐνδοτέρῳ τῶν ὀδόντων καθεωρῶμεν ἀπάντων ὧν ἐγὼ εἶδον θεαμάτων παραδοξότατον,

ἀνειρπύζω: to creep up
ἀνοιξίς, -εως, ἡ: an opening
ἅπαξ: once
ἅπας: all, the whole
ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares
βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout
δευτέρος, -α, -ον: second
διάγω: to carry over, live
εἰρεσία, ἡ: rowing
ἐνάτος, -η, -ον: ninth
ἐνδοτέρῳ: quite within
ἐνιαυτός, ὁ: year
θέαμα, -ατος, τό: a sight, spectacle
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast

θόρυβος, ὁ: a noise, uproar
ἴστημι: to stand up
κελεύσμα, -ατος, τό: a road, path, way
κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month
ὀδών, -όντος, ὁ: a tooth
ὀκτώ: eight
παραδόξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical
πέμπτος, -η, -ον: the fifth
στόμα, τό: the mouth
ταράσσω: to stir, trouble
τεκμαίρομαι: to fix by a boundary
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner
ῶρα, ἡ: period of time

From inside the whale they see an incredible sea battle with islands as ships.

πέμπτη ἵσταμένου (sc. **μηνός**): “on the fifth day from the month beginning”

ἵσταμένου: pr. part. mid. gen. s. of **ἴστημι**

ὥστε ἡμᾶς τεκμαίρεσθαι: result clause, “so that we could mark time by the openings”

ἠκούετο: impf. pas. of **ἀκούω**, “were heard”

ὥσπερ κελεύσματα: “something like commands”

ταραχθέντες: ao. part. of **ταράττω**, “becoming excited”

ἀνειρπύσαμεν: ao. of **ἀνα-ἔρπύζω**, “we crept up”

στάντες: ao. intr. part. of **ἴστημι**, “standing”

καθεωρῶμεν: impf. of **κατα-ὀράω**, “we saw”

ἀπάντων ὧν: “of all the things I saw,” the relative pronoun is “attracted” into the case of its antecedent, producing **ὧν** instead of the expected **οὓς**

ἄνδρας μεγάλους, ὅσον ἡμισταδιαίους τὰς ἡλικίας, ἐπὶ νήσων
 μεγάλων προσπλέοντας ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τριήρων. οἶδα μὲν οὖν
 ἀπίστοις εὐκότα ἱστορήσων, λέγω δὲ ὄμως. νῆσοι ἦσαν ἐπιμήκεις
 μὲν, οὐ πάνυ δὲ ὑψηλαί, ὅσον ἑκατὸν σταδίων ἑκάστη τὸ
 περίμετρον· ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτῶν ἔπλεον τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐκείνων ἀμφὶ τοὺς
 εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν· τούτων δὲ οἱ μὲν παρ' ἑκάτερα τῆς νήσου
 καθήμενοι ἐφεξῆς ἐκωπηλάτουν κυπαρίττοις μεγάλαις
 αὐτοκλάδοις καὶ αὐτοκόμοις ὥσπερ ἔρετμοῖς, κατόπιν δὲ ἐπὶ τῆς
 πρύμνης, ὡς ἐδόκει, κυβερνήτης ἐπὶ λόφου ὑψηλοῦ εἰστήκει
 χάλκεον ἔχων πηδάλιον πεντασταδιαῖον τὸ μῆκος· ἐπὶ δὲ

ἀπιστος: not to be trusted
 αὐτόκλαδος, -ον: branches and all
 αὐτόκομος, -ον: shaggy
 ἑκάτερος: each of two
 ἑκατόν: a hundred
 εὐοικα: it seemed good
 ἐπιμήκης, -ες: longish, oblong
 ἔρετμόν, τό: an oar
 ἐφεξῆς: in order
 ἡλικία, ἡ: age, stature
 ἡμισταδιαῖος, -α, -ον: of half a stadium
 ἵστημι: to stand up
 ἱστορέω: to inquire into
 κάθημαι: to be seated
 κατόπιν: behind, after
 κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὄ: a steersman, pilot

κυπαρίττος, ἡ: a cypress
 κωπηλατέω: to pull an oar
 λόφος, ὄ: crest
 μῆκος, -εος: length
 νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
 οἶδα: to know
 ὄμως: all the same, nevertheless, still
 πενταστάδιος, -ον: of five stades
 περίμετρον, τό: the circumference
 πηδάλιον, -ου, τό: a rudder or an oar used
 for steering
 προσπλέω: to sail towards or against
 πρύμνα, -ης, ἡ: the stern, poop
 τριήρης, -εος, ἡ: a trireme
 ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised
 χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: of copper or bronze

προσπλέοντας: ao. part of προσ-πλέω, “sailing forth”
 οἶδα...ἱστορήσων: ind. statement, “I know that I am about to relate”
 ἱστορήσων: fut. part. nom. s.
 μὲν οὖν... λέξω δὲ ὄμως: “even though...nevertheless I shall say”
 οἱ μὲν παρ' ἑκάτερα: “some on the sides”
 καθήμενοι: pr. part. of κατα-ἤμαι
 ἐκωπηλάτουν impf. of κωπηλατέω, “were rowing”
 αὐτοκλάδοις: = κλάδοις αὐτοῖς, “with branches and all”
 αὐτοκόμοις: = κόμοις αὐτοῖς “with leaves and all”
 εἰστήκει: plupf. of (ἵστημι), “he had set himself up and was standing”
 τὸ μῆκος: acc. of respect, “in length”

A True Story

τῆς πρώρας ὅσον τετταράκοντα ὀπλισμένοι αὐτῶν ἐμάχοντο, πάντα εὐοκότες ἀνθρώποις πλὴν τῆς κόμης· αὕτη δὲ πῦρ ἦν καὶ ἐκάετο, ὥστε οὐδὲ κορυθῶν ἐδέοντο. ἀντὶ δὲ ἰστιῶν ὁ ἄνεμος ἐμπίπτων τῇ ὕλλῃ, πολλῇ οὐσῃ ἐν ἐκάστη, ἐκόλλου τε ταύτην καὶ ἔφερε τὴν νῆσον ἢ ἐθέλοι ὁ κυβερνήτης· κελουστής δὲ ἐφειστήκει αὐτοῖς, καὶ πρὸς τὴν εἰρεσίαν ὀξέως ἐκινούντο ὥσπερ τὰ μακρὰ τῶν πλοίων.

[41] Τὸ μὲν οὖν πρῶτον δύο ἢ τρεῖς ἐωρῶμεν, ὕστερον δὲ ἐφάνησαν ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι, καὶ διαστάντες ἐπολέμουν καὶ ἐναυμάχουν. πολλαὶ μὲν οὖν ἀντίπρωροι συνηράσσοντο ἀλλήλαις,

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
ἀντίπρωρος, -ον: with the prow towards
διίστημι: to set apart
ἐθέλω: to will, wish
εἰρεσία, ἡ: rowing
ἐμπίτνω: fall upon
ἑξακόσιοι, -αι, -α: six hundred
ἕοικα: to seem
ἐφίστημι: to stand on
ἰστιῶν, τό: a sail
καίω: to kindle, burn
κελουστής, -οῦ, ὁ: the boatswain
κινέω: to set in motion, to move
κολπόω: to form into a swelling fold
κόμη, ἡ: the hair

κόρυθος, ὁ: a helmet, helm, casque
κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: a steersman, helmsman, pilot
ναυμαχέω: engage in a naval battle
νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
ὀξύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sharp, keen
ὀπλίζω: to arm
πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
πολεμῶ: to make hostile, make an enemy
πρῶρα, ἡ: a prow, bow
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
συναράσσω: to dash together, dash in pieces
τετταράκοντα: forty
ὕλλῃ, ἡ: a forest

ὀπλισμένοι: perf. part. of ὀπλίζω, “having armed themselves”

καὶ ἐκάετο: “and was burning”

ὥστε οὐδὲ κορυθῶν ἐδέοντο: result clause with indicative indicating actual result, “so they didn't need helmets”

ἐν ἐκάστη (sc. νῆσῳ): “on each island”

ἐκόλλου ταύτην: impf. of κολπόω, “was filling this (i.e., forest) like a sail”

ἢ ἐθέλοι: general relative clause with optative after a past tense, “wherever he wished”

ἐφειστήκει: plupf. of ἐπι-ἵστημι, “he had set himself up and was standing over them”

ἐκινούντο: impf. of κινέω, “they were moving”

ὥσπερ τὰ μακρὰ τῶν πλοίων: “like war galleys”

ἐωρῶμεν: impf. of ὁράω, “we saw”

ἐφάνησαν: ao. pas. 3 pl. of φαίνομαι, “appeared”

διαστάντες: ao. part. of δια-ἵστημι, “opposing each other”

συνηράσσοντο: impf. of συν-ἄράσσω, “dashed together”

πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ ἐμβληθεῖσαι κατεδύοντο, αἱ δὲ συμπλεκόμεναι καρτερῶς διηγωνίζοντο καὶ οὐ ῥαδίως ἀπελύοντο· οἱ γὰρ ἐπὶ τῆς πρῶρας τεταγμένοι πᾶσαν ἐπεδείκνυντο προθυμίαν ἐπιβαίνοντες καὶ ἀναιροῦντες· ἐζώγρει δὲ οὐδεῖς. ἀντὶ δὲ χειρῶν σιδηρῶν πολύποδας μεγάλους ἐκδεδεμένους ἀλλήλοις ἐπερρίπτουν, οἱ δὲ περιπλεκόμενοι τῇ ὕλῃ κατεῖχον τὴν νῆσον. ἔβαλλον μέντοι καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον ὄστρεοῖς τε ἀμαξοπληθέσι καὶ σπόγγοις πλεθριαίοις. [42] ἡγείτο δὲ τῶν μὲν Αἰολοκένταυρος, τῶν δὲ Θαλασσοπότης·

Αἰολοκένταυρος, ὁ: “Gleaming Centaur”

ἀμαξοπληθής, -ές: large enough to fill a wagon

ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise

ἀπολύω: to loose from

βάλλω: to throw

διαγωνίζομαι: to contend, struggle or fight against

ἐκδέω: to fasten to or on

ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, ram

ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon

ἐπιδείκνυμι: to exhibit as a specimen

ἐπιρριπτέω: to throw, cast at

ζωγρέω: to take alive, take captive

ἡγέομαι: to go before, lead the way

Θαλασσοπότης, ὁ: “Sea-drinker”

καρτερός, -ά, -όν: strong

καταδύω: to go down, sink, set

κατέχω: to hold fast

νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

ὄστρειον, τό: an oyster

περιπλέκω: to twine or enfold round

πλεθριαῖος, -α, -ον: broad or long

πολύπους, -ποδος: octopus

προθυμία, ἡ: readiness, willingness

πρῶρα, ἡ: the forepart of a ship, prow, bow

ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready

σιδήρεος, -η, -ον: made of iron or steel, iron

σπόγγος, ὁ: a sponge

συμμαχέω: to be an ally

συμπλέκω: to twine or plait together

τάσσω: to arrange, put in order

τιτρώσκω: to wound

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

χείρ, ἡ: the hand

ἐμβληθεῖσαι: ao. part. pas. of ἐν-βάλλω, “having been rammed”

συμπλεκόμεναι: “grappling”

διηγωνίζοντο: impf. mid. of δια-αγωνίζομαι, “battled each other”

τεταγμένοι: perf. part. mid/pas. of τάσσω, “those stationed”

ἀντὶ χειρῶν σιδηρῶν: “instead of iron hands” (i.e. grappling hooks)

πολύποδας μεγάλους: “giant octopuses”

ἐκδεδεμένους: perf. part. of ἐκ-δέω, “attached to”

ἐπερρίπτουν: impf. of ἐπιρρίπτω, “they threw at”

ἐτίτρωσκον: impf., “they wounded”

ἀμαξοπληθέσι: “that would fill a wagon”

σπόγγοις πλεθριαίοις: “with hundred-foot sponges”

A True Story

καὶ μάχη αὐτοῖς ἐγεγένητο, ὡς ἐδόκει, λείας ἔνεκα· ἐλέγετο γὰρ ὁ
Θαλασσοπότης πολλὰς ἀγέλας δελφίνων τοῦ Αἰολοκενταύρου
ἐλληλακέναι, ὡς ἦν ἀκούειν ἐπικαλούντων ἀλλήλοις καὶ τὰ
ὀνόματα τῶν βασιλέων ἐπιβοωμένων. τέλος δὲ νικῶσιν οἱ τοῦ
Αἰολοκενταύρου καὶ νήσους τῶν πολεμίων καταδύουσιν ἀμφὶ τὰς
πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν· καὶ ἄλλας τρεῖς λαμβάνουσιν αὐτοῖς
ἀνδράσιν· αἱ δὲ λοιπαὶ πρύμναν κρουσάμεναι ἔφευγον. οἱ δὲ μέχρι
τινὸς διώξαντες, ἐπειδὴ ἔσπερα ἦν, τραπόμενοι πρὸς τὰ ναύαγια
τῶν πλείστων ἐπεκράτησαν καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν ἀνείλοντο· καὶ γὰρ

ἀγέλη, ἡ: a herd
Αἰολοκένταυρος, ὁ: “Gleaming Centaur”
ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise
ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man
βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
δελφίς, -ίνος, ὁ: a dolphin
διώκω: to pursue
ἑκατόν: a hundred
ἐλαύνω: to drive
ἔνεκα: on account of + *gen.*
ἐπιβοάω: to call upon or to, cry out to
ἐπικαλέω: to call upon
ἐπικρατέω: to rule over
ἔσπερα, ἡ: evening
Θαλασσοπότης, ὁ: “Sea-drinker”
καταδύω: to go down, sink, set

κρούω: to strike, smite
λαμβάνω: to take
λεία, ἡ: booty, plunder
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat
ναύαγιον, τό: a piece of wreck
νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name
πεντήκοντα: fifty
πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
πρύμνα, -ης, ἡ: the stern, poop
τέλος, -εος, τό: finally
τρέπω: to turn
φεύγω: to flee

ἐγεγένητο: plupf. of γίνομαι, “had come about”
ὡς ἐδόκει: “so it seemed”
λείας ἔνεκα: “because of piracy”
δελφίνων: stealing dolphins instead of herds of cattle, a common event in myth
and history
ἐλληλακέναι: perf. inf. of ἐλαύνω in ind. statement after ἐλέγετο, “was said to have
driven off”
ὡς ἦν: “since it was possible,” explaining the source of his knowledge
ἐπικαλούντων, ἐπιβοωμένων: pr. part. gen. pl. after ἀκούειν, “to hear them calling
and shouting”
αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν: “men and all”
πρύμναν κρουσάμεναι: “back watering”
μέχρι τινὸς: “for an indefinite time”
διώξαντες: ao. part. of διώκω, “having chased”
ἐπεκράτησαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἐπι-κρατέω, “they took possession of” + dat.
τὰ (sc. νέκτρα) ἑαυτῶν: “their dead”
ἀνείλοντο: ao. 3 pl. of ἀναιρέω, “they picked up”

ἐκείνων κατέδυσαν νῆσοι οὐκ ἐλάττους τῶν ὀγδοήκοντα. ἔστησαν δὲ καὶ τρόπαιον τῆς νησομαχίας ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τοῦ κήτους μίαν τῶν πολεμίων νήσον ἀνασταυρώσαντες. ἐκείνην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα περὶ τὸ θηρίον ηὐλίσαντο ἐξάψαντες αὐτοῦ τὰ ἀπόγεια καὶ ἐπ' ἀγκυρῶν πλησίον ὀρμισάμενοι· καὶ γὰρ ἀγκύραις ἐχρῶντο μεγάλας ὑαλίνας καρτεραῖς. τῇ ὑστεραία δὲ θύσαντες ἐπὶ τοῦ κήτους καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους θάψαντες ἐπ' αὐτοῦ ἀπέπλεον ἠδόμενοι καὶ ὥσπερ παιᾶνας ᾄδοντες. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὴν νησομαχίαν γενόμενα.

ἀγκυρα, ἦ: anchor

ἀεῖδω: to sing

ἀνασταυρόω: to impale

ἀπόγειος, -α, -ον: from land

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

αὐλίζομαι: to camp

ἐλάττων: smaller, less

ἐξάπτω: to fasten from

ἡδομαι: to enjoy, take pleasure

θάπτω: to pay the last dues to a corpse

θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast

θύω: to sacrifice

καρτερός, -ά, -όν: strong

καταδύω: to go down, sink, set

κεφαλή, ἦ: the head

κήτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale

νησομαχία, ἦ: an island-fight

νήσος, -ου, ἦ: an island

ὀγδοήκοντα: eighty

οἰκείος, ό: a relative

ὀρμίζω: to moor, anchor

τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy

ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass

ὑστεραῖος, -α, -ον: on the day after

ἔστησαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἵστημι, “they set up”

ἀνασταυρώσαντες: ao. part. of ἀνασταυρόω, used instrumentally, “by impaling one of the islands on the head of the whale”

ἐξάψαντες: ao. part. of ἐξάπτω, “attaching”

τὰ ἀπόγεια: “shore ropes”

θάψαντες: ao. part. of θάπτω, “having buried”

ὥσπερ παιᾶνας: “some sort of victory songs”

ᾄδοντες: pr. part. of ᾄδω, “singing”

γενόμενα: ao. part. of γίνομαι, “the events”

Λουκιανού
Ἀληθῆ Διηγήματα:
βίβλος Β΄

Lucian's
A True Story:
Book 2

Ἄληθῆ Διηγήματα: Β΄

[1] Τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου μηκέτι φέρων ἐγὼ τὴν ἐν τῷ κῆτει δίαιταν ἀχθόμενός τε τῇ μονῇ μηχανήν τινα ἐζήτουν, δι' ἧς ἂν ἐξελεῖν γένοιτο· καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἔδοξεν ἡμῖν διορύξασαι κατὰ τὸν δεξιὸν τοῖχον ἀποδρᾶναι, καὶ ἀρξάμενοι διεκόπτομεν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ προελθόντες ὅσον πέντε σταδίους οὐδὲν ἠνύομεν, τοῦ μὲν ὀρύγματος ἐπαυσάμεθα, τὴν δὲ ὕλην καῦσαι διέγνωμεν· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν τὸ κῆτος ἀποθανεῖν· εἰ δὲ τοῦτο γένοιτο, ῥαδία ἔμελλεν ἡμῖν ἔσεσθαι ἢ ἔξοδος. ἀρξάμενοι οὖν ἀπὸ τῶν οὐραίων ἐκαίομεν, καὶ

ἀνύω: to effect, achieve, accomplish, complete

ἀποδιδράσκω: to run away or off, escape

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

ἄρχω: to begin

ἄχθομαι: to be vexed

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: right

διαγινώσκω: to distinguish, discern, resolve

δίαιτα, ἦ: a way of living, mode of life

διακόπτω: to cut in two, cut through

διορύσσω: to dig through or across

ἐξέρχομαι: to go or come out of

ἔξοδος, -ον: promoting the passage

ζητέω: to seek, seek for

καίω: to kindle, burn

κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale

μηκέτι: no more, no longer

μηχανή: an instrument, device

μονή, ἦ: a staying, abiding

ὄρυγμα, -ατος, τό: a trench, ditch, moat

ὅσον: some, approximately

οὐραίος, ὄ: the tail-end

παύομαι: to cease

προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance

τοῖχος, ὄ: the wall of a house or court

ὕλη, ἦ: a forest

Tiring of life in the whale, the men escape. After passing the bodies from the Island battle, they come upon a frozen portion of the sea, then the islands of Cheese and Cork.

Τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου: use of article to create a substantive, “the (period of time) from this point”

μηκέτι φέρων...δίαιταν: “no longer able to endure the life”

δι' ἧς: “through which,” antecedent is **μηχανήν**

ἂν γένοιτο: potential opt., “it might be possible”

ἐξελεῖν: ao. inf. of **ἐξέρχομαι**, “to exit”

τὸ μὲν πρῶτον: “while at first”

διορύξασαι: ao. part. dat. pl. of **δια-ὀρύσσω**, modifying **ἡμῖν**, “by tunneling”

ἀποδρᾶναι: ao. inf. of **ἀποδιδράσκω**, with **ἔδοξεν**, “to escape”

προελθόντες: ao. part. of **προ-έρχομαι**, “having advanced”

ἠνύομεν: impf. of **ἀνύω**, “we were accomplishing”

διέγνωμεν: ao. of **διαγινώσκω**, “we resolved”

ἂν...ἀποθανεῖν: ao. inf. of **ἀποθνήσκω**, representing a potential optative in implied ind. st. “reasoning that he would die”

εἰ...γένοιτο: ao. opt. of **γίνομαι**, past general cond. “if this happened...”

ἔμελλεν ἔσεσθαι, “then escape would have been...”

ἀπὸ τῶν οὐραίων: “from the tail-end”

ἡμέρας μὲν ἑπτὰ καὶ ἴσας νύκτας ἀναισθήτως εἶχε τοῦ καύματος, ὀγδόῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνάτῃ συνίεμεν αὐτοῦ νοσοῦντος· ἀργότερον γοῦν ἀνέχασκεν, καὶ εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι, ταχὺ συνέμμεν. δεκάτῃ δὲ καὶ ἑνδεκάτῃ τέλειον ἀπενεκροῦτο καὶ δυσώδες ἦν· τῇ δωδεκάτῃ δὲ μόλις ἐνενοήσαμεν ὡς, εἰ μὴ τις χανόντος αὐτοῦ ὑποστηρίζειεν τοὺς γομφίους, ὥστε μηκέτι συγκλείσαι, κινδυνεύσομεν κατακλεισθέντες ἐν νεκρῷ αὐτῷ ἀπολέσθαι. οὕτω δὴ μέγαλοις

ἀναισθητος, -ον: insensate, unfeeling
 ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth, gape wide
 ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy utterly, kill, slay
 ἀργότερος: more sluggish
 γομφίος, ὄ: a grinder-tooth
 δέκατος, -η, -ον: tenth
 δυσώδης, -ες: ill-smelling
 δωδέκατος, -η, -ον: twelfth
 ἕνατος, -η, -ον: ninth
 ἐνδέκατος, -η, -ον: eleventh
 ἐννοέω: to consider, reflect
 ἡμέρα, ἡ: day
 κατακλείω: to shut in, enclose

καῦμα, -ατος, τό: burning heat
 κινδυνεύω: run the risk, do a daring thing
 μόλις: little by little
 νεκρός, ὄ: corpse
 νοσέω: to be sick, ill, to ail
 ὀγδοος, -η, -ον: eighth
 συγκλείω: to shut or coop up, enclose
 συμμύω: to be shut up, to close, be closed
 συνίημι: to bring or set together
 ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: quick, swift, fleet
 ὑποστηρίζω: to underprop, sustain
 χάσκω: open

ἀναισθήτως εἶχε: paraphrastic, “he was insensible to”
 συνίεμεν: impf. of συν-ίημι, “we observed”
 αὐτοῦ νοσοῦντος: gen. after συνίεμεν, “that he was ill”
 ἀνέχασκεν impf. of ἀναχάσκω, “he yawned”
 εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι: ao. opt. of ἀναχάσκω, past general cond., “if ever he yawned”
 ἀπενεκροῦτο: impf. of ἀπο-νεκρέω, “he began dying”
 ἐνενοήσαμεν: ao. of ἐν-νοέω, “we perceived”
 ὡς...κινδυνεύσομεν: ind. st. after ἐνενοήσαμεν and also the apodosis of a future more vivid condition, “that we would run the risk”
 εἰ μὴ τις...ὑποστηρίζειεν: ao. opt., protasis of a future more vivid condition changed from subjunctive to the optative in ind. st. after ἐνενοήσαμεν, “we realized that unless someone shored up his jaws...”
 χανόντος αὐτοῦ: ao. part. of χάσκω, gen. abs., “as he opened his mouth”
 ὥστε μηκέτι συγκλείσαι: ao. inf. of συν-κλείω, result clause with inf. showing intended result, “so that he could no longer close his mouth”
 κινδυνεύσομεν...ἀπολέσθαι: ao. inf. of ἀπόλλυμι, with κινδυνεύσομεν, “we would run the risk of dying”
 κατακλεισθέντες: ao. part. pas. of κατακλείω, “by being closed in”

A True Story

δοκοῖς τὸ στόμα διερείσαντες τὴν ναῦν ἐπεσκευάζομεν ὕδωρ τε
ὡς ἔνι πλείστον ἐμβαλλόμενοι καὶ τᾶλλα ἐπιτήδεια· κυβερνήσειν
δὲ ἔμελλεν ὁ Σκίνθαρος.

διερίδω: to prop up

δοκός, ἡ: a bearing-beam

ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, put in

ἐπισκευάζω: to get ready, to equip, fit out

ἐπιτήδειος, -α, -ον: made for an end or
purpose

κυβερνάω: to act as pilot or helmsman

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

Σκίνθαρος, ὁ: Scintharos

στόμα, τό: the mouth

ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

διερείσαντες: ao. part. of **διερίδω**, “having propped apart”

ὡς ἔνι πλείστον: “as much as possible,” **ἔνι** = **ἔνεστι** “it is possible”

τᾶλλα = **τὰ ἄλλα:** “the other supplies”

κυβερνήσειν: future inf. with **ἔμελλεν**, “would be the pilot.” Skintharos replaces
the first pilot who was one of the casualties.

The verb **ἵστημι** has the following stems, which should be compared to **δίδωμι**:

strong aorist stem: **στη**

reduplicated present stem: **ἵστη** (from **σι-στη**) with loss of initial **σ**.

reduplicated perfect stem: **ἔστη** (from **σε-στη**) with loss of initial **σ**.

An **ι-** before the stem is a sure sign of the present system, present indicative (**ἵστημι**), imperfect (**ἵστην**), infinitive (**ἵσταναι**), etc. Prefixes, such as **κατὰ**, will have aspirated versions of their final consonant (**καθίστημι**).

An **έ-** (rough breathing) before the stem is a sure sign of the perfect system: perf. (**ἔστηκα**), plupf. (**εἰστήκει**), inf. (**ἔσταναι**), optative (**ἔσταίην**), etc. Compare **ἔφ-ειστήκει**

An **ε-** (smooth breathing) before the stem (**ἔστην**) is a sure sign of the aorist indicative, again visible in compounds (**κατέστην**). There is, however, both a strong aorist (**ἔστην**) and a weak aorist (**ἔστησα**), which have different meanings. Non-indicative forms of the aorist have no vowel before the stem: **στήσαντες**, **στάντες**, **σταίην**, **στήναι**, etc. Cf. **καταστήσαντες**, **ἐπιστάντες**, **ἀποσταίην**, **καταστήναι**. The future (**στήσω**) is also based on this stem.

The basic meaning of the verb, “to set up,” has many figurative uses. Particularly unusual are the transitive and intransitive uses of the verb, distinguished by form only in the aorist, the weak aorist being transitive, the strong aorist intransitive. However, the 3. pl. form **ἔστησαν** can be either transitive (they set up something) or intransitive (they stood). The perfect can mean “I have set myself up, and therefore am standing.” So also, the pluperfect **εἰστήκει** means “he had set himself up, and therefore was standing.”

Time and Aspect: The Indicative

The term “tense” (from the French word for “time”) is a little misleading, since time is only one factor in the Greek verb system. The forms of the indicative tenses are a combination of time and aspect, the latter indicating the character of the action, of which there are three: continuous action, completed action, and simple action. So, for example, there are three time-aspect combinations in the past:

Time-Aspect	Form	Translation	Traditional Name
past continuous action	<u>ἐ</u> παυόμην	“I was ceasing”	imperfect tense
past simple action	<u>ἐ</u> παυσάμην	“I ceased”	aorist tense
past completed action	<u>ἐ</u> πεπαύμην	“I had ceased”	pluperfect tense

The traditional names for these “tenses” are also sometimes misleading. In the examples above, the names “imperfect” and “aorist” refer to aspect only. However, the name “present tense” refers only to time. Even worse are terms like “present optative” and “present subjunctive,” both of which are timeless “tenses.” It is too late to change this nomenclature now, but it is important to be aware of the true differences among various verb forms, particularly since the morphology of the Greek verb is based on the three aspect stems, underlined for the verb **παύομαι** in the example above.

The imperfect tense can have many meanings, but the idea of incompleteness is essential, in contrast to the perfect tenses, which indicate that an action is completed, especially when it produces a new state of affairs. Compare the following:

ἐπαυόμην: I was ceasing, I began ceasing, I was trying to cease (but did he ever cease?)

ἐπεπαύμην: I had ceased (and was no longer doing it)

πέπαυμαι: I have ceased (and am no longer doing it)

The most important difference among the past tenses is between the aorist and imperfect aspects. With the aorist tense an event is regarded as a single fact in the past, and corresponds to the simple past tense in English. The imperfect tense indicates continuous or repeated action in the past, or some part of an action.

1. In passages where multiple verbs occur, the imperfect will often be used to describe ongoing background actions that provide a context for an aorist action, or preliminary actions that lead up to an action described with an aorist: “the moon was shining, the birds were singing, *a shot rang out.*” But the aorist will also be used to describe a sequence of simple actions: “I went home, undressed, turned on the TV and the phone rang.”

Here is an example from *VH 2.4* where three imperfect tenses set the stage for an aorist:

Μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ πολλαὶ νῆσοι ἐφαίνοντο ... καὶ πῦρ πολὺ ἀπ' αὐτῶν ἀνεκαίετο ... ἤδη δὲ πλησίον ἤμεν, καὶ θαυμαστή τις αὔρα περιέπνευσεν ἡμᾶς.

A True Story

After a while many islands *began appearing* ... and from them a great fire was *burning* ... and we *were* already near, when a wonderful breeze *fell upon* us.

In this selection from VH 2.2, a combination of aorist indicatives and participles relate a series of actions:

... ἔπειτα βορέου σφοδροῦ πνεύσαντος μέγα κρύος ἐγένετο, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πᾶν ἐπάγη τὸ πέλαγος ... φέρειν οὐ δυνάμενοι τοιόνδε τι ἐπενοήσαμεν. σκάψαντες γὰρ ἐν τῷ ὕδατι σπήλαιον μέγιστον ἐν τούτῳ ἐμίναμεν ἡμέρας τριάκοντα, πῦρ ἀνακαίοντες καὶ σιτούμενοι τοὺς ἰχθύς:

... next the wind *blew* strongly, and a great frost *arose*, and the whole sea was *frozen solid* ... and unable to bear it, we *came up with a plan*. We *dug* a cave in the water and *remained* in it for 30 days, all the while lighting fires and eating fish.

2. The imperfect can be used to indicate that an action started and continued indefinitely: ἔκλαιον “I started crying (and kept on crying).” But the aorist can indicate the point at which a simple action began, especially if it means entering into a state: ἐβασίλευσα “I became king.”

In this selection from VH 2.1, an aorist participle marks the point at which an action began, but the imperfects that follow indicate the beginning of a process or repeated action.

ἀρξάμενοι οὖν ἀπὸ τῶν οὐραίων ἐκαίμεν, καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν ἑπτὰ καὶ ἰσᾶς νύκτας ἀναισθήτως εἶχε τοῦ καύματος, ὀγδόῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνάτῃ συνίμεν αὐτοῦ νοσοῦντος: ἀργότερον γοῦν ἀνέχασκεν καὶ εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι ταχὺ συνέμμεν. δεκάτῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνδεκάτῃ τέλειον ἀπεκροῦτο καὶ δυσῶδες ἦν.

And so *making a start* from the tail, we *began burning* (the whale), and *he wasn't feeling* the heat for seven days and nights, and on the 8th and 9th day, *we began observing* that he was becoming ill; indeed *he started yawning* more sluggishly, and every time he yawned, *he would close his mouth* quickly. On the 10th and 11th day he actually *started dying* and was *beginning to stink*.

3. The imperfect can indicate customary or repeated action: “I usually do this” or “I used to do this.” But the aorist can express a general truth: παθὼν δὲ τε νῆπιος ἔγνω, “the fool *learns* by experience.”

Note the imperfects indicating customary action in VH 2.45

ἄλλοι δὲ μετὰ τούτους ἐπιφελῶν καθήμενοι ζεύξαντες δύο δελφίνας ἤλαυνόν τε καὶ ἠνιόχουν: οἱ δὲ προϊόντες ἐπεσύροντο τοὺς φελλούς. οὔτοι ἡμᾶς οὔτε ἠδίκουν οὔτε ἔφευγον, ἀλλ' ἤλαυνον ἀδεῶς τε καὶ εἰρηνικῶς.

Others behind these were sitting on corks, and having yoked two dolphins, *they would drive and charioteer*: And as they advanced *they would drag along* the corks. These would *neither harm us nor flee*, but *they would drive by* pleasantly and peacefully.

[2] Τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ τὸ μὲν ἤδη τεθνήκει, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἀνεγκύσαντες τὸ πλοῖον καὶ διὰ τῶν ἀραιωμάτων διαγαγόντες καὶ ἐκ τῶν ὀδόντων ἐξάψαντες ἡρέμα καθήκαμεν ἐς τὴν θάλατταν· ἐπαναβάντες δὲ ἐπὶ τὰ νῶτα καὶ θύσαντες τῷ Ποσειδῶνι αὐτοῦ παρὰ τὸ τρόπαιον ἡμέρας τε τρεῖς ἐπανυλισάμενοι - νηνεμία γὰρ ἦν - τῇ τετάρτῃ ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. ἔνθα δὴ πολλοῖς τῶν ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας νεκροῖς ἀπηντῶμεν καὶ προσωκέλλομεν, καὶ τὰ σώματα καταμετροῦντες ἐθαυμάζομεν. καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν τινὰς ἐπλέομεν εὐκράτῳ ἀέρι χρώμενοι, ἔπειτα βορέου σφοδροῦ πνεύσαντος μέγα κρύος ἐγένετο, καὶ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ πᾶν ἐπάγη

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὄ: the air

ἀνέλω: to draw up

ἀπαντάω: to meet

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

ἀραιώμα, -ατος, τό: interstice, crevice, chink

βορέας, -ου, ὄ: north wind

διάγω: to carry over or across

ἐξάπτω: to fasten from

ἐπαναβαίνω: to get up on, mount

ἐπανυλίζομαι: to encamp on the field

εὐκρατος, -ον: well-mixed, temperate

ἡρέμα: gently, softly

θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel

θνήσκω: to die, be dying

θύω: to sacrifice

καθίημι: to send down, let fall

καταμετρέω: to measure out to

κρύος, -εος, τό: icy cold, chill, frost

ναυμαχία, ἡ: a sea-fight

νεκρός, ὄ: corpse

νηνεμία, ἡ: stillness in the air, a calm

νῶτον, τό: the back

ὀδών, -όντος, ὄ: a tooth

πήγνυμι: to make fast

πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel

πνέω: to blow

Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος, ὄ: Poseidon

προσωκέλλω: to run

σφοδρός, ἄ, ὄν: violent, excessive

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body

τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth

τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy

τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ (sc. ἡμέρᾳ): "next day"

τὸ μὲν: "while the whale..."

ἐτεθνήκει: plupf. of θνήσκω, "had died"

ἀνεγκύσαντες: ao. part. of ἀνακλύζω, "having dragged"

διαγαγόντες: ao. part. of δια-ἄγω, "having led through"

ἐξάψαντες: ao. part. of ἐξάπτω, "having tied"

καθήκαμεν: perf. of κατα-ίημι, "we lowered"

ἐπαναβάντες; ao. part. of ἐπι-ανα-βαίνω, "getting up on"

ἀπηντῶμεν: impf. of ἀπο-αντάω, "we encountered"

προσωκέλλομεν: impf. of προσ-οκέλλω, "we ran (a ship) onto"

εὐκράτῳ ἀέρι χρώμενοι: "using a moderate breeze"

πνεύσαντος: ao. part. gen. s. of πνέω, gen. abs. "north wind blowing"

ἐγένετο: ao. of γίνομαι, "arose"

ἐπάγη: ao. pas. of πήγνυμι, "was made fast"

A True Story

Indirect statement after verbs of saying:

Verbs of saying can take the accusative + infinitive construction (see p. 85), but also can take **ὄτι** or **ὡς** + the indicative. In this construction **ὄτι** or **ὡς** is just like the English word “that.” The only changes from direct speech are changes to the person and number of the verb and subject.

Direct speech: “I am coming”

ἔρχομαι

Indirect speech: I say that I am coming.

λέγω ὅτι ἔρχομαι.

He said that he was coming.

εἶπε ὅτι ἔρχεται.

ἐνενοήσαμεν ὡς κινδυνεύσομεν: “we perceived that we would run the risk of...”

Indirect questions are introduced by the direct or indirect form of interrogative words and follow the same rules as indirect speech introduced by **ὄτι** + the indicative.

Direct question “Where is the fool going?”

ποῖ ὁ μῶρος βαίνει;

Indirect question He asked where the fool was going.

ἤρετο ὅποι ὁ μῶρος βαίνει.

μαθεῖν τί τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν τοῦ ὠκεανού: “to know what the end of the ocean is”

μαθεῖν ὡς ἔχει: “to learn how things are”

ἠρώτων τί ἐποίησατο: “I asked why he had made”

Note that in English the tense of the verb in indirect discourse or question changes depending on the tense of the main verb, but that in Greek the verb in indirect discourse retains the tense of the original statement or question. Compare the translations of **ὄτι ἔρχομαι** and **ὄτι ἔρχεται** in the examples above.

The tenses of the direct statement or question can also be changed to the corresponding tense of the optative in secondary sequence. See p. 22.

τὸ πέλαγος, οὐκ ἐπιπολῆς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐς βάθος ὅσον ἕξι ὀργυιάς, ὥστε καὶ ἀποβάντας διαθεῖν ἐπὶ τοῦ κρυστάλλου. ἐπιμένοντος δὲ τοῦ πνεύματος φέρειν οὐ δυνάμενοι τοιόνδε τι ἐπενοήσαμεν - ὁ δὲ τὴν γνώμην ἀποφηνάμενος ἦν ὁ Σκίνθαρος - σκάψαντες γὰρ ἐν τῷ ὕδατι σπήλαιον μέγιστον ἐν τούτῳ ἐμείναμεν ἡμέρας τριάκοντα, πῦρ ἀνακαίοντες καὶ σιτούμενοι τοὺς ἰχθῦς· εὐρίσκομεν δὲ αὐτοὺς ἀνορύττοντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤδη ἐπέλειπε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, προελθόντες καὶ τὴν ναῦν πεπηγυῖαν ἀνασπάσαντες καὶ πετάσαντες τὴν ὀθόνην ἐσυρόμεθα ὥσπερ

ἀνακαίω: to light up	κρύσταλλος, ὁ: ice
ἀνασπάω: to draw up, pull up	μένω: to stay, remain
ἀνορύττω: to dig up	ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
ἀποφαίνω: to show forth, display, produce	ὀργυια, -ας, ἡ: a fathom
βάθος: depth or height	πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
γνώμη, ἡ: a means of knowing, a mark, token	πετάννυμι: to spread out
διαθέω: to run about	πήγνυμι: to make fast
δύναμαι: to be able, capable, strong enough	πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing
ἕξι: six	προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance
ἐπιλείπω: to leave behind	πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
ἐπιμένω: to stay on, tarry	σιτέομαι: to take food, eat
ἐπινοέω: to think on or of, contrive	σκάπτω: to dig, delve
ἐπιπολή, ἡ: a surface	Σκίνθαρος, ὁ: Scintharus
ἐπιτήδειος, -α, -ον: made for an end or purpose	σπήλαιον, τό: a grotto, cave, cavern
εὐρίσκω: to find	σύρω: to draw, drag
ἰχθῦς, -ύος, ὁ: a fish	τοιόσδε: such a
	τριάκοντα: thirty
	ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
	ὥσπερ: just as if, even as

οὐκ ἐπιπολῆς μόνον: “not just the surface”
 ὥστε...διαθεῖν: pr. inf. of δια-θέω, result clause, “so that we could even run”
 ἐπιμένοντος δὲ τοῦ πνεύματος: gen. abs., “the wind holding”
 ἐπενοήσαμεν: ao. of ἐπι-νοέω, “we devised”
 ὁ ἀποφηνάμενος: ao. part. of ἀποφαίνομαι, “the one who proposed”
 σκάψαντες: ao. part. of σκάπτω, “having dug”
 ἐμείναμεν: ao. of μένω, “we remained”
 ἀνορύττοντες: pr. part. of ἀπορύττω, used instrumentally, “by digging”
 ἐπέλειπε: impf. of ἐπι-λείπω, “began running out”
 προελθόντες: ao. of προ-έρχομαι, “having advanced”
 πεπηγυῖαν: perf. part. acc. s. of πήγνυμι modifying ναῦν, “frozen”
 ἀνασπάσαντες: ao. part. of ἀνασπάω, “having pulled up (onto shore)”
 πετάσαντες: ao. part. of πετάννυμι, “having spread out”

A True Story

πλέοντες λείως καὶ προσηνῶς ἐπὶ τοῦ πάγου διολισθάνοντες. ἡμέρα δὲ πέμπτη ἀλέα τε ἦν ἤδη καὶ ὁ πάγος ἐλύετο καὶ ὕδωρ πάντα αὐθις ἐγίνετο.

[3] Πλεύσαντες οὖν ὅσον τριακοσίους σταδίους νήσω μικρᾷ καὶ ἐρήμῃ προσηνέχθημεν, ἀφ' ἧς ὕδωρ λαβόντες - ἐπελελοίπει γὰρ ἤδη - καὶ δύο ταύρους ἀγρίους κατατοξεύσαντες ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. οἱ δὲ ταῦροι οὗτοι τὰ κέρατα οὐκ ἐπὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς εἶχον, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς, ὥσπερ ὁ Μῶμος ἠξίου. μετ' οὐ πολὺ δὲ εἰς πέλαγος ἐμβαίνομεν, οὐχ ὕδατος, ἀλλὰ γάλακτος· καὶ νῆσος ἐν αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο λευκῇ πλήρης ἀμπέλων. ἦν δὲ ἡ νῆσος

ἀγρίος: wild or savage

ἀλέα, ἡ: an escape

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril

ἀξιόω: to think or deem worthy of

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk

διολισθάνω: to slip through, to give the slip to

ἐμβαίνω: to step in, enter

ἐπιλείπω: to leave behind

ἐρήμος, -ον: desolate, lonely, solitary

ἔχω: to have, to hold

ἡμέρα, ἡ: day

κατατοξεύω: to strike down with arrows, shoot dead

κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal

κεφαλή, ἡ: the head

λείως, -α, -ον: smooth, plain

λευκός, -ή, -όν: light, white

λύω: to loose

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small

νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

ὅσον: approximately

ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye

πάγος, ὁ: that which is fixed or firmly set

πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea

πέμπτος, -η, -ον: the fifth, oneself with four others

πλέω: to sail, go by sea

προσηνής, -ές: soft, gentle, kindly

προσφέρω: to bring to, put in (a ship)

στάδιον, τό: a stade

ταῦρος, ὁ: a bull

τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α: three hundred

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

φαίνομαι: to appear

διολισθάνοντες: pr. part. of διολισθάνω, “gliding”

ἐλύετο: impf. pas. of λύω, “melted”

προσηνέχθημεν: ao. pas. of προσφέρω, “we advanced upon”

λαβόντες: ao. part. of λαμβάνω, “having taken water”

ἐπελελοίπει: plupf. of ἐπι-λείπω, “it had run out”

κατατοξεύσαντες: ao. part. of κατα-τοξεύω, “having slain with arrows”

ὥσπερ ὁ Μῶμος ἠξίου: impf. of ἀξιόω, “just as Momus wanted.” Momus is a personification of mockery. He mocked Poseidon’s invention of the bull because of the position of the horns.

τυρὸς μέγιστος συμπεπηγῶς, ὡς ὕστερον ἐμφαγόντες ἐμάθομεν, σταδίων εἴκοσι πέντε τὸ περίμετρον· αἱ δὲ ἄμπελοι βοτρύων πλήρεις, οὐ μέντοι οἶνον, ἀλλὰ γάλα ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀποθλίβοντες ἐπίνομεν. ἱερὸν δὲ ἐν μέσῃ τῇ νήσῳ ἀνωκοδόμητο Γαλατείας τῆς Νηρηίδος, ὡς ἐδήλου τὸ ἐπίγραμμα. ὅσον δ' οὖν χρόνον ἐκεῖ ἐμείναμεν, ὄψον μὲν ἡμῖν καὶ σιτίον ἢ γῆ ὑπῆρχεν, ποτὸν δὲ τὸ γάλα τὸ ἐκ τῶν βοτρύων. βασιλεύειν δὲ τῶν χωρίων τούτων ἐλέγετο Τυρῶ ἢ Σαλμωνέως, μετὰ τὴν ἐντεῦθεν ἀπαλλαγὴν ταύτην παρὰ τοῦ Ποσειδῶνος λαβοῦσα τὴν τιμῆν.

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril
 ἀνοικοδομέω: to build up
 ἀπαλλαγὴ, ἡ: deliverance, release, relief from
 ἀποθλίβω: to press upon, press, squeeze out
 βασιλεύω: to be king, to rule, reign
 βότρυον, τό: cluster of grapes
 γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk
 Γαλατεία, ἡ: Galatea (“Milky-white”)
 γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth
 δηλώω: to make visible, show, exhibit
 ἐκεῖ: there, in that place
 ἐντεῦθεν: hence or thence
 ἐπίγραμμα, -ατος, τό: an inscription
 μανθάνω: to learn
 μένω: to stay at home, stay where one is, not stir

Νηρηΐς, -ίδος, ἡ: a daughter of Nereus, a Nereid
 οἶνος, ὄ: wine
 ὄψον, τό: cooked meat
 περίμετρον, τό: the circumference
 πλήρης, -ες: filled, full of
 Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος, ὄ: Poseidon
 ποτόν, τό: a drink
 σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
 συμπήγνυμι: to put together, construct
 τιμῆ, ἡ: honor
 τυρός, ὄ: cheese
 Τυρῶ, ἡ: Tyro (“Cheese”)
 ὑπάρχω: to begin, make a beginning
 ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward
 χωρίον, τό: a place, spot

συμπεπηγῶς: perf. part. nom. s. of *συν-πήγνυμι*, “curdled”
 ἐμφαγόντες: ao. part. of *ἐν-έσθια*, with instrumental force, “by eating our fill”
 ἐμάθομεν: ao. of *μανθάνω*, “we learned”
 οὐ μέντοι...ἀλλὰ: “certainly not wine, but rather”
 ἀποθλίβοντες: pr. part. of *ἀποθλίβω*, “squeezing out”
 ἐπίνομεν: impf. of *πίνω*, “we drank”
 ἀνωκοδόμητο: plupf. of *ἀνα-οικοδομέω*, “had been constructed”
 Γαλατείας τῆς Νηρηίδος: a nymph wooed by the Cyclops
 ἐμείναμεν: ao. of *μένω*, “we stayed”
 ὄψον: acc. of respect, “food for cooking”
 ὑπῆρχεν: impf. of *ὑπάρχω*, “consisted”
 βασιλεύειν...ἐλέγετο: “is said to be queen”
 Τυρῶ ἢ Σαλμωνέως: Tyro, the daughter of Salmeoneus, was loved by Enipeus and Poseidon
 μετὰ τὴν ἐντεῦθεν ἀπαλλαγὴν: “after her departure from there” (home or life)
 λαβοῦσα: ao. part. nom. f. s. of *λαμβάνω*, “having received”

A True Story

[4] Μείναντες δὲ ἡμέρας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ πέντε, τῇ ἕκτῃ ἐξωρμήσαμεν, αὔρας μὲν τινος παραπεμπούσης, λειοκύμονος δὲ οὔσης τῆς θαλάττης· ὀγδόῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ πλέοντες οὐκέτι διὰ τοῦ γάλακτος, ἀλλ' ἤδη ἐν ἀλμυρῷ καὶ κυανέῳ ὕδατι, καθορῶμεν ἀνθρώπους πολλοὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ πελάγους διαθέοντας, ἅπαντα ἡμῖν προσεικίότας, καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ μεγέθη, πλὴν τῶν ποδῶν

ἀλμυρός, -ά, -όν: salt, briny
 αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze
 γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk
 διαθέω: to run about
 ἕκτος, -η, -ον: sixth
 ἐξορμέω: to be out of harbor, run out
 ἡμέρα, ἡ: day
 καθορῶω: to look down
 κυάνεος, -α, -ον: dark-blue, glossy-blue
 λειοκύμων, -ονος: having low waves
 μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size, height

μένω: to stay at home, stay where one is, not stir
 ὀγδοος, -η, -ον: eighth
 παραπέμπω: to send past, convey past or through
 πλέω: to sail, go by sea
 πλὴν: except + gen.
 πούς, ποδός, ό: a foot
 προσέοικα: to be like, resemble + dat.
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

μείναντες: ao. part. of μένω, “having stayed”

ἐξωρμήσαμεν: ao. of ἐξορμάω, “we shoved off”

αὔρας...παραπεμπούσης: gen. abs., “with a breeze propelling us”

λειοκύμονος δὲ οὔσης τῆς θαλάττης: gen. abs., “the sea rippling”

διαθέοντας: pr. part. of δια-θέω, “we saw men running over”

προσεικίότας: perf. part. of προσ-έοικα, “similar to us”

καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ μεγέθη: accusatives of respect, “in body and size”

Indirect statement after verbs of thinking and believing:

In this construction the finite verb of direct speech is changed to an infinitive of the same tense of the direct speech. The subject of the verb in direct speech becomes accusative *unless the subject of the indirect speech is the same as the subject of the main verb*. In that case the subject will be nominative if expressed. This construction can also be used with verbs of saying.

Direct speech: “He is coming”
ἔρχεται

Indirect speech: She thinks that he is coming.
νομίζει αὐτον ἔρχεσθαι.

but

He thinks he (himself) is coming
νομίζει (αὐτος) ἔρχεσθαι

ἐνόμιζον λήσειν: “they thought that they would escape the notice of”

φασίν Φαέθοντα πυρπολήσαι: “they say that Phaethon had him burned”

ἔλεγον ἐπείγασθαι: “they said that they were hastening”

μόνων· ταῦτα γὰρ φέλλινα εἶχον, ἀφ' οὗ δή, οἶμαι, καὶ ἐκαλοῦντο
 Φελλόποδες. ἐθαυμάσαμεν οὖν ἰδόντες οὐ βαπτιζομένους, ἀλλὰ
 ὑπερέχοντας τῶν κυμάτων καὶ ἀδεῶς ὁδοιποροῦντας. οἱ δὲ καὶ
 προσήεσαν καὶ ἠσπάζοντο ἡμᾶς Ἑλληνικῇ φωνῇ· ἔλεγον δὲ καὶ
 εἰς Φελλῶ τὴν αὐτῶν πατρίδα ἐπέειπεσθαι. μέχρι μὲν οὖν τινος
 συνωδοιπόρου ἡμῖν παραθέοντες, εἶτα ἀποτραπόμενοι τῆς ὁδοῦ
 ἐβάδιζον εὐπλοῖαν ἡμῖν ἐπευξάμενοι.

ἀδεής, -ές: without fear, fearless
 ἀποτρέπω: to turn
 ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid fare-
 well
 βαδίζω: to go slowly, to walk
 βαπτίζω: to dip in or under water
 εἶτα: then, next
 Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Hellenic, Greek
 ἐπείγω: to press down, weigh down
 ἐπέυχομαι: to pray or make a vow
 εὐπλοῖα, ἡ: a fair voyage
 θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel
 καλέω: to call
 κῦμα, -ατος, τό: anything swollen

μέχρι: to a given point, even so far
 μόνος: only
 ὁδοιπορέω: to travel, walk
 ὁδός, ἡ: a way, path, track, road, highway
 οἶομαι: to suppose, think, deem, imagine
 παραθέω: to run beside or alongside
 πατρίς, -ίδος: of one's fathers
 συνοδοιπορέω: to travel together
 ὑπερέχω: to hold over
 φέλλινος, -η, -ον: made of cork
 Φελλόπους, ὁ: Cork-foot
 Φελλῶ, -οῦς, ἡ: Cork-land
 φωνή, ἡ: a sound, voice

ἀφ' οὗ δή, οἶμαι, καὶ: "from which very thing, I suppose, also..."
 ἰδόντες: ao. part. from ὁράω, "seeing"
 ὑπερέχοντας: pr. part. of ὑπερ-έρχομαι, "staying over" + gen.
 ὁδοιποροῦντας: pr. part. of ὁδοι-πορέω, "making their way"
 προσήεσαν: impf. of προσ-έρχομαι, "they approached"
 ἔλεγον...ἐπέειπεσθαι: ind. st., "they said they were hastening"
 μέχρι μὲν οὖν τινος: "and so for a while"
 ἀποτραπόμενοι: ao. part. of ἀποτρέπω, "turning from the path"

A True Story

Μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ πολλαὶ νῆσοι ἐφαίνοντο, πλησίον μὲν ἐξ ἀριστερῶν ἢ Φελλά, ἐς ἣν ἐκείνοι ἔσπευδον, πόλις ἐπὶ μεγάλου καὶ στρογγύλου φελλοῦ κατοικουμένη· πόρρωθεν δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἐν δεξιᾷ πέντε μέγιστα καὶ ὑψηλόταται, καὶ πῦρ πολὺ ἀπ' αὐτῶν ἀνεκαίετο, κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρῶραν μία πλατεῖα καὶ ταπεινὴ, σταδίου ἀπέχουσα οὐκ ἐλάττους πεντακοσίων. [5] ἤδη δὲ πλησίον ἤμεν, καὶ θαυμαστὴ τις αὔρα περιέπνευσεν ἡμᾶς, ἥδεῖα καὶ εὐώδης, οἶαν φησὶν ὁ συγγραφεὺς Ἡρόδοτος ἀπόζειν τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας. οἶον γὰρ ἀπὸ ρόδων καὶ ναρκίσσων καὶ

ἀνακαίω: to light up
ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from
ἀπόζω: to smell of
Ἀραβία, ἡ: Arabia
ἀριστερός: left, on the left
αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze
δεξιᾷ, ἡ: the right hand
εἷς, μία, ἓν: one
ἐλάττων: smaller, less
εὐδαίμων, -ον: blessed
εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant
ἡδύς, -εἶα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant
Ἡρόδοτος, ὁ: Herodotus
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wondrous, wonderful
κατοικέω: to dwell in
νάρκισσος, ὁ: the narcissus
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small
πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred

περιπνέω: to breathe round or over
πλατύς, -εἶα, -ύ: wide, broad
πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
πόρρωθεν: from afar
πρῶρα, ἡ: the forepart of a ship, prow,
bow
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
ρόδον, τό: the rose
σπεύδω: to set a-going, to urge on, hasten,
quicken
στάδιον, τό: a stade
στρογγύλος: round, spherical
συγγραφεύς, -έως, ὁ: an historian
ταπεινός, -ή, -όν: low
ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised
φελλός, ὁ: the cork-tree
Φελλά, -οῦς, ἡ: Cork-land

Beyond the island of Cork the men catch the scent of the Island of the Blessed.

ἐς ἣν: “to which”

κατοικουμένη: pr. part. of *κατα-οικέω*, “inhabited”

κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρῶραν: “straight ahead”

ἀπέχουσα: pr. part. of *ἀπο-ἔχω*, “being away”

περιέπνευσεν: ao. of *περι-πνεύω*, “blew upon”

οἶαν φησὶν: “such as the one Herodotus claims”

ἀπόζειν: pr. inf. of *ἀπο-όζω*, “to give a scent from”

τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας: “blessed Arabia,” the southern part of the peninsula that typically receives more rainfall.

Lucian

ὑακίνθων καὶ κρίνων καὶ ἴων, ἔτι δὲ μυρρίνης καὶ δάφνης καὶ ἀμπελάνθης, τοιοῦτον ἡμῖν τὸ ἡδὺ προσέβαλλεν. ἡσθέντες δὲ τῇ ὀσμῇ καὶ χρηστὰ ἐκ μακρῶν πόνων ἐλπίσαντες κατ' ὀλίγον ἤδη πλησίον τῆς νήσου ἐγινόμεθα. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ καθεωρῶμεν λιμένας τε πολλοὺς περὶ πᾶσαν ἀκλύστους καὶ μεγάλους, ποταμούς τε διαυγεῖς ἐξιέντας ἡρέμα εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, ἔτι δὲ λειμῶνας καὶ ὕλας καὶ ὄρνεα μουσικά, τὰ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ἡϊόνων ᾄδοντα, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν κλάδων· ἀήρ τε κοῦφος καὶ εὐπνοὺς περιεκέχυτο τὴν χῶραν· καὶ αὖραι δὲ τινες ἠδεῖαι πνέουσαι ἡρέμα τὴν ὕλην

ἀεῖδω: to sing	κρίνον, -ου, τό: a lily
ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ό: the air	λειμών, -ῶνος, ό: a meadow
ἄκλυστος, -ον: unwashed by waves	λιμῆν, -ένος, ό: a harbor, haven, creek
ἀμπελάνθη, ἡ: flower of the wild vine	μουσικός, -ή, -όν: of or for music, musical
αὖρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze	μυρρίνη, ἡ: a branch or wreath of myrtle
δάφνη, ἡ: the laurel	ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
διαυγής, -ές: transparent	ὀσμῇ, ἡ: a smell, scent, odor
ἐλπίζω: to hope for, look for, expect	περιχέω: to pour round or over
ἐξίμι: to send out, let	πνέω: to blow
εὐπνοὺς: breathing well, sweet-smelling	πόνος, ό: work
ἡδομαι: to please, delight	ποταμός, ό: a river, stream
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant	προσβάλλω: to strike or dash against
ἡιών, -όνος, ἡ: a shore, beach	ὑακίνθος, ό, ἡ: the hyacinth
ἡρέμα: stilly, quietly, gently, softly	ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
ἴον, -ου, τό: the violet	χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good of its kind, serviceable
καθοράω: to look down over, see	χώρα, ἡ: land, space
κλάδος, -ου, ό: a young shoot, branch	
κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light, nimble	

τοιοῦτον τὸ ἡδὺ: “such was the sweetness”
 ἡσθέντες: ao. pas. part. of ἡδομαι, “being delighted”
 ἐλπίσαντες: ao. part. of ἐλπίζω, “hoping”
 πλησίον ἐγινόμεθα: impf. of γίνομαι, “we drew near”
 καθεωρῶμεν: impf. of κατα-όράω, “we saw”
 ἐξιέντας: pr. part. of ἐξέρχομαι, “emptying”
 ᾄδοντα: pr. part. nom. pl. n. agreeing with ὄρνεα, “singing”
 περιεκέχυτο: plupf. of περι-χέω, “was poured around”
 πνέουσαι: pr. part. nom. f. pl. of πνέω, “blowing”

A True Story

διεσάλευον, ὥστε καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν κλάδων κινουμένων τερπνὰ καὶ
συνεχῆ μέλη ἀπεσυρίζετο, εὐοικότα τοῖς ἐπ' ἐρημίας αὐλήμασι τῶν
πλαγίων αὐλῶν. καὶ μὴν καὶ βοῇ σύμμικτος ἠκούετο ἄθρους, οὐ
θορυβώδης, ἀλλ' οἷα γένοιτ' ἂν ἐν συμποσίῳ, τῶν μὲν αὐλούντων,
τῶν δὲ ἐπαδόντων, ἐνίων δὲ κροτούντων πρὸς αὐλὸν ἢ κιθάραν.
[6] τούτοις ἅπασιν κηλούμενοι κατήχθημεν, ὀρμίσαντες δὲ τὴν
ναῦν ἀπεβαίνομεν, τὸν Σκίνθαρον ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ δύο τῶν ἐταίρων
ἀπολιπόντες. προϊόντες δὲ διὰ λειμῶνος εὐανθοῦς ἐντυγχάνομεν

ἄθρός, -α, -ον: in crowds or masses,
crowded together

ἅπας: all, the whole

ἀποβαίνω: to step off, disembark

ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind

ἀποσυρίζω: to whistle aloud

αὐλέω: to play on the flute

αὐλημα, -ατος, τό: music for the flute

αὐλός, ό: flute

βοή, ή: a loud cry, shout

διασαλεύω: to shake violently

ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some

ἐντυγχάνω: to light upon, fall in with,
meet with

εἶοικα: it resembles + *dat.*

ἐπαδῶ: to sing to or in accompaniment

ἐρημία, ή: a solitude, desert, wilderness

ἐταῖρος, ό: a comrade, companion, mate

εὐανθήs, -ές: blooming, budding

θορυβώδης, -ες: noisy, uproarious,
turbulent

κατάγω: to lead down to shore

κηλέω: to charm, enchant, fascinate

κιθάρα, ή: guitar

κινέω: to set in motion, to move

κλάδος, -ου, ό: a young shoot, branch

κροτέω: to make to rattle

λειμῶν, -ῶνος, ό: any moist, grassy place,
a meadow

μέλος, -εος, τό: a song

ὀρμίζω: bring into harbor

πλάγιος, -ος, -ον: placed sideways,
slanting, aslant

Σκίνθαρος, ό: Scintharus

σύμμικτος, -ον: commingled, promiscuous

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party,
symposium

συνεχής, -ές: holding together, continuous

τερπνός, -ή, -όν: delightful, delightful,
pleasant, agreeable, glad

διεσάλευον: impf. of **διασαλεύω**, “caused to move”

ὥστε...ἀπεσυρίζετο: result clause, “so that they were whistling”

ἀπεσυρίζετο: impf. of **ἀπο-συρίζω**

τοῖς αὐλήμασι: *dat. pl.* after **εὐοικότα**, “like the fluting”

τῶν πλαγίων αὐλῶν: “transverse-flutes” or “Pan-pipes”

καὶ μὴν καὶ: “and indeed also”

ἠκούετο: impf. pas. of **ἀκούω**

ἀλλ' οἷα: “but such as”

γένοιτο ἂν: potential opt. of **γίνομαι**, “might occur”

τῶν μὲν...τῶν δὲ...ἐνίων δὲ: *gen. abs.*, “some playing, some singing, others beating time”

κατήχθημεν: *ao. pas.* of **κατα-άγω**, “we put in”

ἀπολιπόντες: *ao. part.* of **ἀπο-λείπω**, “having left behind”

προϊόντες: *pr. part.* of **προ-ἔρχομαι**, “advancing”

τοῖς φρουροῖς καὶ περιπόλοις, οἱ δὲ δῆσαντες ἡμᾶς ῥοδίνοις στεφάνοις - οὗτος γὰρ μέγιστος παρ' αὐτοῖς δεσμός ἐστιν - ἀνήγον ὡς τὸν ἄρχοντα, παρ' ὧν δὴ καθ' ὁδὸν ἠκούσαμεν ὡς ἡ μὲν νῆσος εἶη τῶν Μακάρων προσαγορευομένη, ἄρχοι δὲ ὁ Κρήης Ῥαδάμανθυς. καὶ δὴ ἀναχθέντες ὡς αὐτὸν ἐν τάξει τῶν δικαζομένων ἕστημεν τέταρτοι. [7] ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν πρώτη δίκη περὶ Αἴαντος τοῦ Τελαμώνος, εἴτε χρὴ αὐτὸν συνεῖναι τοῖς ἥρωσιν εἴτε καὶ μὴ· κατηγορεῖτο δὲ αὐτοῦ ὅτι μεμῆνοι καὶ ἑαυτὸν ἀπεκτόνοι.

Αἴας, -αντος, ὁ: Ajax
ἀνάσσω: to be lord, to rule
ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay
ἄρχω: to begin
ἄρχων, -οντος, ὁ: a ruler, commander, chief, captain
δεσμός, ὁ: anything for binding, a band
δικάζω: to judge, to give judgment on
δίκη, ἡ: a case
εἴτε: whether
ἥρωσ, ὁ: a hero, warrior
ἵστημι: to make to stand

κατηγορέω: to speak against, to accuse
Κρήης, -ης, ὁ: a Cretan
μαίνομαι: to rage, be furious
μακάρος, -α, -ον: blessed
ὁδός, ἡ: a way, path, track, road, highway
περίπολος, -ον: patrolling
προσαγορεύω: to address, name
ῥόδινος, -η, -ον: made of or from roses
στέφανος, ὁ: a garland
τάξις, -εως, ἡ: an arranging
τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth
φρουρός, ὁ: a watcher, guard

δῆσαντες: ao. part. of δέω, “having bound us”
ἀνήγον: impf. of ἀνα-άγω, “they led us”
ὡς τὸν ἄρχοντα: “to the king”
παρ' ὧν: “from whom” (i.e., the guards)
ὡς ἡ μὲν νῆσος εἶη...ἄρχοι δὲ: ind. st. after ἠκούσαμεν, with the optative (εἶη, ἄρχοι) in secondary sequence
ὁ Κρήης Ῥαδάμανθυς: Rhadamanthys is represented judging disputes among the dead by Homer, as does Lucian here
ἀναχθέντες: ao. part. pas. of ἀνα-άγω, “having been led”
ἐν τάξει τῶν δικαζομένων: “in the line of those waiting judgment”
ἕστημεν: ao. intrans. of ἵστημι, “we were placed”
Αἴαντος τοῦ Τελαμώνος: Telamonion Ajax (vs. the Locrian Ajax) is a great hero of the Iliad. Odysseus is awarded the armor of Achilles after his death, and Ajax, enraged, kills himself. The story of his madness and death is told in Sophocles' play, Ajax.
εἴτε χρὴ: ind. quest., “whether it was permitted”
αὐτὸν συνεῖναι: pr. inf. of συν-εἶμι after χρὴ, “that he join with”
κατηγορεῖτο: impf. pas. of κατα-αγορέω, “it was alleged that...” followed by ind. st., with perf. indicatives changed to perf. optatives in secondary sequence
μεμῆνοι: perf. opt. of μηνίω, “that he went mad”
ἀπεκτόνοι: perf. opt. of ἀποκτείνω, “that he had killed”

A True Story

τέλος δὲ πολλῶν ῥηθέντων ἔγνω ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυσ, νῦν μὲν αὐτὸν πιάμενον τοῦ ἐλλεβόρου παραδοθῆναι Ἴπποκράτει τῷ Κῶφῳ ἱατρῷ, ὕστερον δὲ σωφρονήσαντα μετέχειν τοῦ συμποσίου. [8] δευτέρα δὲ ἦν κρίσις ἐρωτική, Θησέως καὶ Μενελάου περὶ τῆς Ἑλένης διαγωνιζομένων, ποτέρῳ χρῆ αὐτὴν συνοικεῖν. καὶ ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυσ ἐδίκησε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ἅτε καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσαντι καὶ κινδυνεύσαντι τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα· καὶ γὰρ αὐτῷ

γάμος: a wedding, wedding-feast
γινώσκω: to know, realize, decide
δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second
διαγωνίζομαι: to contend, struggle or fight against
δικάζω: to judge, to give judgment on
ἐλλέβορος, ὄ: hellebore, poison
ἔνεκα: on account of + *gen.*
ἐρωτικός, -ή, -όν: amatory
ἱατρός, ὄ: one who heals, physician
κινδυνεύω: take the risk, do a daring thing
κρίσις, -εως, ἡ: a separating, decision

Κῶφος, -α, -ον: from the island Cos, Coan
μετέχω: to partake of, enjoy a share of
παραδίδωμι: to give or hand over to another, transmit
πίνω: to drink
πονέω: to work hard, do work, suffer toil
πότερος, -α, -ον: whether of the two?
συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium
συνοικέω: to dwell together
σωφρονέω: to be sound of mind
τέλος: finally

πολλῶν ῥηθέντων (ao. pas. of λέγω): gen. abs., “many things having been said”
ἔγνω: ao. of γινώσκω, taking acc. + inf. form of ind. st. expressing judgment
πιάμενον: fut. part. acc. s. of πίνω modifying αὐτὸν, expressing purpose, “in order for him to drink...”

ἐλλεβόρου: Hellebore was a drug used to treat madness.

παραδοθῆναι: ao. inf. pas. of παραδίδωμι, “that he should be handed over”

σωφρονήσαντα μετέχειν: ind. st., “that, after having regained his senses, he share”

Θησέως: Theseus is the greatest of the Attic heroes, a legendary king who, like Heracles, rids the world of monsters. He had sought Helen as a wife before she was awarded to Menelaus. Another story has Theseus and Pirithous abducting Helen.

Μενελάου: Brother of Agamemnon, who was awarded Helen as a wife. The abduction of Helen by Paris was the cause of the Trojan War.

ποτέρῳ χρῆ αὐτὴν συνοικεῖν: ind. quest., “with which of the two it was necessary to live...”

συνεῖναι αὐτὴν: ind. st. after ἐδίκησε, “that she should live with”

ἅτε + part: “on the ground that...”

πονήσαντι: ao. part. dat. s. of πονέω, modifying Μενελάῳ, “that he had undergone”

καὶ γὰρ αὐτῷ: “and furthermore”

ἄτε and **ὡς** + participle expressing cause

Both of these particles can express the reasons an action was carried out, but with **ἄτε** the participle states the cause on the authority of the speaker or writer, whereas with **ὡς** the participle indicates an alleged or supposed intention which does not implicate the speaker or writer.

Compare:

ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος ἐδίκασε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ἄτε καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσαντι καὶ κινδυνεύσαντι τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα.

Rhadamanthus decided that she (Helen) should live with Menelaus *on the grounds that he had labored so much and run such risks* for the marriage.

ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος ἐδίκασε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ὡς καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσαντι καὶ κινδυνεύσαντι τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα

Rhadamanthus decided that she (Helen) should live with Menelaus *because, as Rhadamanthus explained, Menelaus had labored so much and run such risks* for the marriage.

In this second version, the implication would be that this may not be the real reason for Rhadamanthus' judgment.

In either construction, the case of the participle will agree with the agent of the action in the sentence. Note how the following changes to the case of the participle change the meaning of these sentences:

ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος ἐδίκασε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ἄτε καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσας καὶ κινδυνεύσας τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα

Rhadamanthus decided that she should live with Menelaus *on the grounds that he (Rhadamanthus) had labored so much and run such risks* for the marriage.

ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος ἐδίκασε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ἄτε καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσασαν καὶ κινδυνεύσασαν τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα

Rhadamanthus decided that she should live with Menelaus *on the grounds that she (i.e. Helen) had labored so much and run such risks* for the marriage.

Here are some other examples of **ἄτε** and **ὡς** + participle from *A True Story*:

ἄριστα ἂν ἔχοι διὰ μάχης ἐλθεῖν αὐτοῖς, ἄτε οὖσιν ἀνόπλοις, αὐτούς γε ὠπλισμένους.

It would be best for these who are armed to attack in battle *them, since they are unarmed.*

κρίσιν ἐδεδοίκεσαν, ἄτε καὶ τὸ κριτήριον αὐτοὶ ἀνηρηκότες.

They feared his judgment, *because they had disputed the criterion.*

οἱ δὴ καὶ προσήεσαν καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ὡς ἂν καὶ συνήθεις ὑπάρχοντες

These in fact approached and greeted us *as though they were acquaintances* (but they really were not).

Θησεὶ καὶ ἄλλας εἶναι γυναῖκας, τὴν τε Ἀμαζόνα καὶ τὰς τοῦ Μίνωος θυγατέρας. [9] τρίτη δ' ἐδικάσθη περὶ προεδρίας Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τε τῷ Φιλίππου καὶ Ἀννίβα τῷ Καρχηδονίῳ, καὶ ἔδοξε προέχειν ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ θρόνος αὐτῷ ἐτέθη παρὰ Κῦρον τὸν Πέρσῃ τὸν πρότερον. [10] τέταρτοι δὲ ἡμεῖς προσήχθημεν· καὶ ὁ μὲν ἤρετο τί παθόντες ἔτι ζῶντες ἱεροῦ χωρίου ἐπιβαίημεν· ἡμεῖς δὲ πάντα ἐξῆς διηγησάμεθα. οὕτω δὲ μεταστησάμενος ἡμᾶς

Ἀμαζών, -όνος, ἡ: an Amazon

γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman, wife

διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full

δικάζω: to judge, to give judgment on

ἐξῆς: in order, in a row

ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon

ἔρωτάω: to ask, enquire

ζάω: to live

θρόνος, ὁ: a seat, chair

θυγάτηρ, ἡ: a daughter

ἱερός, -ά, -όν: sacred

Καρχηδόνιος, -α, -ον: Carthaginian

Κῦρος, ὁ: Cyrus

μεθίστημι: to place in another way, to change

πάσχω: to experience, to suffer

Πέρσης, -ου, ὁ: a Persian

προεδρία, ἡ: the privilege of the front seats

προέχω: to hold before

προσάγω: to bring to or forth

πρότερος: first

τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth

τίθημι: to set, put, place

τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third

χωρίον, τό: a particular place, a place, spot, district

εἶναι γυναῖκας: continuation of ind. st. after ἐδικάσε, “that there were wives”

τὴν Ἀμαζόνα: The Amazon is Hippolyte or Antiope, both of whom Theseus was said to have abducted and made his wife. After bearing a son, Hippolytus, Hippolyte or Antiope was cast aside for Phaedra, the daughter of Minos.

τὰς τοῦ Μίνωος θυγατέρας: the daughters of Minos are Phaedra and Ariadne, the latter abandoned on an island after having helped Theseus defeat the Minotaur; the former Theseus' wife who fell in love with her stepson, Hippolytus.

ἐδικάσθη: ao. pas. of δικάζω, “was judged”

προεδρίας: gen. s., “precedence,” lit. “front seats”

Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῷ Φιλίππου: Alexander the Great (356 – 323), the Macedonian general who conquered the Persian Empire.

Ἀννίβα τῷ Καρχηδονίῳ: Hannibal (248–183), the Carthaginian general who led his people against Rome in the second Punic War.

ἔδοξε προέχειν: “seemed to be superior”

ἐτέθη: ao. pas. of τίθημι, “was placed”

προσήχθημεν: ao. pas. of προσάγω, “we were brought forth”

ἤρετο...ἐπιβαίημεν: ao. opt. of ἐπιβαίνω, ind. quest. with opt. in sec. seq.

τί παθόντες: ao. pas. of πάσχω, “experiencing what?”

διηγησάμεθα: ao. of διαηγέομαι, “we narrated”

οὕτω δὲ: “next, as you would expect”

μεταστησάμενος: ao. part. trans. of μεταίστημι, “setting us aside”

ἐπὶ πολὺν χρόνον ἐσκέπτετο καὶ τοῖς συνέδροις ἐκοινοῦτο περὶ ἡμῶν. συνήδρευον δὲ ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ Ἀριστείδης ὁ δίκαιος ὁ Ἀθηναῖος. ὡς δὲ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ, ἀπεφάναντο, τῆς μὲν φιλοπραγμοσύνης καὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας, ἐπειδὴν ἀποθάνωμεν, δοῦναι τὰς εὐθύνas, τὸ δὲ νῦν ῥητὸν χρόνον μείναντας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ καὶ συνδιαιτηθέντας τοῖς ἥρωσιν ἀπελθεῖν. ἔταξαν δὲ καὶ τὴν προθέσμιαν τῆς ἐπιδημίας μὴ πλέον μηνῶν ἑπτὰ.

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian
 ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
 ἀποδημία, ἡ: a being from home, a going abroad
 ἀποθνήσκω: to die
 ἀποφαίνω: to display, produce
 δίδωμι: to give
 δίκαιος: just, well-ordered
 ἐπειδάν: whenever
 ἐπιδημία, ἡ: a stay in a place
 ἑπτὰ: seven
 εὐθυνα, ἡ: a setting straight, correction, chastisement

ἥρως, ὁ: a hero, warrior
 κοινῶ: to make common, communicate
 μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month
 πλέων, -ον: more
 προθέσμία: fore-appointed time
 ῥητός, -ή, -όν: stated, specified
 σκέπτομαι: to look about, look carefully
 συνδιαιτάομαι: to dwell with or together
 συνεδρεύω: to sit together, sit in council
 σύνοδρος, -ον: councilor
 τάσσω: to arrange, put in order
 φιλοπραγμοσύνη, ἡ: meddlesomeness
 χρόνος, ὁ: time

συνήδρευον: impf. 3 pl. of *συν-ἔδρεύω*, “sat in council with him”

ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καί: “many others, but especially...”

Ἀριστείδης ὁ δίκαιος: Aristides the Just (530 - 468 B.C), whose legendary fairness is recounted by Plutarch.

ὡς δὲ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ: “when he had decided”

ἀπεφάναντο: ao. of *ἀπο-φαίνω*, “they resolved”

τῆς μὲν φιλοπραγμοσύνης καὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας: gen. indicating the grounds of the sentence, “for the charge of...”

ἐπειδὴν ἀποθάνωμεν: subj. of *ἀποθνήσκω*, indefinite temporal clause, “whenever we die”

δοῦναι: ao. inf. of *δίδωμι*, ind. st. after *ἀπεφάναντο*, “they resolved that we give”

τὸ δὲ νῦν: “but for the present”

ῥητὸν χρόνον: acc. of duration, “for a specified time”

μείναντας...συνδιαιτηθέντας: ao. part. acc. pl. modifying the subject of *ἀπελθεῖν*,

ἀπελθεῖν: ao. inf. of *ἀπο-ἔρχομαι*, continuation of ind. st. after *ἀπεφάναντο*, “that we depart”

ἔταξαν: ao. of *τάσσω*, “they determined”

[11] Τούντεϋθεν αὐτομάτων ἡμῖν τῶν στεφάνων περιρρυνέντων ἐλελύμεθα καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἠγγόμεθα καὶ εἰς τὸ τῶν Μακάρων συμπόσιον. αὐτὴ μὲν οὖν ἡ πόλις πᾶσα χρυσῆ, τὸ δὲ τείχος περικείται σμαράγδινον· πύλαι δὲ εἰσιν ἑπτά, πᾶσαι μονόξυλοι κινναμώμινοι· τὸ μέντοι ἔδαφος τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἡ ἐντὸς τοῦ τείχους γῆ ἐλεφαντίνη· ναοὶ δὲ πάντων θεῶν βηρύλλου λίθου ᾧκοδομημένοι, καὶ βωμοὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς μέγιστοι μονόλιθοι ἀμεθύστινοι, ἐφ' ὧν ποιοῦσι τὰς ἐκατόμβας. περὶ δὲ τὴν πόλιν ρεῖ ποταμὸς μύρου τοῦ καλλίστου, τὸ πλάτος πήχεων ἑκατὸν

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
ἀμεθύστινος, -η, -ον: of amethyst
αὐτόματος: acting of one 's own will, of oneself

βήρυλλος, ἡ: gem of sea-green color, beryl
βωμός, ὁ: any raised platform, an altar
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth
ἔδαφος, -εος, τό: the bottom, foundation, base

ἐκατόμβη, ἡ: an offering of a hundred oxen

ἑκατόν: a hundred

ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory

ἐντεϋθεν: hence or thence

ἐντός: within, inside

ἑπτά: seven

θεός, ὁ: a god

κινναμώμινος, -η, -ον: prepared from or with cinnamon

λίθος, -ου, ὁ: a stone

λύω: to loose

μακάρος, -α, -ον: blessed

μονόλιθος, -ον: made out of one stone

μονόξυλος, -ον: made from a solid trunk

μύρον, -ου, τό: sweet-oil, unguent, balsam

ναός, -ῶ, ὁ: the dwelling of a god, a temple

οἰκοδομέω: to build a house

περίκειμαι: to lie round about

περιρρέω: to flow round

πήχυς, ὁ: a cubit

πλάτος, ὁ: breadth, width

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream

πύλη, ἡ: a gate

ρέω: to flow, run, stream, gush

σμαράγδινος, -η, -ον: emerald

στέφανος, ὁ: a garland

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium

τείχος, -εος, τό: a wall

χρύσεος, -η, -ον: golden, of gold

They observe the marvelous lifestyle of those on the Isle of the Blessed, their beautiful city, their habits, their food, etc.

τούντεϋθεν (= τὸ ἐντεϋθεν): "thereupon"

στεφάνων περιρρυνέντων: gen. abs., "the garlands falling off"

ἐλελύμεθα: plupf. pas. of λύω, "we were released"

περίκειται: "is placed around"

ᾧκοδομημένοι: perf. part. of οἰκοδομέω, "having been built"

ἐφ' ὧν ποιοῦσι: "upon which they make"

πήχεων ἑκατὸν βασιλικῶν: "100 royal cubits"

βασιλικῶν, βάθος δὲ [πέντε] ὥστε νεῖν εὐμαρῶς. λουτρὰ δὲ ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς οἴκοι μεγάλοι ὑάλινοι, τῷ κινναμῶμῳ ἐγκαίόμενοι· ἀντὶ μέντοι τοῦ ὕδατος ἐν ταῖς πυέλοις δρόσος θερμὴ ἔστιν. [12] ἐσθῆτι δὲ χρῶνται ἀραχνίους λεπτοῖς, πορφυροῖς. αὐτοὶ δὲ σώματα μὲν οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' ἀναφεῖς καὶ ἄσαρκοί εἰσιν, μορφήν δὲ καὶ ἰδέαν μόνην ἐμφαίνουσιν, καὶ ἀσώματοι ὄντες ὁμῶς συνεστᾶσιν καὶ κινοῦνται καὶ φρονοῦσι καὶ φωνὴν ἀφιαῖσιν, καὶ ὅλως ἔοικε γυμνὴ τις ἢ ψυχὴ αὐτῶν περιπολεῖν τὴν τοῦ σώματος

ἀναφής, -ές: not to be touched, impalpable
 ἀράχνιον, τό: a spider's web
 ἄσαρκος, -ον: without flesh, lean
 ἀσώματος, -ον: incorporeal
 ἀφήμι: to send forth, discharge
 βάθος: depth or height
 βασιλικός, -ή, -όν: royal, kingly
 γυμνός, -ή, -όν: naked, unclad
 δρόσος, ἡ: dew
 ἐγκαίω: to burn or heat in
 ἐμφαίνω: exhibit
 ἔοικα: it seemed good
 ἐσθής, -ῆτος, ἡ: dress, clothing, raiment
 εὐμαρής, -ές: easy, convenient, without trouble
 θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
 ἰδέα, ἡ: form
 κινέω: to set in motion, to move

κιννάμωμον, τό: cinnamon
 λεπτός, -ή, -όν: fine
 λουτρόν, τό: a bath, bathing place
 μορφή, ἡ: shape
 νήχομαι: to swim
 οἶκος, ὁ: a house, abode, dwelling
 ὅλως: wholly
 περιπολέω: to go around or about
 πορφύρεος: purple
 πυέλος, ἡ: an oblong trough
 συνίστημι: to subsist
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body
 ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
 φρονέω: to think, to have understanding
 φωνή, ἡ: a sound, tone
 χράομαι: to use
 ψυχή, ἡ: spirit

βάθος δὲ πέντε: acc. of respect, "five in depth"
 ὥστε νεῖν: result clause, "so one can swim"
 αὐτοὶ δὲ: "as for themselves"
 ἀναφεῖς: nom. pl. masc. (ἀν-ἄφη), "untouchable"
 ἐμφαίνουσιν: "they manifest"
 καὶ ἀσώματοι ὄντες ὁμῶς: concessive, "and although being bodiless, still...."
 συνεστᾶσιν: perf. of συν-ἴστημι, "they subsist"
 φωνὴν ἀφιαῖσιν: pr. of ἀφ-ἴημι, "they speak"
 καὶ ὅλως: "and generally"
 τὴν...ὁμοιότητα: "the resemblance"

A True Story

ὁμοιότητα περικειμένη· εἰ γοῦν μὴ ἄψαιτό τις, οὐκ ἂν ἐξελέγξει
μὴ εἶναι σῶμα τὸ ὀρώμενον· εἰσὶ γὰρ ὥσπερ σκιαί ὀρθαί, οὐ
μέλαινοι. γηράσκει δὲ οὐδείς, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἧς ἂν ἡλικίας ἔλθῃ
παραμένει. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ νύξ παρ' αὐτοῖς γίνεται, οὐδὲ ἡμέρα πάνν
λαμπρά· καθάπερ δὲ τὸ λυκαυγὲς ἤδη πρὸς ἔω, μηδέπω
ἀνατείλαντος ἡλίου, τοιοῦτο φῶς ἐπέχει τὴν γῆν. καὶ μέντοι καὶ
ὄραν μίαν ἴσασι τοῦ ἔτους· αἰεὶ γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῖς ἔαρ ἐστὶ καὶ εἰς
ἄνεμος πνεῖ παρ' αὐτοῖς ὁ ζέφυρος. [13] ἡ δὲ χώρα πᾶσι μὲν

αἰεὶ: always, for ever
ἀνατέλλω: to make to rise up or to grow
up
ἄνεμος, ὄ: wind
ἄπτω: to touch
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth
γηράσκω: to grow old, become old
γοῦν: at any rate, any way
ἔαρ, τό: spring
ἐξελέγχω: refute
ἐπιχέω: to pour over
ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
ἔως, ἔω, ἡ: daybreak, dawn
ζέφυρος, ὄ: Zephyrus, the west wind
ἡλικία, ἡ: time of life, age
ἥλιος, ὄ: the sun
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day

λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, brilliant, radiant
λυκαυγής, -ές: of or at twilight
μέλας: black
μηδέπω: nor as yet, not as yet
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: night
οἶδα: to know
ὁμοιότης, -ητος, ἡ: likeness, resemblance
ὄραω: to see
ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: genuine, upright
παραμένω: to stay beside or near, stand by
περίκειμαι: to lie round about
πνέω: to blow
σκιά, -ᾶς, ἡ: a shadow
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body
φῶς, φωτός, τό: light
χώρα, ἡ: space
ώρα, ἡ: period, season

περικειμένη: pr. part. nom. s. modifying ψυχῆ, “having put about itself”
εἰ μὴ ἄψαιτό τις: future less vivid cond., “unless someone were to touch”
ἄψαιτό: ao. opt. of ἄπτω
ἐξελέγξει: ao. opt. of ἐξελέγχω, “he would not refute”
μὴ εἶναι: ind. st. after ἐξελέγξει, “that what they were seeing was not a body”
ἐφ' ἧς ἂν ἡλικίας ἔλθῃ (ao. subj.): indefinite temporal clause “at whatever age he
arrives”
οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ: “there is not even”
τὸ λυκαυγὲς: “the grey twilight”
μηδέπω ἀνατείλαντος ἡλίου: gen. abs., “sun not yet risen”
ἀνατείλαντος: ao. part. of ἀνατέλλω
ἴσασι: pr. 3 pl. of οἶδα, “they know”
καὶ μέντοι: “and what's more”

Lucian

ἀνθεσιν, πᾶσι δὲ φυτοῖς ἡμέροις τε καὶ σκιεροῖς τέθληλεν· αἱ μὲν γὰρ ἄμπελοι δωδεκάφοροί εἰσιν καὶ κατὰ μῆνα ἕκαστον καρποφοροῦσιν· τὰς δὲ ροιάς καὶ τὰς μηλέας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ὀπώραν ἔλεγον εἶναι τρισκαιδεκάφορον· ἐνὸς γὰρ μηνὸς τοῦ παρ' αὐτοῖς Μινώου δις καρποφορεῖν· ἀντὶ δὲ πυροῦ οἱ στάχυες ἄρτον ἔτοιμον ἐπ' ἄκρων φύουσιν ὥσπερ μύκητας. πηγαὶ δὲ περὶ τὴν πόλιν ὕδατος μὲν πέντε καὶ ἐξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσiai, μέλιτος δὲ ἄλλαι τοσαῦται, μύρου δὲ πεντακόσiai, μικρότεραι μέντοι αὗται, καὶ ποταμοὶ γάλακτος ἑπτὰ καὶ οἴνου ὀκτώ.

ἄκρον, -ον, τό: the highest or furthest point

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril

ἄνθος, ὁ: a blossom, flower

ἄρτος, ὁ: a cake or loaf of wheat-bread

γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk

δις: twice, doubly

δωδεκάφοροι: bearing fruit 12 times a year

ἐξήκοντα: sixty

ἑπτὰ: seven

ἐτοῖμος, -ον: at hand, ready, prepared

ἡμερος, -α, -ον: tame, tamed, reclaimed

θάλλω: to swell, teem

καρποφορέω: to bear fruit

μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month

μέλι, -ιτος, τό: honey

μηλέα, ἡ: an apple-tree

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small

μύκης, -ητος, ὁ: a mushroom

μύρον, -ου, τό: unguent, balsam

Μινώιος, -α, -ον: of Minos

οἶνος, ὁ: wine

ὀκτώ: eight

ὀπώρα, ἡ: a fruit tree

πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred

πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream

πυρός, ὁ: wheat

ροιά, ἡ: mulberry

σκιερός, -ά, -όν: shady, giving shade

στάχυς, -υος, ὁ: an ear of corn

τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α: three hundred

ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

φυτόν, τό: that which has grown, a plant, tree

φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth

ἡμέροις τε καὶ σκιεροῖς: “both cultivated and shady.” There is a pun here as though ἡμέροις means “sunny.”

τέθληλεν: perf. of θάλλω, “teems”

ἔλεγον εἶναι τρισκαιδεκάφορον: “were said to bear fruit 13 times a year”

τοῦ παρ' αὐτοῖς Μινώου: “the month called Minoan among them”

δις καρποφορεῖν: inf. continues ind. st., “to bear fruit twice”

ὥσπερ μύκητας: “like mushrooms”

A True Story

[14] Τὸ δὲ συμπόσιον ἔξω τῆς πόλεως πεποίηται ἐν τῷ Ἥλυσίῳ καλουμένῳ πεδίῳ· λειμῶν δέ ἐστιν κάλλιστος καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ὕλη παντοία πυκνή, ἐπισκιάζουσα τοὺς κατακειμένους. καὶ στρωμνὴν μὲν ἐκ τῶν ἀνθῶν ὑποβέβληται, διακονοῦνται δὲ καὶ παραφέρουσιν ἕκαστα οἱ ἄνεμοι πλήν γε τοῦ οἰνοχοεῖν· τούτου γὰρ οὐδὲν δέονται, ἀλλ' ἔστι δένδρα περὶ τὸ συμπόσιον ὑάλινα μεγάλα τῆς διαυγεστάτης ὑάλου, καὶ καρπὸς ἐστὶ τῶν δένδρων τούτων ποτήρια παντοία καὶ τὰς κατασκευὰς καὶ τὰ μεγέθη. ἐπειδὴν οὖν παρήη τις ἐς τὸ συμπόσιον, τρυγήσας ἐν ἡ καὶ δύο τῶν ἐκπωμάτων παρατίθεται, τὰ δὲ αὐτίκα οἴνου πλήρη γίνεται.

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind

ἄνθος, ὁ: a blossom, flower

δένδρον, τό: a tree

δέομαι: to need

διακονέω: to minister, serve, do service

διαυγής, -ές: transparent

ἐκπωμα, -ατος, τό: a drinking-cup, beaker

ἔξω: outside of + *gen.*

ἐπισκιάζω: to throw a shade upon

Ἥλύσιος, -α, -ον: Elysian

καλέω: to call, summon

καρπός, ὁ: fruit

κατάκειμαι: to lie down, lie outstretched

κατασκευή, ἡ: preparation

λειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ: a meadow

οἶνος, ὁ: wine

οἰνοχοέω: to pour out wine for drinking

παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts or kinds, manifold

παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts or kinds, manifold

παρατίθημι: to place beside

παραφέρω: to bring to

πεδίον, τό: a plain, flat

πλήν: except + *gen.*

πλήρης, -ες: filled, full

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

ποτήριον, τό: a drinking-cup, wine-cup

πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, compact

στρωμνή, ἡ: a bed spread or prepared

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium

τρυγάω: to gather in

ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass

ὑαλος, ἡ: a clear, transparent stone

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

ὑποβάλλω: to throw, put or lay under

τὸ συμπόσιον: acc. of resp., “as for their symposium”

πεποίηται: perf. mid./pas. of ποιέω, “they are prepared”

ἐπισκιάζουσα: pr. part., “casting shade on”

ὑποβέβληται: perf. mid. of υποβάλλω, “they have laid down under (themselves)”

πλήν γε τοῦ οἰνοχοεῖν: articular infinitive, “except, of course, for pouring wine”

καὶ τὰς κατασκευὰς καὶ τὰ μεγέθη: accusatives of respect, “both in style and size”

ἐπειδὴν οὖν παρήη τις: pr. subj. of παρα-ἔρχομαι, general temporal clause, “whenever someone comes along”

τρυγήσας: ao, part. nom. s. of τρυγάω, “having plucked”

ἐν ἡ καὶ δύο: “one or even two”

παρατίθεται: pr. mid. of παρα-τίθημι, “sets beside him”

πλήρη γίνεται: “become full”

οὕτω μὲν πίνουσιν, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν στεφάνων αἱ ἀηδόνες καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ μουσικὰ ὄρνεα ἐκ τῶν πλησίον λειμώνων τοῖς στόμασιν ἀνθολογοῦντα κατανίφει αὐτοὺς μετ' ᾠδῆς ὑπερπετόμενα. καὶ μὴν καὶ μυρίζονται ὧδε· νεφέλαι πυκναὶ ἀνασπάσασαι μύρον ἐκ τῶν πηγῶν καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐπιστᾶσαι ὑπὲρ τὸ συμπόσιον ἡρέμα τῶν ἀνέμων ὑποθλιβόντων ὕουσι λεπτὸν ὥσπερ δρόσον.

[15] Ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ δείπνῳ μουσικῇ τε καὶ ᾠδαῖς σχολάζουσιν· ἄδεται δὲ αὐτοῖς τὰ Ὅμηρου ἔπη μάλιστα· καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ πάρεστι

ᾄδω: to sing	νεφέλη, ἡ: a cloud
ἀηδών, -όνος, ὄ: a nightingale	Ὅμηρος, -ου, ὄ: Homer
ἀνασπάω: to draw up, pull up	ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
ἄνεμος, ὄ: wind	πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams
ἀνθολογέω: gather flowers	πίνω: to drink
δείπνον, τό: the principal meal	ποταμός, ὄ: a river, stream
δρόσος, ἡ: dew	πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, compact
ἐπιστάζω: let fall in drops upon or into, instill	στέφανος, ὄ: a garland
ἔπος, -εος: a word, an epic	στόμα, τό: the mouth
ἡρέμα: stilly, quietly, gently, softly	συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium
κατανίφω: to cover with snow	σχολάζω: to have leisure or spare time, to be at leisure
λειμών, -ώνος, ὄ: a meadow	ὑπερπέτομαι: to fly over
λεπτός, -ή, -όν: a small amount, lightly	ὑποθλίβω: to press under or gently
μουσικός, -ή, -όν: musical	ὔω: to send rain, to rain
μυρίζω: to rub with ointment or unguent, anoint	ὧδε: in the following way
μύρον, -ου, τό: sweet-oil, balsam	ᾠδή, ἡ: a song, lay, ode

ἀνθολογοῦντα: pr. part. nom. pl. n. of ἀνθολογέω, modifying ὄρνεα, “gathering flowers”

κατανίφει: “let them fall like snow”

ὑπερπετόμενα: pr. part. nom. pl. n. of ὑπερπέτομαι, modifying ὄρνεα, “flying around”

καὶ μὴν καὶ: indicating a climax, “moreover”

ἀνασπάσασαι: ao. part. nom. pl. f. of ἀνασπάω, “having drawn up”

ἐπιστᾶσαι: ao. part. intrans. nom. pl. f. of ἐπίστημι, “standing over”

τῶν ἀνέμων ὑποθλιβόντων: gen. abs., “the winds pressing gently”

ὔουσι: pr. of ὔω, “they rain”

ἄδεται: pr. of ᾄδω, “are recited”

τὰ Ὅμηρου ἔπη: “the Homeric epics”

καὶ αὐτὸς: “and he himself” (i.e. Homer)

A True Story

καὶ συνευχεῖται αὐτοῖς ὑπὲρ τὸν Ὀδυσσεά κατακείμενος. οἱ μὲν οὖν χοροὶ ἐκ παίδων εἰσὶν καὶ παρθένων· ἐξάρχουσι δὲ καὶ συνάδουσιν Εὐνομός τε ὁ Λοκρὸς καὶ Ἄριων ὁ Λέσβιος καὶ Ἄνακρέων καὶ Στησίχορος· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτον παρ' αὐτοῖς ἔθεασάμην, ἥδη τῆς Ἑλένης αὐτῷ διηλλαγμένης. ἐπειδὴν δὲ οὗτοι παύσωνται ἄδοντες, δεύτερος χορὸς παρέρχεται ἐκ κύκνων καὶ χελιδόνων καὶ ἀηδόνων. ἐπειδὴν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ἄσσωσιν, τότε ἥδη πᾶσα ἡ ὕλη ἐπαυλεῖ τῶν ἀνέμων καταρχόντων. [16] μέγιστον δὲ

ᾄδω: to sing

ἀηδών, -όνος, ὁ: the nightingale

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind

δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second

διαλλάσσω: to forgive

ἐξάρχω: to begin with, make a beginning
of

ἐπαυλέω: to accompany on the flute

θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view, behold

κατάκειμαι: to lie down, lie outstretched

κατάρχω: to make beginning of

κύκνος, ὁ: a swan

Ὀδυσσεύς, -έως, ὁ: Odysseus

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child

παρέρχομαι: to go by, beside or past, to
pass by, pass

παρθένος, ἡ: a maiden, virgin, girl

παύομαι: to cease

συνάδω: to sing with or together

συνευχεόμαι: to fare sumptuously or
feast together

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

χελιδών, -όνος, ὁ: the swallow

χορός, ὁ: a chorus

συνευχεῖται: impf. of *συν-εὐ-οἶχομαι*, “shares the revelry”

ὑπὲρ...κατακείμενος: “being seated higher than...”

ἐξάρχουσι δὲ καὶ συνάδουσιν: “lead the dancing and singing”

Εὐνομός ὁ Λοκρὸς: Eunomus of Lokri, in southern Italy, was a renowned harp-player.

Ἄριων ὁ Λέσβιος: a poet credited with inventing the dithyramb. His story is told by Herodotus in *Histories* 1.23.

Ἄνακρέων Anacreon of Teos (570 – 488) was a lyric poet known for his drinking songs.

Στησίχορος: Stesichorus or Himera (640 - 555) was the first great poet of the Greek west, writing lyrical poems on epic subjects.

διηλλαγμένης: perf. part. gen. s. of *διαλλάσσω*, gen. abs, “Helen already having forgiven him.” Stesichorus lost his sight after lampooning Helen, recovering it only after writing a retraction (“palinode”).

ἐπειδὴν...παύσωνται (ao. subj.): general temporal clause, “whenever they cease”

ἐπειδὴν...ἄσσωσιν (ao. subj of *ᾄδω*): general temporal clause, “whenever they sing”

ἐπαυλεῖ: “accompanies on the flute”

τῶν ἀνέμων καταρχόντων: gen. abs. “with the winds leading”

δὴ πρὸς εὐφροσύνην ἐκεῖνο ἔχουσιν· πηγαί εἰσι δύο παρὰ τὸ συμπόσιον, ἡ μὲν γέλωτος, ἡ δὲ ἡδονῆς· ἐκ τούτων ἐκατέρας πάντες ἐν ἀρχῇ τῆς εὐωχίας πίνουσιν καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἡδόμενοι καὶ γελῶντες διάγουσιν.

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, origin, first cause

γελῶ: to laugh

γέλωτος, ὁ: laughter

διάγω: to pass time

ἐκάτερος: each of two, either, each singly

εὐφροσύνη, ἡ: mirth, merriment

εὐωχία, ἡ: good cheer, feasting

ἡδομαι: to delight, take pleasure

ἡδονή, ἡ: delight, enjoyment, pleasure

πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams

πίνω: to drink

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium

ἡδόμενοι καὶ γελῶντες: part. nom. pl. complementing διάγουσιν, “they pass time enjoying and laughing”

αὐτός again:

- Besides the uses of **αὐτός** indicated above (p. 5), this word also combines with pronouns to form reflexive pronouns:

ἐμ-αυτόν, ἐμ-αυτήν: myself, myself

σε-αυτόν, σε-αυτήν: yourself; also **σαυτόν, σαυτήν**

ἐ-αυτόν, ἐ-αυτήν: himself, herself

Similarly in the plural:

ἡμᾶς αὐτούς; ὑμᾶς αὐτούς; ἐ-αυτούς

The only difficulty is that the third person forms based on the pronoun **ἐ-** often coalesce with the first syllable of **αὐτον**, producing a crasis that looks like the simple form of **αὐτόν**, except for the breathing mark:

ἐ-αυτόν -- **αὐτόν**

ἐ-αυτήν -- **αὐτήν**

ἐ-αυτούς -- **αὐτούς**

- The definite article can also contract with **αὐτός**:

ὁ αὐτός -- **αὐτός**

ἡ αὐτή -- **αὐτή**

τὸ αὐτό -- **ταυτό**

These all mean “the same.” Distinguish from **τοῦτο** “this one” and **ταῦτα** “these ones”

- Note also the idiomatic use of the dative case when used with a noun:

αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσι: men and all (i.e. with even the men)

αὐτῷ σκάφει: “boat and all”

αὐτῇ νηϊ: “ship and all”

[17] Βούλομαι δὲ εἰπεῖν καὶ τῶν ἐπισήμων οὔστινας παρ' αὐτοῖς ἔθεασάμην· πάντας μὲν τοὺς ἡμιθέους καὶ τοὺς ἐπὶ Ἴλιον στρατεύσαντας πλὴν γε δὴ τοῦ Λοκροῦ Αἴαντος, ἐκείνον δὲ μόνον ἔφασκον ἐν τῷ τῶν ἀσεβῶν χώρῳ κολάζεσθαι, βαρβάρων δὲ Κύρους τε ἀμφοτέρους καὶ τὸν Σκύθην Ἀνάχαρσιν καὶ τὸν Θρᾶκα Ζάμολξιν καὶ Νομᾶν τὸν Ἰταλιώτην, καὶ μὴν καὶ Λυκοῦργον τὸν Λακεδαιμόνιον καὶ Φωκίωνα καὶ Τέλλον τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, καὶ τοὺς

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian
ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: both of two
ἀσεβής, -ές: godless, unholy, profane
βάρβαρος, -ον: barbarous
βούλομαι: to will, wish, be willing
εἶπον: to speak, say (from λέγω)
ἐπίσημος, -ον: famous, notable
ἡμίθεος, ὁ: a half-god, demigod
θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view, behold
Θρᾶξ, **Θρακός**, ὁ: a Thracian
Ἴλιος, -ου, ὁ: Ilium or Troy

Ἰταλιώτης, -ου, ὁ: an Italian
κολάζω: to punish
Κῦρος, ὁ: Cyrus
Λακεδαιμόνιος, -α, -ον: Spartan
πλὴν: except + *γεν*.
Σκύθης, -ου, ὁ: a Scythian
σοφός, -ή, -όν: wise
στρατεύω: to serve in war
φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert
χώρος, ὁ: ground, place

The narrator now names many of the famous souls he saw there: heroes, barbarians, Greeks, and finally philosophers.

ἐπισήμων (sc. **ἀνθρώπων**): “the famous men”

οὔστινας: acc. pl. relative pronoun, “whom”

πλὴν γε δὴ: “except, of course...”

τοῦ Λοκροῦ Αἴαντος: the Locrian Aias (vs. Telamonion Aias) was guilty of an outrage against Athena and punished by her on his way home from the Trojan War.

ἐκείνον ἔφασκον κολάζεσθαι: ind. st. “that he was being punished”

βαρβάρων: gen. pl. “of the Barbarians”

Κύρους ἀμφοτέρους: “both Cyruses.” i.e. Cyrus the Great d. 535 and Cyrus the Younger d. 401.

τὸν Σκύθην Ἀνάχαρσιν: Anacharsis, a 6th century Scythian who visited Athens. Lucian wrote a dialogue about him.

τὸν Θρᾶκα Ζάμολξιν: Zalmoxis the Thracian was a legendary social and religious reformer, whose story is told in Herodotus, *Histories* 4.95-6

Νομᾶν τὸν Ἰταλιώτην: Numa was the legendary second king of Rome from 715-673, famous as a law-giver. Plutarch wrote a biography of him.

Λυκοῦργον τὸν Λακεδαιμόνιον: Lycurgus the Spartan (ca. 800-730), was the famous law-giver who established the Spartan military regime. One of Plutarch's parallel lives compared Lycurgus and Numa.

Φωκίωνα καὶ Τέλλον τοὺς Ἀθηναίους: Phocion was a 4th C. Athenian statesman about whom Plutarch wrote a biography; Tellus the Athenian was identified by Solon as the most fortunate man he knew in a famous encounter with Croesus (Herodotus, *Histories* 1.30-1).

σοφούς ἄνευ Περιάνδρου. εἶδον δὲ καὶ Σωκράτη τὸν Σωφρονίσκου ἀδολεσχούντα μετὰ Νέστορος καὶ Παλαμήδους· περὶ δὲ αὐτὸν ἦσαν Ὑάκινθος τε ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ὁ Θεσπιεύς Νάρκισσος καὶ Ὑγλας καὶ ἄλλοι καλοί. καὶ μοι ἐδόκει ἐρᾶν τοῦ Ὑακίνθου· τὰ πολλὰ γοῦν ἐκείνον διήλεγχεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ χαλεπαίνειν αὐτῷ ὁ Τραδάμανθος καὶ ἠπειληκέναι πολλάκις ἐκβαλεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς νήσου, ἣν φλυαρῆ καὶ μὴ ἐθέλη ἀφείς τὴν εἰρωνείαν εὐωχεῖσθαι.

ἀδολεσχέω: to talk idly, prate
ἄνευ: without + *gen.*
ἀπειλέω: to threaten
ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge
διελέγχω: to refute utterly
ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose
εἰρωνεία, ἦ: dissimulation, irony

ἐκβάλλω: to throw or cast out of
εὐωχέω: to entertain sumptuously
Λακεδαιμόνιος, -α, -ον: Spartan
νήσος, -ου, ἦ: an island
πολλάκις: many times, often
φλυαρέω: to talk nonsense, play the fool
χαλεπαίνω: to be severe, sore, grievous

Περιάνδρου: Periander of Corinth, one of the traditional “wise men” of Greece, but here is excluded, because of his reputation as a tyrant. His story is told in Herodotus, *Histories* 4.91-3.

Σωκράτη τὸν Σωφρονίσκου: Socrates the son of Sophron, the famous Athenian philosopher, known to us from the dialogues of Plato; he was famous for his “irony” and also for his delight in beautiful young men.

Νέστορος: Nestor was famous for his wisdom in the *Iliad*.

Παλαμήδους: Palamedes earned the hatred of Odysseus who contrived to have him killed at Troy. He is cited by Socrates in the *Apology* as a victim of injustice.

Ὑάκινθος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος: Hyacinthus, beloved of Apollo who accidentally killed him by a discus throw.

ὁ Θεσπιεύς Νάρκισσος: Narcissus fell in love with his own beautiful image and was turned into a flower.

Ὑγλας: Hylas was beloved of Heracles and lost to him in the course of the voyage of the Argonauts.

(sc. **Σωκράτης**) **ἐδόκει ἐρᾶν:** “seemed to love.”

χαλεπαίνειν: infinitives with **ἐλέγετο**, “R. was said to be angry...”

ἠπειληκέναι: inf. perf. of **ἀπειλέω** after **ἐλέγετο**, “was said to have threatened”

ἐκβαλεῖν: ao. inf. of **ἐκβάλλω** complementing **ἠπειληκέναι**, “to evict him”

ἦν φλυαρῆ καὶ μὴ ἐθέλη: subj. in pres. general condition, “if he kept playing the fool and kept refusing (didn't wish to) ...”

ἀφείς: ao. part. nom. s. of **ἀφίημι**, “giving up”

τὴν εἰρωνείαν: “his famous irony”

εὐωχεῖσθαι: pr. inf. mid., complementing **ἐθέλη**, “to be merry”

A True Story

Πλάτων δὲ μόνος οὐ παρήν, ἀλλ' ἐλέγετο [καὶ] αὐτὸς ἐν τῇ ἀναπλασθείσῃ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ πόλει οἰκεῖν χρώμενος τῇ πολιτείᾳ καὶ τοῖς νόμοις οἷς συνέγραψεν. [18] οἱ μέντοι ἀμφ' Ἀρίστιππὸν τε καὶ Ἐπίκουρον τὰ πρῶτα παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐφέροντο ἡδεῖς τε ὄντες καὶ κεχαρισμένοι καὶ συμποτικώτατοι. παρήν δὲ καὶ Αἴσωπος ὁ Φρύξ· τούτῳ δὲ ὅσα καὶ γελωτοποιῶ χρώνται. Διογένης μὲν γε ὁ Σινωπεὺς τοσοῦτον μετέβαλεν τοῦ τρόπου, ὥστε γῆμαι μὲν ἑταίραν τὴν Λαῖδα, ὀρχεῖσθαι δὲ πολλάκις ὑπὸ μέθης ἀνιστάμενον

ἀμφί: on both sides, around
ἀναπλάσσω: to form anew, remodel
ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up
γαμέω: to marry
γελωτοποιός, -όν: exciting laughter
ἑταίρα, ἡ: a companion
ἡδύς, -εἶα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant
μέθη, ἡ: strong drink
μεταβάλλω: to change quickly
νόμος, ὁ: custom, law, ordinance
ὀρχέομαι: to dance in a row

ὅσος, -η, -ον: how much
πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
Σινωπεὺς, ἑως, ὁ: an inhabitant of Sinope
συγγράφω: to write or note down
συμποτικός, -ή, -όν: convivial, jolly
τρόπος, ὁ: a turn, direction, course, way
φέρω: to bear, carry, endure
Φρύξ, ὁ: a Phrygian
χαρίζομαι: to say or do something agreeable
χρόομαι: to use

Πλάτων: Plato, the great philosopher of Athens, whose political works include the *Laws* and the *Republic*. In the latter work an ideal government is imagined as an exercise for understanding the concept of justice.

Πλάτων...ἐλέγετο...οἰκεῖν: ind. st., “Plato was said to live”

ἀναπλασθείσῃ: ao. part. pas. dat. s. of **ἀναπλάττω**, modifying **πόλει**, “made up”

τῇ πολιτείᾳ καὶ τοῖς νόμοις: Plato’s dialogues, the *Republic* and the *Laws*

Ἀρίστιππὸν: Aristippus of Cyrene (435-356) was a follower of Socrates and founded a school focused on pleasure as the appropriate end for humans to seek.

Ἐπίκουρον: Epicurus (341-271) was a hedonist like Aristippus.

ἐφέροντο: “were considered”

κεχαρισμένοι: perf. part. of **χαρίζω**, “since they were agreeable”

Αἴσωπος ὁ Φρύξ: Aesop (620-564) was famous for his moral fables.

γελωτοποιῶ: “they use him for a jester”

Διογένης μὲν γε ὁ Σινωπεὺς: Diogenes the Cynic (404-323), a “Socrates gone mad,” was famous for his utter disregard for conventional behavior.

τοσοῦτον: acc. s., “to such an extent....”

μετέβαλεν: ao. of **μεταβάλλω**, “had changed”

ὥστε γῆμαι...ὀρχεῖσθαι...παροινεῖν: result clauses

ἑταίραν τὴν Λαῖδα: Lais was the name of several famous courtesans.

ὑπὸ μέθης: “under the influence”

ἀνιστάμενον: pr. part. intrans. acc. s. of **ἀνα-ἵστημι**, “getting up to dance”

καὶ παροινεῖν. τῶν δὲ Στωϊκῶν οὐδεὶς παρῆν· ἔτι γὰρ ἐλέγοντο ἀναβαίνειν τὸν τῆς ἀρετῆς ὄρθιον λόφον. ἠκούομεν δὲ καὶ περὶ Χρυσίππου ὅτι οὐ πρότερον αὐτῷ ἐπιβῆναι τῆς νήσου θέμις, πρὶν τὸ τέταρτον ἑαυτὸν ἐλλεβορίσῃ. τοὺς δὲ Ἀκαδημαϊκοὺς ἔλεγον ἐθέλειν μὲν ἐλθεῖν, ἐπέχειν δὲ ἔτι καὶ διασκέπτεσθαι· μηδὲ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτό πω καταλαμβάνειν, εἰ καὶ νήσός τις τοιαύτη ἐστίν. ἄλλως τε τὴν ἐπὶ τοῦ Ῥαδαμάνθου, οἶμαι, κρίσιν ἐδεδοίκεσαν,

ἀκούω: to hear

ἄλλως: in another way or manner

ἀναβαίνω: to go up, mount, to go up to

ἀρετή: goodness, excellence

δεῖδω: to fear

διασκέπτομαι: to be skeptical

ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose

ἐπέχω: hold back

ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon

θέμις, ἤ: that which is laid down or established by custom

καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, grasp

κρίσις, -εως, ἤ: a separating, decision

λόφος, ὄ: raised area, hill

οἶομαι: to suppose, think, deem, imagine

ὄρθιος, -α, -ον: straight up, going upwards, steep, uphill

παροινέω: to behave ill at wine, play drunken tricks

πρὶν: before

πω: up to this time, yet

τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth

τῶν Στωϊκῶν: The Stoics, who sought to overcome all passion, were popularly thought of as dour and hypocritical.

ἐλέγοντο ἀναβαίνειν: “they were said to be still climbing”

Χρυσίππου: Chrysippus of Soli (279-206), the third head of the Stoic school of philosophy.

ἐπιβῆναι: ao. inf. of ἐπιβαίνω after θέμις, “allowed to come ashore”

πρὶν + subj: “until such time”

ἐλλεβορίσῃ: ao. subj. of ἐλλεβορίζω, “takes the hellebore treatment.” Hellebore was a treatment for madness. Chrysippus claimed one could only be wise after taking the treatment three times.

τοὺς δὲ Ἀκαδημαϊκοὺς: The Academy was the school of Plato, but the later Academics were known for a highly skeptical attitude toward truth and certainty, hence their portrayal here.

ἐθέλειν, ἐπέχειν, διασκέπτεσθαι, καταλαμβάνειν: inf. in ind. st. after ἔλεγον, “that they wished to come but were staying away, etc.”

αὐτὸ τοῦτό: acc., “even this”

μηδὲ...καταλαμβάνειν: “that they were not yet able to decide”

εἰ καὶ νήσός τις τοιαύτη ἐστίν: ind. question after καταλαμβάνειν, “whether such an island really exists”

ἄλλως τε: “besides”

ἐδεδοίκεσαν: plupf. of δεῖδω, “they feared”

ἄτε καὶ τὸ κριτήριον αὐτοὶ ἀνηρηκότες. πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν ἔφασκον ὀρμηθέντας ἀκολουθεῖν τοῖς ἀφικνουμένοις ὑπὸ νωθείας ἀπολείπεσθαι μὴ καταλαμβάνοντας καὶ ἀναστρέφειν ἐκ μέσης τῆς ὁδοῦ.

[19] Οὗτοι μὲν οὖν ἦσαν οἱ ἀξιολογώτατοι τῶν παρόντων. τιμῶσι δὲ μάλιστα τὸν Ἀχιλλέα καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Θησέα. περὶ δὲ συνουσίας καὶ ἀφροδισίων οὕτω φρονοῦσιν· μίσγονται μὲν ἀναφανδὸν πάντων ὀρώντων καὶ γυναιξὶ καὶ ἄρρεσι, καὶ οὐδαμῶς τοῦτο αὐτοῖς αἰσχρὸν δοκεῖ· μόνος δὲ Σωκράτης διώμνυτο ἢ μὴν

αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν: causing shame, abusive
 ἀκολουθεῖν: to follow
 ἀναιρέω: to take up, destroy
 ἀναστρέφω: to turn upside down, upset
 ἀναφανδόν: visibly, openly
 ἀξιόλογος, -ον: worthy of mention, noteworthy
 ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind
 ἄρσιν, ὁ: male
 ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
 ἀφροδίσιος, -α, -ον: belonging to Aphrodite, sex
 Ἀχιλλεύς, ὁ: Achilles
 γυνή, -αῖκός, ἡ: a woman
 διόμνυμι: to swear solemnly, to declare on oath that

Θησεύς, ὁ: Theseus
 καταλαμβάνω: to lay hold of, comprehend
 κριτήριον, τό: a criterion, standard
 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
 μίγνυμι: to mingle, have sex
 νώθεια, ἡ: sluggishness, dullness
 ὁδός, ἡ: a way, path, track, road, highway
 ὀράω: to see
 ὀρμάω: to set in motion, urge
 οὐδαμῶς: in no wise
 συνουσία, ἡ: a being with, intercourse
 Σωκράτης, ὁ: Socrates
 τιμάω: to pay honor to, revere
 φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert
 φρονέω: to think, to have understanding

ἄτε + part: expressing the grounds of the supposition (οἶμαι)
 ἀνηρηκότες: perf. part. of ἀναιρέω, “that they had abolished”
 ἔφασκον...ἀκολουθεῖν, ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀναστρέφειν: ind. st.
 ὀρμηθέντας: ao. part. pas. of ὀρμάω modifying the subject of ἀκολουθεῖν, “having set out”
 τοῖς ἀφικνουμένοις: pr. part. dat. pl. of ἀφικνέομαι, object of ἀκολουθεῖν, “to follow those arriving”
 μὴ καταλαμβάνοντας: pr. part. acc. modifying the subject of ἀπολείπεσθαι, “by not reaching” (but also “not coming to understand”)
 περὶ δὲ συνουσίας καὶ ἀφροδισίων: “with regard to sex”
 ἀναφανδόν: adv., “openly”
 πάντων ὀρώντων: gen abs., “with everyone looking”
 διώμνυτο: impf. of δια-ἴμνυμι, “he swore”
 ἢ μὴν: prefacing a strong oath, “verily”

καθαρῶς πλησιάζειν τοῖς νέοις· καὶ μέντοι πάντες αὐτοῦ ἐπιορκεῖν κατεγίνωσκον· πολλάκις γοῦν ὁ μὲν Ὑάκινθος ἢ ὁ Νάρκισσος ὠμολόγουν, ἐκείνος δὲ ἤρνεϊτο. αἱ δὲ γυναῖκές εἰσι πᾶσι κοιναὶ καὶ οὐδεὶς φθονεῖ τῷ πλησίον, ἀλλ' εἰσὶ περὶ τοῦτο μάλιστα Πλατωνικώτατοι· καὶ οἱ παῖδες δὲ παρέχουσι τοῖς βουλομένοις οὐδὲν ἀντιλέγοντες.

ἀντιλέγω: to speak against, contradict
ἀρνεόμαι: to deny, disown
γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman
ἐπιορκέω: to swear (falsely)
καθαρός: clean, spotless
καταγινώσκω: to remark, discover
κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared in common

νέος, -α, -ον: young, youthful
ὀμολογέω: to speak together
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child
παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply
Πλατωνικός: of Plato, Platonic
πλησιάζω: to bring near
Ὑάκινθος, ὁ: Hyacinthus
φθονέω: be envious or jealous + *dat.*

πλησιάζειν: inf. ind. st. after **διώμνυτο**, “that he approached”

καὶ μέντοι: “and of course”

κατεγίνωσκον: impf. of **κατα-γινώσκω**, “recognized”

πολλάκις γοῦν: “many times, in fact”

ἤρνεϊτο: impf. of **ἀρνεόμαι:** “he kept on denying”

τῷ πλησίον: “his neighbor”

Πλατωνικώτατοι: “very Platonic.” In the Republic, Plato recommended having wives in common.

τοῖς βουλομένοις: “to whomever wishes”

A True Story

[20] Οὐπω δὲ δύο ἢ τρεῖς ἡμέραι διεληλύθεσαν, καὶ προσελθὼν ἐγὼ Ὀμήρῳ τῷ ποιητῇ, σχολῆς οὐσης ἀμφοῖν, τά τε ἄλλα ἐπυνθανόμεν καὶ ὅθεν εἶη. τοῦτο γὰρ μάλιστα παρ' ἡμῖν εἰσέτι νῦν ζητεῖσθαι. ὁ δὲ οὐδ' αὐτὸς μὲν ἀγνοεῖν ἔφασκεν ὡς οἱ μὲν Χίον, οἱ δὲ Σμυρναῖον, πολλοὶ δὲ Κολοφώνιον αὐτὸν νομίζουσιν· εἶναι μέντοι γε ἔλεγεν Βαβυλώνιος, καὶ παρά γε τοῖς πολίταις οὐχ Ὀμηρος, ἀλλὰ Τιγράνης καλεῖσθαι· ὕστερον δὲ ὀμηρεύσας παρὰ τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἀλλάξαι τὴν προσηγορίαν. ἔτι δὲ

ἀγνοέω: not to know

ἀλλάσσω: to change, alter

διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through

εἰσέτι: still yet

Ἕλλην, -ηνος, ὁ: Greek

ζητέω: to seek, seek for

καλέω: to call, summon

νομίζω: to hold as a custom or usage, practice, believe

ὅθεν: whence

ὀμηρεύω: to be or serve as a hostage

Ὀμηρος, ὁ: Homer

οὐπω: not yet

ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet

πολίτης, -ου, ὁ: a citizen

προσέρχομαι: to come or go to

προσηγορία, ἡ: an appellation, name

πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry

Σμυρναῖος, -η, -ον: of Smyrna

σχολή, ἡ: spare time, leisure, rest, ease

ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward

φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert

Χίος, -α, -ον: Chian, of or from Chios

A literary discussion with the shade of Homer.

διεληλύθεσαν: plupf. of δια-έρχομαι, “had passed”

προσελθὼν: ao. part. of προσ-έρχομαι, “having approached”

σχολῆς οὐσης: gen. abs., “there being leisure”

ἀμφοῖν: dual dat., “to both of us”

τά τε ἄλλα...καί: “other things, but especially...”

ὅθεν εἶη: ind. quest. after ἐπυνθανόμεν, with the optative in sec. sequence, “where he was from”

τοῦτο...ζητεῖσθαι: implied ind. st. “(saying) that this is questioned”

ἀγνοεῖν: inf. in ind. st., “nor was he claiming that he was unaware”

ὡς οἱ μὲν...νομίζουσιν: “that some think him Chian...” ὡς indicating an opinion attributed to someone else.

Χίον, etc.: These were some of the cities claiming to be Homer’s birthplace.

εἶναι μέντοι γε: “but that in fact”

καλεῖσθαι: pr. inf. pas. of καλέω, ind. st. after ἔλεγεν, “that he was called”

ὀμηρεύσας: ao. part. nom. s. of ὀμηρεύω, “being a hostage,” punning on the name Homer

ἀλλάξαι: ao. inf. of ἀλλάσσω after ἔλεγεν, “that he changed”

καὶ περὶ τῶν ἀθετουμένων στίχων ἐπηρώτων, εἰ ὑπ' ἐκείνου εἰσὶ γεγραμμένοι. καὶ ὃς ἔφασκε πάντας αὐτοῦ εἶναι. κατεγίνωσκον οὖν τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν Ζηνόδοτον καὶ Ἀρίσταρχον γραμματικῶν πολλὴν τὴν ψυχρολογίαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἱκανῶς ἀπεκέκριτο, πάλιν αὐτὸν ἠρώτων τί δὴ ποτε ἀπὸ τῆς μῆνιδος τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐποιήσατο· καὶ ὃς εἶπεν οὕτως ἐπελθεῖν αὐτῷ μηδὲν ἐπιτηδεύσαντι. καὶ μὴν κάκεινο ἐπεθύμουν εἰδέναι, εἰ προτέραν ἔγραψεν τὴν Ὀδύσειαν τῆς Ἰλιάδος, ὡς οἱ πολλοὶ φασιν· ὁ δὲ

ἀθετέω: to set aside, remove

ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, origin

γραμματικός, ὁ: a grammarian

ἐπέρχομαι: go or come to

ἐπερωτάω: to inquire of, question, consult

ἐπιθυμέω: to set one's heart upon

ἐπιτηδεύω: to pursue or practice

ἔρωτάω: to ask

ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: befitting, sufficing

Ἰλιάς, ἄδος, ἡ: the Iliad

καταγινώσκω: to remark, discover

μῆνις, -ιδος, ἡ: anger, wrath

Ὀδύσεια, ἡ: the Odyssey

οἶδα: to know

οὕτως: in this way

πάλιν: again

πρότερος, -α, -ον: before

στίχος, ὁ: a row or file, line of poetry

φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert

ψυχρολογία, ἡ: frigid phraseology

περὶ τῶν ἀθετουμένων στίχων: "about the spurious lines"

ἐπηρώτων: impf. of ἐπι-ἔρωτάω, "I asked"

εἰ εἰσὶ γεγραμμένοι: perf. pas. of γράφω in ind. quest., "whether they were written"

ὃς ἔφασκε: "he claimed"

αὐτοῦ (= ἐαυτοῦ): "his own"

κατεγίνωσκον: impf. 1 s. of κατα-γινώσκω, "I realized"

Ζηνόδοτον καὶ Ἀρίσταρχον: Zenodotus of Ephesus (fl. 280) and Aristarchus of Samos (310-230) were two of the most famous Alexandrian scholars under the Ptolemies. One of their tasks as head of the Library in Alexandria was to study Homer's texts. They created a system of textual marks that included one to indicate lines that should be removed (athetized) as spurious.

ἀπεκέκριτο: plupf. pas. of ἀπο-κρίνομαι, "he had answered"

τί...ἐποιήσατο: ind. quest. after ἠρώτων, "why he had made"

ὃς εἶπεν: "he said"

οὕτως ἐπελθεῖν: ao. inf. of ἐπι-ἔρχομαι after εἶπεν, "that it came to him thus"

μηδὲν ἐπιτηδεύσαντι: ao. part. dat. s., modifying αὐτῷ, "pursuing nothing"

καὶ μὴν κάκεινο (=καὶ ἐκείνο): indicating a climax, "and moreover this"

εἰ ἔγραψεν: ind. quest. after ἐπεθύμουν εἰδέναι, "whether he had written"

A True Story

ἤρνεϊτο. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ οὐδὲ τυφλὸς ἦν, ὃ καὶ αὐτὸ περὶ αὐτοῦ λέγουσιν, αὐτίκα ἠπιστάμην· ἐώρων γάρ, ὥστε οὐδὲ πυνθάνεσθαι ἐδεόμην. πολλάκις δὲ καὶ ἄλλοτε τοῦτο ἐποιοῦν, εἴ ποτε αὐτὸν σχολὴν ἄγοντα ἐώρων· προσίων γὰρ ἂν τι ἐπυνθανόμην αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὃς προθύμως πάντα ἀπεκρίνετο, καὶ μάλιστα μετὰ τὴν δίκην, ἐπειδὴ ἐκράτησεν· ἦν γάρ τις γραφὴ κατ' αὐτοῦ ἀπενηνεγμένη ὕβρεως ὑπὸ Θερσίτου ἐφ' οἷς αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ποιήσει ἔσκωψεν, καὶ ἐνίκησεν ὁ Ὅμηρος Ὀδυσσεύς συναγορεύοντος.

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
ἄλλοτε: at another time, at other times
ἀπιφέρω: to carry off or away
ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer
ἀρνέομαι: to deny, disown
γραφὴ, ἦ: charge
δέομαι: to ask
δίκη, ἦ: a case
ἐπίσταμαι: to know
Θερσίτης, ὁ: Thersites
κρατέω: to be strong, win
νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
Ὀδυσσεύς, -έως, ὁ: Odysseus

Ὅμηρος, -ου, ὁ: Homer
ὄραω: to see
ποίησις, -εως, ἦ: a making, poem
πολλάκις: many times, often
πρόθυμος, -ον: ready, willing, eager, zealous
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by hearsay or by inquiry
σκώπτω: to hoot, mock, jeer, scoff at
συναγορεύω: to join in advocating
σχολή, ἦ: spare time, leisure, rest, ease
τυφλός, -ή, -όν: blind
ὕβρις, -εως, ἦ: wantonness, insolence

ἤρνεϊτο: impf. of **ἀρνέω**, “he denied”

ὃ: rel. pron. whose antecedent is the thought of the previous clause, “which is something else they say”

ἠπιστάμην: impf. of **ἐπίσταμαι**, “I knew”

ἐώρων: impf., “for I was seeing”

ὥστε...ἐδεόμην: result clause, “so that I did not need”

καὶ ἄλλοτε: “at other times as well”

ἐποιοῦν...εἴ ἐώρων: simple condition, emphasizing customary action rather than indefinite action, “I used to do this, if I saw”

ἀπενηνεγμένη: perf. part. pas. of **ἀποφέρω**, agreeing with **γραφὴ**, “had been brought”

ἐφ' οἷς: “on the grounds that”

Θερσίτου: Thersites argues with Agamemnon and is harshly reproved in Book 2 of the *Iliad*.

ἔσκωψεν: ao. of **σκώπτω**, “he had mocked”

Ὀδυσσεύς συναγορεύοντος: gen. abs. It was Odysseus who reproved Thersites in the *Iliad*.

[21] Κατὰ δὲ τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους ἀφίκετο καὶ Πυθαγόρας ὁ Σάμιος ἐπτάκις ἀλλαγείς καὶ ἐν τοσοῦτοις ζώοις βιοτεύσας καὶ ἐκτελέσας τῆς ψυχῆς τὰς περιόδους. ἦν δὲ χρυσοῦς ὄλον τὸ δεξιὸν ἡμίτομον. καὶ ἐκρίθη μὲν συμπολιτεύσασθαι αὐτοῖς, ἐνεδοιάζετο δὲ ἔτι πότερον Πυθαγόραν ἢ Εὐφορβον χρῆ αὐτὸν ὀνομάζειν. ὁ μέντοι Ἐμπεδοκλῆς ἦλθεν μὲν καὶ αὐτός, περίεφθος καὶ τὸ σῶμα ὄλον ὠπτημένος· οὐ μὲν παρεδέχθη καίτοι πολλὰ ἱκετεύων.

ἀλλάσσω: to change, alter

βιοτεύω: to live

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right

ἐκτελέω: to bring quite to an end, to accomplish, achieve

ἐνδοιάζω: to be in doubt, be at a loss

ἐπτάκις: seven times

Εὐφορβος, ὁ: Euphorbus

ζῶον, τό: a living being, animal

ἡμίτομον, ου, τό: a half

ἱκετεύω: to approach as a suppliant

καίτοι: and indeed, and further

κρίνω: to pick out, choose, decide

ὀνομάζω: to name or speak of by name, call or address by name

ὀπτάω: to roast, broil

παραδέχομαι: to receive from

περίεφθος, -ον: thoroughly well cooked

περίοδος, ἡ: a going round, circular trip

πότερος, -α, -ον: which of two?

συμπολιτεύω: to live as fellow-citizens of one state

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body

χρόνος, ὁ: time

χρῦσεος, -η, -ον: golden, of gold

ψυχῆ, ἡ: life

Some famous men arrive on the island and athletic competitions are held.

ἀφίκετο: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “arrived”

Πυθαγόρας ὁ Σάμιος: Pythagoras of Samos (570-495) was a mathematician, philosopher and mystic. He and his followers practiced a way of life that included dietary restrictions, and he is famous for a theory of reincarnation.

ἐπτάκις: “seven times”

ἀλλαγείς: ao. part. pas. nom. s. of ἀλλάσσω, “having changed”

ἐν τοσοῦτοις ζώοις: “in so many (i.e. 7) bodies”

βιοτεύσας καὶ ἐκτελέσας: ao. part., “having lived and finished”

τῆς ψυχῆς τὰς περιόδους: “the migrations of the soul”

ἐκρίθη: ao. pas. of κρίνω, “it was decided”

συμπολιτεύσασθαι: ao. inf. after ἐκρίθη, “that he should join the community”

ἐνεδοιάζετο: impf. of ἐνδοιάζω, “it was still in doubt”

πότερον...ἢ: indirect question, “whether Protagoras or Euphorbus.” Protagoras was reputed to believe that he was a reincarnation of Euphorbus, a hero of the Trojan War.

Ἐμπεδοκλῆς: Empedocles was a fifth century Pythagorean philosopher, who was reputed to have thrown himself into the crater of Etna so that he might be believed to be a God.

περίεφθος: ao. part. περι-ἔψω, “cooked all around”

ὠπτημένος: perf. part. pas. of ὀπτω, “roasted”

παραδέχθη: ao. pas. of παρα-δέχομαι, “he was not received”

καίτοι + part.: concessive, “despite”

[22] Προϊόντος δὲ τοῦ χρόνου ἐνέστη ὁ ἀγὼν ὁ παρ' αὐτοῖς, τὰ Θανατούσια. ἡγωνοθέτει δὲ Ἀχιλλεύς τὸ πέμπτον καὶ Θησεὺς τὸ ἑβδομον. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλα μακρὸν ἂν εἴη λέγειν· τὰ δὲ κεφάλαια τῶν πραχθέντων διηγήσομαι. πάλην μὲν ἐνίκησεν Κάρανος ὁ ἀφ' Ἡρακλέους Ὀδυσσεά περι τοῦ στεφάνου καταγωνισάμενος· πυγμὴ δὲ ἴση ἐγένετο Ἀρείου τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου, ὃς ἐν Κορίνθῳ τέθαπται, καὶ Ἐπειοῦ ἀλλήλοις συνελθόντων. παγκρατίου δὲ οὐ τίθεται ἄθλα παρ' αὐτοῖς. τὸν μέντοι δρόμον

ἀγὼν, -ου, ὁ: a gathering, assembly, contest

ἡγωνοθετέω: to direct the games, exhibit them

ἄθλον, τό: the prize of contest

Ἀχιλλεύς, ὁ: Achilles

Αἰγύπτιος, -α, -ον: Egyptian

διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full

δρόμος, ὁ: a course, running, race

ἑβδομος, -η, -ον: seventh

ἐνίστημι: to put, set, place in

Ἡρακλῆς, ὁ: Heracles

θάπτω: to bury

Θησεύς, ὁ: Theseus

καταγωνίζομαι: to struggle against, prevail against, conquer

κεφάλαιος: main, most important

Κόρινθος, ὁ: Corinth

νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish

παγκράτιον, τό: a complete contest, wrestling and boxing

πάλη, ἡ: wrestling

πέμπτος, -η, -ον: fifth

πράσσω: to do

προσέρχομαι: to advance

πυγμὴ, ἡ: a fist, boxing

στέφανος, ὁ: a garland

συνέρχομαι: some together

τίθημι: to set, put, place

προϊόντος...χρόνου: gen. abs. "as time was advancing"

ἐνέστη: ao. intrans. of ἐν-ίστημι, "began"

τὰ Θανατούσια: "the Dead Games"

τὸ πέμπτον...τὸ ἑβδομον: "for the fifth time, for the seventh time"

ἡγωνοθέτει: impf. of ἡγωνοθετέω, "officiated"

ἂν εἴη λέγειν: pot. opt., "it would be long to say"

πραχθέντων: ao. part. pas. of πράσσω, "what was done"

πάλην μὲν: "in wrestling"

Κάρανος: an uncertain reading, an uncertain reference

καταγωνισάμενος: perf. part. of κατα-ἀγωνίζω, "bested"

πυγμὴ δὲ ἴση ἐγένετο: "in boxing there was a tie"

τέθαπται: perf. of θάπτω, "is buried"

Ἀρείου...καὶ Ἐπειοῦ συνελθόντων: gen. abs., "meeting each other." This Arius is unknown, but an Epeius boxed in the funeral games of the *Iliad* and the funeral games of Achilles, in the latter case fighting to a draw.

οὐ τίθεται ἄθλα: "prizes are not awarded." Note that a neuter plural subject regularly takes a singular verb.

τὸν μέντοι δρόμον: "as for the footrace"

οὐκέτι μέμνημαι ὅστις ἐνίκησεν. ποιητῶν δὲ τῇ μὲν ἀληθείᾳ παρὰ πολὺ ἐκράτει Ὅμηρος, ἐνίκησεν δὲ ὅμως Ἡσίοδος. τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦν ἅπασι στέφανος πλακεῖς ἐκ πτερῶν ταωνείων.

[23] Ἄρτι δὲ τοῦ ἀγῶνος συντετελεσμένου ἠγγέλλοντο οἱ ἐν τῷ χώρῳ τῶν ἀσεβῶν κολαζόμενοι ἀπορρήξαντες τὰ δεσμὰ καὶ τῆς φρουρᾶς ἐπικρατήσαντες ἐλαύνειν ἐπὶ τὴν νῆσον· ἠγεῖσθαι δὲ αὐτῶν Φάλαριν τε τὸν Ἀκραγαντῖνον καὶ Βούσιριν τὸν Αἰγύπτιον

ἠγγέλλω: to bear a message

ἀγών, -ου, ὁ: a contest

ἄθλον, τό: the prize of contest

Αἰγύπτιος, -α, -ον: Egyptian

ἅπας: all, the whole

ἀπορρήγνυμι: to break off, snap asunder

ἄρτι: just, exactly

ἀσεβής, -ές: godless, unholy, profane

δεσμόν, τὸ: anything for binding, fetter

ἐλαύνω: to drive, drive on, set in motion

ἐπικρατέω: to rule over

Ἡσίοδος, ὁ: Hesiod

κολάζω: to curtail, dock, prune

κρατέω: to be strong, mighty, powerful

μιμνήσκομαι: to remember

νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish

πλέκω: to plait, twine, twist, weave, braid

ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet

πτερόν, τό: feathers

στέφανος, ὁ: a garland

συντελέω: to bring to an end, complete, accomplish

ταώνειος, ον: of a peacock

φρουρά, ἡ: watch, guard

χώρος, ὁ: ground, place

μέμνημαι: perf. of μιμνήσκω, “I remember”

Ὅμηρος...Ἡσίοδος: a legendary contest between Homer and Hesiod was won by Hesiod.

πλακεῖς: ao. part. pas. nom. s. of πλέκω, “woven”

News arrives of a jailbreak from the Island of the Damned.

τοῦ ἀγῶνος συντετελεσμένου: gen. abs. perf. part. of συν-τελέω, “the games hardly finished”

οἱ...κολαζόμενοι: “those being punished”

ἀπορρήξαντες: ao. part. of ἀπορρήγνυμι, “having burst out”

ἐλαύνειν, ἠγεῖσθαι: pr. inf. in ind. st. after ἠγγέλλοντο, “they were reported to be driving,” and “that P. was leading.” Note the change in construction from nominative to accusative.

Φάλαριν τὸν Ἀκραγαντῖνον: Phalaris was tyrant of Acragas from 570-554 and was renowned for his excessive cruelty. He speaks in his own defense in two rhetorical exercises by Lucian.

Βούσιριν Αἰγύπτιον: Busiris was a legendary pharaoh of Egypt renowned for his xenophobia and cruelty. Busiris was a popular theme in Greek art and Isocrates wrote a mock encomium about him.

καὶ Διομήδη τὸν Θρᾶκα καὶ τοὺς περὶ Σκείρωνα καὶ Πιτυοκάμπτην. ὡς δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυς, ἐκτάσσει τοὺς ἥρωας ἐπὶ τῆς ἡόνος· ἠγείτο δὲ Θησεύς τε καὶ Ἀχιλλεύς καὶ Αἴας ὁ Τελαμώνιος ἤδη σωφρονῶν· καὶ συμμίζαντες ἐμάχοντο, καὶ ἐνίκησαν οἱ ἥρωες, Ἀχιλλεύς τὰ πλεῖστα κατορθώσας. ἠρίστευσε δὲ καὶ Σωκράτης ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ ταχθεῖς, πολὺ μᾶλλον ἢ ὅτε ζῶν ἐπὶ Δηλίῳ ἐμάχετο. προσιόντων γὰρ τεττάρων πολεμίων οὐκ ἔφυγε καὶ τὸ πρόσωπον ἄτρεπτος ἦν· ἐφ' οἷς καὶ ὕστερον ἐξηρέθη αὐτῷ ἀριστεῖον, καλὸς τε καὶ μέγας παράδεισος ἐν τῷ

Αἴας, -αντος, ὁ: Ajax

ἀριστεῖον: the prize of the best and bravest

ἀριστεύω: to be best or bravest

ἄτρεπτος, -ον: unmoved, immutable

Ἀχιλλεύς, ὁ: Achilles

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side

Δήλιον, τό: Delium

ἐκτάσσω: to draw out in battle-order

ἐξαιρέω: to take out, dedicate

ζάω: to live

ἡίων, -όνος, ἡ: a shore, beach

ἥρωας, ὁ: a hero, warrior

Θησεύς, ὁ: Theseus

Θρᾶξ, Θρακός, ὁ: a Thracian

καλός, -ή, -όν: beautiful, beautiful, fair

κατορθώω: to set upright, erect

μᾶλλον: more

μέγας: big, great

νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish

παράδεισος, ὁ: a garden, orchard

πλεῖστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

πρόσωπον, τό: the face, visage, countenance

συμμίγνυμι: to mix together

Σωκράτης, ὁ: Socrates

σωφρονέω: to be sound of mind

τάσσω: to arrange, put in order

τέτταροί, -αί, -α: four

ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward

Διομήδη τὸν Θρᾶκα: Diomedes of Thrace was a legendary king renowned for cruelty, especially for the man-eating horses he kept, which were stolen by Heracles.

Σκείρωνα καὶ Πιτυοκάμπτην: Sciron and Pityokamptes were infamous robbers killed by Theseus.

ἐκτάσσει: pr. of ἐκ-τάσσω, “he musters”

ἤδη σωφρονῶν: “already recovered”

Ἀχιλλεύς κατορθώσας: gen. abs., “A. having accomplished”

ταχθεῖς: ao. part. pas. of τάσσω, “having been stationed”

ζῶν ἐπὶ Δηλίῳ ἐμάχετο: Socrates was in the defeated army at Delium in 424.

προσιόντων...πολεμίων: gen abs., “four enemies attacking”

προσιόντων: pr. part. of προσ-ἔρχομαι

οὐκ ἔφυγε: ao. of φεύγω, “he didn’t flee”

ἄτρεπτος: Alcibiades recounts in the *Symposium* Socrates’ composure in battle.

ἐφ’ οἷς: “and for this reason”

ἐξηρέθη: ao. pas. of ἐξαιρέω, “was dedicated”

προαστείῳ, ἔνθα καὶ συγκαλῶν τοὺς ἐταίρους διελέγετο, Νεκρακαδημίαν τὸν τόπον προσαγορεύσας. [24] συλλαβόντες οὖν τοὺς νενικημένους καὶ δῆσαντες ἀπέπεμψαν ἔτι μᾶλλον κολασθησομένους. ἔγραψεν δὲ καὶ ταύτην τὴν μάχην Ὅμηρος καὶ ἀπιόντι μοι ἔδωκεν τὰ βιβλία κομίζειν τοῖς παρ' ἡμῶν ἀνθρώποις· ἀλλ' ὕστερον καὶ ταῦτα μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπωλέσαμεν. ἦν δὲ ἡ ἀρχὴ τοῦ ποιήματος αὕτη,

«Νῦν δέ μοι ἔννεπε, Μοῦσα, μάχην νεκύων ἡρώων.»

τότε δ' οὖν κυάμους ἐψήσαντες, ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτοῖς νόμος

ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy utterly, lose	μᾶλλον: more
ἀποπέμπω: to send off or away, to dismiss	μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, origin, first cause	Μοῦσα, -ης, ἡ: the Muse
βιβλίον, τό: a paper, scroll, letter	νέκυς, -υος, ὁ: a corpse
γράφω: to write	νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
δέω: to bind	νόμος, ὁ: custom, law, ordinance
διαλέγομαι: to discourse	ποίημα, -ατος, τό: something made, a poem
δίδωμι: to give	προάστειον, -ου, τό: a suburb
ἐνέπω: to tell, relate, describe	προσαγορεύω: to address, name
ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate	συγκαλέω: to call to council, convoke, convene
ἔψω: to boil, cook	συλλαμβάνω: to collect, gather together
ἦρωσ, ὁ: a hero, warrior	τόπος, ὁ: a place
κολάζω: to punish	ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward
κομίζω: to take care of, provide	
κύαμος, ὁ: a bean	

ἐν τῷ προαστείῳ: “outside the city”
 συγκαλῶν: pr. part. *συν-καλέω*, “calling together”
 Νεκρακαδημίαν: “Academy of the Dead”
 συλλαβόντες: ao. part. nom. pl. of *συλλαμβάνω*, “arresting”
 νενικημένους: perf. part. acc. pl. of *νικάω*, “the conquered”
 κολασθησομένους: fut. part. pas. acc. pl. of *κολάζω* showing purpose, “in order to punish”
 ἀπιόντι: pr. part. dat. s. of *ἀπο-έρχομαι*, modifying *μοι*, “as I was leaving”
 ἔδωκεν: ao. of *δίδωμι*, “he gave”
 κομίζειν: inf. of purpose “to provide”
 ἀπωλέσαμεν: ao. of *ἀπόλλυμι*, “we lost it”
 ἔννεπε: imperative, “sing” (cf. the first line of the Odyssey: *ἀνδρὰ μοι ἔννεπε, Μοῦσα*)
 ἐψήσαντες: ao. part. of *ἔψω*, “having cooked”

ἐπειδὴν πόλεμον κατορθώσωσιν, εἰσιῶντο τὰ ἐπινίκια καὶ ἑορτὴν μεγάλην ἤγον· μόνος δὲ αὐτῆς οὐ μετείχε Πυθαγόρας, ἀλλ' ἄσιτος πόρρω ἐκαθέζετο μυσσαττόμενος τὴν κυμοφαγίαν.

[25] Ἦδη δὲ μηνῶν ἕξ διεληλυθότων περὶ μεσοῦντα τὸν ἕβδομον νεώτερα συνίστατο πράγματα· Κινύρας ὁ τοῦ Σκινθάρου παῖς, μέγας ὦν καὶ καλός, ἦρα πολὺν ἤδη χρόνον τῆς Ἑλένης, καὶ αὐτὴ δὲ οὐκ ἀφανῆς ἦν ἐπιμανῶς ἀγαπῶσα τὸν νεανίσκον· πολλάκις γοῦν καὶ διένευον ἀλλήλοις ἐν τῷ συμποσίῳ καὶ

ἀγαπάω: to treat with affection, to caress, love, be fond of

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring

ἄσιτος, -ον: without food, fasting

ἀφανῆς, -ές: unseen, invisible, viewless

διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through

ἕβδομος, -η, -ον: seventh

ἑορτή, ἡ: a feast or festival, holiday

ἐπιμανῶς: madly

ἐπινίκιος, -ον: of victory, triumphal

ἐράω: to love, to be in love with

καθέζομαι: to sit down

κατορθώω: to set upright, erect

κυμοφαγία, ἡ: the eating of beans

μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month

μεσῶω: to form the middle, be in or at the middle

μετέχω: to partake of, enjoy a share of

μυσάττομαι: to feel disgust at

νεανίσκος, ὁ: a youth

νεώτερος, -α, -ον: younger

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child

πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war

πόρρω: forwards, onwards, further

πράγμα, -ατος, τό: that which has been done, a deed, act

Πυθαγόρας, ὁ: Pythagoras

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium

συνίστημι: to set together, combine, associate, unite, band together

ἐπειδὴν...κατορθώσωσιν: subj. of **κατα-ὀρθώω** general temporal clause, "whenever they win"

εἰσιῶντο: impf. of **εἰσιῶω**, "they were celebrating"

οὐ μετείχε: impf. of **μετα-ἔχω**, "would not partake in"

μυσσαττόμενος: pr. part. of **μυσάσσω**, "being disgusted"

κυμοφαγίαν: "legume-eating." Pythagoras famously refused to eat beans.

Cinyras, the son of Scintharus, elopes with Helen.

μηνῶν ἕξ διεληλυθότων: perf. part. of **δια-έρχομαι**, gen. abs. "6 months having passed"

συνίστατο: impf. of **συν-ἵστημι**, "arose"

νεώτερα...πράγματα: "revolution"

ἦρα: impf. of **ἐράω**, "was in love with"

πολὺν ἤδη χρόνον: acc. of duration of time

οὐκ ἀφανῆς: "obviously"

ἀγαπῶσα: ao. part. nom. f. of **ἀγαπάω**, "loving"

πολλάκις γοῦν καὶ: "indeed several times they even winked"

διένευον: impf. of **δια-νεύω**

Lucian

προὔπινον καὶ μόνοι ἐξανιστάμενοι ἐπλανῶντο περὶ τὴν ὕλην. καὶ δὴ ποτε ὑπ' ἔρωτος καὶ ἀμηχανίας ἐβουλευσατο ὁ Κινύρας ἀρπάσας τὴν Ἑλένην - ἐδόκει δὲ κακείνη ταῦτα - οἴχεσθαι ἀπιόντας ἔς τινα τῶν ἐπικειμένων νήσων, ἦτοι ἔς τὴν Φελλῶ ἢ ἔς τὴν Τυρόεσσαν. συνωμότας δὲ πάλαι προσειλήφεσαν τρεῖς τῶν ἐταίρων τῶν ἐμῶν τοὺς θρασυτάτους. τῷ μέντοι πατρὶ οὐκ ἐμήνυσε ταῦτα· ἠπίστατο γὰρ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ κωλυθησόμενος. ὡς δὲ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς, ἐτέλουν τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν. καὶ ἐπειδὴ νύξ ἐγένετο -

<p>ἀμηχανία, ἦ: want of means, helplessness, impotence ἀρπάζω: to snatch away, carry off βουλεύω: to take counsel, deliberate, concert measures διανεύω: to nod, beckon ἐξανίστημι: to raise up; to make one rise ἐπιβουλή, ἦ: a plan ἐπικειμαι: to be laid upon ἐπίσταμαι: to know ἔρωσ, -ωτος, ὁ: love ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate ἦτοι: now surely, truly, verily θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: bold, spirited, courageous, confident κωλύω: to let, hinder, check, prevent</p>	<p>μηνύω: to disclose what is secret, reveal, betray νήσος, -ου, ἦ: an island νύξ, νυκτός, ἦ: night οἴχομαι: to be gone, to have gone πάλαι: long ago, in olden time πατήρ, ὁ: a father πλανῶω: to make to wander, lead wandering about προπίνω: to drink before προσλαμβάνω: to take or receive besides, get over and above συνωμότης, -ου, ὁ: a fellow-conspirator, confederate τελέω: to complete, fulfill, accomplish Τυρόεσσα, ἦ: Cheese-land ὕλη, ἦ: a forest</p>
--	--

προὔπινον: impf. of **προ-πίνω**, “they toasted”
ἐξανιστάμενοι: pr. part. of **ἐξ-ἀνα-ἵστημι**, “getting up and leaving”
ἐπλανῶντο: impf. of **πλανῶω**, “they wandered”
καὶ δὴ ποτε: “moreover, once”
ἀρπάσας: ao. part. of **ἀρπάζω**, “having taken her off”
κακείνη: “also to her”
οἴχεσθαι: pr. inf. after **ἐβουλευσατο**, “plotted to go”
ἀπιόντας: pr. part. of **ἀπο-ἔρχομαι**, “departing”
ἦτοι...ἦ: “either...or”
προσειλήφεσαν: plupf. of **προσ-λαμβάνω**, “they had taken along”
τοὺς θρασυτάτους: “the most reckless ones”
τῷ μέντοι πατρὶ: “to his father, of course”
ἐμήνυσε: ao. of **μηνύω**, “he disclosed”
κωλυθησόμενος: fut. part. pas. ind. st. after **ἠπίστατο**, “that he would be prevented”

A True Story

ἐγὼ μὲν οὐ παρήμην· ἐτύγχανον γὰρ ἐν τῷ συμποσίῳ κοιμώμενος
 - οἱ δὲ λαθόντες τοὺς ἄλλους ἀναλαβόντες τὴν Ἑλένην ὑπὸ
 σπουδῆς ἀνήχθησαν. [26] περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον ἀνεγρόμενος ὁ
 Μενέλαος ἐπεὶ ἔμαθεν τὴν εὐνὴν κενὴν τῆς γυναικός, βοήν τε ἴστη
 καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν παραλαβὼν ἦλθε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τὸν
 Ῥαδάμανθυ. ἡμέρας δὲ ὑποφαινούσης ἔλεγον οἱ σκοποὶ καθορᾶν
 τὴν ναῦν πολὺ ἀπέχουσαν· οὕτω δὲ ἐμβιβάσας ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυς
 πεντήκοντα τῶν ἠρώων εἰς ναῦν μονόξυλον ἀσφοδελίνην
 παρήγγειλεν διώκειν· οἱ δὲ ὑπὸ προθυμίας ἐλαύνοντες περὶ

ἀδελφός, ὁ: a brother

ἀνάγω: to lead up

ἀναλαμβάνω: to take up, take into one's hands

ἀνεγείρω: to wake up, rouse

ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from

ἀσφοδέλιος, -η, -ον: of asphodel

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout

γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman

διώκω: to pursue

ἐλαύνω: to drive, drive on, set in motion

ἐμβιβάζω: to set in or on

εὐνή, ἡ: a bed

ἡμέρα, ἡ: day

ἦρως, ὁ: a hero, warrior

καθοράω: to look down

κενός, -ή, -όν: empty

κοιμάω: to put to sleep

λανθάνω: to escape notice, to be unknown

μανθάνω: to learn

μεσονύκτιος, -ον: of or at midnight

μονόξυλος, -ον: made from a solid trunk

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship

παραγγέλλω: to transmit as a message

παραλαμβάνω: to take along

πεντήκοντα: fifty

προθυμία, ἡ: readiness, willingness

σκοπός, ὁ: one that watches

σπουδή, ἡ: haste, speed

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium

τυγχάνω: to hit upon, happen

ὑποφαίνα: to bring to light from under

οὐ παρήμην: impf. of **παρα-εἶμι**, "I was not present"

ἐτύγχανον...κοιμώμενος: "I happened to be sleeping"

λαθόντες τοὺς ἄλλους: ao. part. of **λανθάνω**, "escaping the notice of the others"

ἀναλαβόντες: ao. part. of **ἀνα-λαμβάνω**, "having carried off"

ἀνήχθησαν: ao. pas. of **ἀνα-ἄγω**, "they put to sea"

ἀνεγρόμενος: ao. part. of **ἀνα-εγείρομαι**, "having awoken"

ἔμαθεν: ao. of **μανθάνω**, "he realized"

ἴστη: impf. of **ἴστημι**, "he raised a shout"

παραλαβὼν: ao. part. of **παρα-λαμβάνω**, "taking with him"

ἦλθε: ao. of **ἔρχομαι**

ἡμέρας ὑποφαινούσης: gen. abs., "at day break"

ἔλεγον...καθορᾶν: "they said they saw"

ἀπέχουσαν: pr. part. acc. s. of **ἀπο-ἔχω** modifying **ναῦν**, "being far away"

ἐμβιβάσας: ao. part. of **ἐμβιβάζω**, "having put on board"

παρήγγειλεν: ao. of **παρα-ἄγγέλλω**, "he ordered them"

διώκειν: inf. in ind. command after **παρήγγειλε**

Time and Aspect: Translating the Aorist Participle

The term “tense” (from the French word for “time”) is misleading when applied to participles, since time is a factor only in the future participle, which has special uses. The other forms of the participle are distinguished by aspect, indicating the character of the action, of which there are three: continuous action, completed action, and simple action:

Aspect	Form	Translation	Traditional Name
continuous action	<u>παυόμενος</u>	ceasing	present participle
simple action	<u>παυσάμενος</u>	(ceased)	aorist participle
completed action	<u>πεπαύμενος</u>	having ceased	perfect participle

The traditional names for the participles are not consistent, since “aorist” and “perfect” both refer to aspects (simple and completed), while “present” is a time, not an aspect. To add to the confusion the terms “aorist” and “perfect” are also used to define specific tenses of the indicative, which combine time and aspect. We are stuck with these terminological inconsistencies, but it is important to remember that aspect is more important than time with participles. Moreover, the morphology of the Greek verb is based on the three aspect stems, underlined for the verb παύομαι in the example above.

In English the difference between participles indicating simple and continuous action can be brought out in examples such as the following (suggested by Joel Relihan):

I heard her *sing* at the Met. (simple)

I heard her *singing* at the Met. (continuous)

But for most cases, English really only has two participles, present (singing) and perfect (having sung). It is thus difficult to translate accurately into English aorist participles without some circumlocution to give the sense of simple action. Usually we are stuck with something like “having ceased,” which sounds more like a perfect participle. The alternative is to use a noun or a subordinate clause:

γέλασας: “with a laugh”

ἀποκρινάμενος: “in answer”

παυσάμενος: “once he had ceased”

In our commentary, we have usually translated aorist participles as though they were perfect participles, but this is a case of translationese that is meant to indicate the syntactical relations, and there is often a better way to render such expressions in English.

A True Story

Aorist participles are often used to set forth a series of actions, whose equivalent in English would be multiple finite verbs. Consider the following example from *VH* 2.25-6:

οἱ δὲ λαθόντες τοὺς ἄλλους ἀναλαμβάνοντες τὴν Ἑλένην ὑπὸ σπουδῆς ἀνήχθησαν. περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον ἀνεγρόμενος ὁ Μενέλαος ἐπεὶ ἔμαθεν τὴν εὐνήν κενὴν τῆς γυναικός, βοήν τε ἴστη καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν παραλαβὼν ἦλθε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα.

Here is a translationese version of this passage:

And they, *having escaped the notice* of the others when they snatched Helen, departed with speed. In the middle of the night, Menelaus, *having awoken*, when he realized his bed was empty, started raising the alarm and, *having taken along* his brother, went to the king.

Here is a more idiomatic version using simple indicatives:

They *escaped the notice* of the others when they snatched Helen and departed hastily. In the middle of the night, Menelaus *woke up* and realized his bed was empty; he began raising the alarm, *took along* his brother and went to the king.

μεσημβρίαν καταλαμβάνουσιν αὐτοὺς ἄρτι ἐς τὸν γαλακτώδη τοῦ ὠκεανοῦ τόπον ἐμβαίνοντας πλησίον τῆς Τυροέσσης· παρὰ τοσοῦτον ἦλθον διαδρᾶναι· καὶ ἀναδησάμενοι τὴν ναῦν ἀλύσει ῥοδίνῃ κατέπλεον. ἡ μὲν οὖν Ἑλένη ἐδάκρυνεν τε καὶ ἡσχύνετο κἀνεκαλύπτετο, τοὺς δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸν Κινύραν ἀνακρίνας πρότερον ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυς, εἴ τινες καὶ ἄλλοι αὐτοῖς συνίσασιν, ὡς οὐδένα εἶπον, ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων δῆσας ἀπέπεμψεν ἐς τὸν τῶν ἀσεβῶν χῶρον μαλάχῃ πρότερον μαστιγωθέντας. [27] ἐψηφίσαντο δὲ καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐμπροθέσμως ἐκπέμπειν ἐκ τῆς νήσου, τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν μόνην ἐπιμείναντας.

αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals

αἰσχύνομαι: to be ashamed

ἄλυσις, -εως, ἡ: a chain

ἀναδέω: to bind or tie up

ἀνακρίνω: to examine closely, to question, interrogate

ἀποπέμπω: to send off or away, to dismiss

ἄρτι: just

ἀσεβής, -ές: godless, unholy, profane

δακρύω: to weep, shed tears

δέω: to bind

διαδιδράσκω: to run off, get away, escape

ἐγκαλύπτω: to veil in

ἐκπέμπω: to send out or forth from

ἐμβαίω: to step in, enter

ἐμπροθέσμως, -ον: within the stated time

ἐπιμένω: to stay on, tarry or abide still

καλύπτω: to cover, hide

καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, lay hold of

καταπλέω: to sail down, sail back

μαλάχῃ, ἡ: mallow

μαστιγώω: to whip, flog

μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship

πλήσιος, α, ον: near to, close to

ῥόδιος, -η, -ον: made of or from roses

σύνοιδα: to share in knowledge, be cognizant of

τόπος, ό: a place

χῶρος, ό: a piece of ground, place

ψηφίζω: to count, reckon, vote

ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ό: the ocean

γαλακτώδη...τόπον: "the milky place"

παρὰ τοσοῦτον ἦλθον: "they came so close"

διαδρᾶναι: ao. inf. of δια-διδράσκω, "to escaping"

ἀναδησάμενοι: ao. part. of ἀνα-δέω, "having tied"

ἀλύσει ῥοδίνῃ: dat. of means, "with a rose line"

ἡσχύνετο: impf. of αἰσχύνομαι, "she was ashamed"

κἀνεκαλύπτετο = καὶ ἐνεκαλύπτετο: impf. of ἐν-καλύπτω, "she covered"

ἀνακρίνας: ao. part. of ἀνα-κρίνω, "having asked"

εἴ...συνίσασιν: pr. of συν-οἶδα, ind. question after ἀνακρίνας, "whether others also knew"

οὐδένα εἶπον: "they said no one"

μαστιγωθέντας: ao. part. pas. of μαστιγώω, "having been scourged"

ἐψηφίσαντο: ao. of ψηφίζω, "they voted"

ἐκπέμπειν: inf. complementing ἐψηφίσαντο, "to send away"

ἐμπροθέσμως: "before the appointed time"

τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν μόνην: acc. of duration, "for only the next day"

ἐπιμείναντας: ao. part. of ἐπιμένω, "remaining"

A True Story

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐγὼ ἐποτνιώμην τε καὶ ἐδάκρουν οἷα ἔμελλον ἀγαθὰ καταλιπὼν αὐθις πλανήσεσθαι. αὐτοὶ μέντοι παρεμυθοῦντο λέγοντες οὐ πολλῶν ἐτῶν ἀφίξεσθαι πάλιν ὡς αὐτούς, καὶ μοι ἤδη εἰς τοῦπιόν θρόνον τε καὶ κλισίαν ἐπεδείκνυσαν πλησίον τῶν ἀρίστων. ἐγὼ δὲ προσελθὼν τῷ Ῥαδαμάνθῳ πολλὰ ἰκέτεον εἰπεῖν τὰ μέλλοντα καὶ ὑποδείξαί μοι τὸν πλοῦν. ὁ δὲ ἔφασκεν ἀφίξεσθαι μὲν εἰς τὴν πατρίδα πολλὰ πρότερον πλανηθέντα καὶ κινδυνεύσαντα, τὸν δὲ χρόνον οὐκέτι τῆς ἐπανόδου προσθεῖναι

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good

ἄριστος: best

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive

δακρύω: to weep, shed tears

ἐνταῦθα: here, there

ἐπάνοδος, ἡ: a return up

ἐπιδείκνυμι: to show, point out

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

θρόνος, ὁ: a seat, chair

ἰκετεύω: to approach as a suppliant

καταλείπω: leave behind

κινδυνεύω: to be daring, to make a venture

κλισία, ἡ: a place for lying down

πάλιν: back

παραμυθέομαι: to encourage or exhort

πατρίς, -ίδος: of one's fathers

πλανάω: to make to wander

πλανάω: to wander

πλήσιος, α, ον: near to, close to

πλόος, ὁ: a sailing, voyage

ποτνιάομαι: to cry or lament aloud

προσέρχομαι: to come or go to

προστίθημι: to put before

ὑποδείκνυμι: to show secretly

φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert

χρόνος, ὁ: time

They leave the Island of the Blessed, with predictions about the future from Rhadamanthus.

ἐποτνιώμην: impf. of ποτνιάομαι, "I cried"

πλανήσεσθαι: ao. mid. inf. of πλανάω with ἔμελλον, "I was about to wander"

καταλιπὼν: ao. part. of καταλείπω, "having left"

παραμυθοῦντο λέγοντες: "they comforted us by saying"

ἀφίξεσθαι: fut. inf. of ἀφικνέομαι in ind. st. after λέγοντες, "that I will return"

ὡς αὐτούς: "to them"

τοῦπιόν (= τὸ ἐπίον): from ἐπι-έρχομαι, "the coming (i.e., the future) chair"

ἐπεδείκνυσαν: impf. of ἐπι-δείκνυμι, "they showed"

προσελθὼν: ao. part. of προσ-έρχομαι

τὰ μέλλοντα: "the future"

εἰπεῖν, ὑποδείξαί: ao. infinitives after ἰκέτεον

ἀφίξεσθαι: fut. inf. of ἀφικνέομαι after ἔφασκεν, "he claimed that I would arrive"

πλανηθέντα: ao. part. pas. acc. s. of πλανάω, agreeing with the subject of

ἀφίξεσθαι (sc. με), "having wandered"

προσθεῖναι: ao. inf. act. of προσ-τίθημι, "to set before me"

ἠθέλησεν· ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ δεικνὺς τὰς πλησίον νήσους - ἐφαίνοντο δὲ πέντε τὸν ἀριθμόν, ἄλλη δὲ ἕκτη πόρρωθεν - ταύτας μὲν εἶναι ἔφασκεν τῶν ἀσεβῶν, τὰς πλησίον, «Ἄφ' ὧν,» ἔφη, «ἤδη τὸ πολὺ πῦρ ὀρᾶς καιόμενον, ἕκτη δὲ ἐκείνη τῶν ὀνείρων ἢ πόλις· μετὰ ταύτην δὲ ἢ τῆς Καλυψοῦς νήσος, ἀλλ' οὐδέπω σοι φαίνεται. ἐπειδὴν δὲ ταύτας παραπλεύσης, τότε δὴ ἀφίξῃ εἰς τὴν μεγάλην ἠπειρον τὴν ἐναντίαν τῇ ὑφ' ὑμῶν κατοικουμένη· ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὰ παθῶν καὶ ποικίλα ἔθνη διελθὼν καὶ ἀνθρώποις ἀμίκτοις ἐπιδημήσας χρόνῳ ποτὲ ἤξεις εἰς τὴν ἐτέραν ἠπειρον.»

[28] Τοσαῦτα εἶπεν, καὶ ἀνασπάσας ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς μαλάχης ρίζαν ὠρεξέν μοι, ταύτην κελεύσας ἐν τοῖς μεγίστοις κινδύνους

ἀμικτος, -ον: unmingled, that will not mingle or blend
ἀνασπάω: to pluck
ἀριθμός: number
ἀσεβής, -ές: godless, unholy, profane
δείκνυμι: to bring to light, show, exhibit
διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through
ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose
ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a company, body of men
ἕκτος, -η, -ον: sixth
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite
ἐνταῦθα: here, there
ἐπιδημέω: to be at home, live at home
ἦκω: to have come, be present, be here
ἠπειρος: terra-firma, the land
καίω: to kindle, burn
Καλυψώ, -οῦς, ἡ: Calypso

κατοικέω: to dwell in
κελεύω: to urge or drive on, urge, exhort
κίνδυνος, ό: a danger, risk, hazard, venture, enterprise
μαλάχη, ἡ: mallow
ὄνειρος, -ου, ό: a dream
ὀρέγω: to reach, stretch, stretch out
οὐδέπω: and not yet, not as yet
παραπλέω: to sail by or past
πάσχω: to receive an impression from without, to suffer
πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
πόρρωθεν: from afar
ρίζα, -ης, ἡ: a root
φάσκω: to think, declare
χρόνος, ό: time

ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ: “however”

δεικνὺς: pr. part. nom. s. of **δείκνυμι**, “showing”

ἢ τῆς Καλυψοῦς νήσος: “the island of Calypso” from Odyssey 5

ἐπειδὴν...παραπλεύσης: subj. in indefinite temporal clause, “whenever you sail past”

ἀφίξῃ: fut. 2 s. of **ἀφικνέομαι**, “you will arrive”

παθῶν: ao. part. of **πάσχω**, “having suffered”

διελθὼν: ao. part. of **δια-έρχομαι**, “having gone through”

ἐπιδημήσας: ao. part. of **ἐπιδημέω**, “having traveled”

ἤξεις: fut. of **ἦκω**, “you will come”

ἀνασπάσας: ao. part. of **ἀνασπάω**, “having plucked”

ὠρεξέν: ao. of **ὀρέγω**, “he handed it”

προσεύχεσθαι· παρήνεσε δὲ εἰ καὶ ποτε ἀφικοίμην ἐς τήνδε τὴν γῆν, μήτε πῦρ μαχαίρα σκαλεύειν μήτε θέρμους ἐσθίειν μήτε παιδι ὑπὲρ τὰ ὀκτωκαίδεκα ἔτη πλησιάζειν· τούτων γὰρ ἂν μεμνημένον ἐλπίδας ἔχειν τῆς εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἀφίξεως.

Τότε μὲν οὖν τὰ περὶ τὸν πλοῦν παρεσκευασάμην, καὶ ἐπεὶ καιρὸς ἦν, συνεισιτώμην αὐτοῖς. τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ ἐλθὼν πρὸς Ὅμηρον τὸν ποιητὴν ἐδεήθην αὐτοῦ ποιησαί μοι δίστιχον ἐπίγραμμα· καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἐποίησεν, στήλην βηρύλλου λίθου ἀναστήσας ἐπέγραψα πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. τὸ δὲ ἐπίγραμμα ἦν τοιόνδε·

ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up
 ἀφιξίς, -εως, ἡ: an arrival
 βήρυλλος, ἡ: gem of sea-green color, beryl
 δέομαι: to ask
 δίστιχος, -ον: of two verses
 ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation
 ἐπίγραμμα, -ατος, τό: an inscription
 ἐπιγράφω: to mark the surface, write on
 ἐσθίω: to eat
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
 θέρμος, ὁ: a lupine
 καιρός, ὁ: proper time
 λίθος, -ου, ὁ: a stone
 λιμὴν, -ένος, ὁ: a harbor

μάκαρ, -αρος, ὁ: blessed, happy
 μάχαιρα, -ης, ἡ: a large knife
 μμνήσκω: to remind
 ὀκτωκαίδεκα: eighteen
 παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child
 παραινέω: to exhort, recommend, advise
 πλησιάζω: to bring near, consort with
 ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet
 προσεύχομαι: to offer prayers or vows
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
 σκαλεύω: stir up, hoe
 στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone
 συνεισιτάω: to entertain in one's house
 φίλος: loved, beloved, dear

προσεύχεσθαι: pr. inf. after *κελεύσας*, "bidding me to pray"

παρήνεσε: ao. of *παρα-αἰνέω*, "he advised"

εἰ καὶ ποτε ἀφικοίμην: ao. opt. in a future less vivid condition, "if I were to arrive"

μήτε σκαλεύειν, μήτε ἐσθίειν μήτε πλησιάζειν: pr. infinitives after *παρήνεσε*, "not to stir..."

ἂν μεμνημένον ἐλπίδας ἔχειν: a future less vivid condition in implied indirect statement, with *ἂν ἔχουμι* representing the optative of the apodosis (*ἂν ἔχουμι*) and the participle *μεμνημένον* (perf. part. acc. s. modifying the subject of *ἔχειν*) with conditional force representing the optative of the protasis (*εἰ μεμνημένος εἶην*), "(saying that) if I were to remember, I would have hope"

ἀφίξεως: gen s. after *ἐλπίδας*, "hopes of return"

συνεισιτώμην: impf. of *συν-εσιτάω*, "I joined in feasting"

τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ (sc. *ἡμέρᾳ*): "on the following day"

ἐλθὼν: ao. part. of *ἔρχομαι*

ἐδεήθην: ao. pas. of *δέομαι*, "I begged"

ἀναστήσας: ao. part. trans. of *ἀνα-ἵστημι*, "setting up"

ἐπέγραψα: ao. of *ἐπι-γράφω*, "I inscribed"

«Λουκιανὸς τάδε πάντα φίλος μακάρεσσι θεοῖσιν
εἶδέ τε καὶ πάλιν ἦλθε φίλην ἐς πατρίδα γαίαν.»

[29] Μείνας δὲ κάκεινην τὴν ἡμέραν, τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἀνηγόμεν
τῶν ἡρώων παραπεμπόντων. ἔνθα μοι καὶ Ὀδυσσεὺς προσελθὼν
λάθρα τῆς Πηνελόπης δίδωσιν ἐπιστολὴν εἰς Ὀγυγίαν τὴν νῆσον
Καλυψοῖ κομίζειν. συνέπεμψε δέ μοι ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυς τὸν πορθμέα
Ναύπλιον, ἵν' ἐὰν καταχθῶμεν ἐς τὰς νήσους, μηδεὶς ἡμᾶς
συλλάβῃ ἄτε κατ' ἄλλην ἐμπορίαν καταπλέοντας.

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air

γαῖα, ἡ: a land, country

δίδωμι: to give

ἐμπορία, ἡ: commerce, trade, traffic

ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message

εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant

θεός, ὁ: a god

Καλυψώ, -οῦς, ἡ: Calypso

κατάγω: to lead down (to land)

καταπλέω: to sail down

κομίζω: to take care of, to convey

λάθρη, -α: secretly, covertly

μένω: to stay, remain

νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

πάλιν: back, backwards

παραλύω: to release

παραπέμω: to send past, convey past or
through

πατρίς, -ίδος: of one's fathers

Πηνελόπεια, ἡ: Penelope

πορθμέυς, -έως, ὁ: a ferryman

προσέρχομαι: to come or go to

συμπέμω: to send with or at the same
time

Ὀγύγιος, -α, -ον: Ogygian

Λουκιανὸς: the use of Lucian's name conflates the narrator and the author.

μακάρεσσι: epic dat. pl. "the blessed"

εἶδέ τε καὶ ἦλθε: ao. of οἶδα and ἔρχομαι, "he saw and left"

μείνας: ao. part. of μένω, having remained"

κάκεινην τὴν ἡμέραν: acc. of duration of time, "for that day"

ἀνηγόμεν: impf. of ἀνα-ἄγω, "I put to sea"

τῶν ἡρώων παραπεμπόντων: gen. abs., "the heroes escorting me"

προσελθὼν: ao. part. of προσ-ἔρχομαι, "having approached"

λάθρα τῆς Πηνελόπης: "secretly from Penelope"

εἰς Ὀγυγίαν: "to Ogygia," the island of the nymph Calypso, where Odysseus was
stranded for seven years (Odyssey 5)

Ναύπλιον: Nauplion was the legendary navigator of the Argonauts.

ἵνα μηδεὶς ἡμᾶς συλλάβῃ: subj. in neg. purpose clause, "lest someone arrest us"

ἐὰν καταχθῶμεν: ao. pas. subj. of κατα-ἄγω, more vivid or general protasis, "if
(ever) we land"

ἄτε + part.: expressing the grounds for the action, "thinking that we were putting
in"

κατ' ἄλλην ἐμπορίαν: "for some other errand"

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν εὐώδη ἀέρα προϊόντες παρεληλύθειμεν, αὐτίκα ἡμᾶς ὀσμὴ τε δεινὴ διεδέχετο οἶον ἀσφάλτου καὶ θείου καὶ πίττης ἄμα καιομένων, καὶ κνῖσα δὲ πονηρὰ καὶ ἀφόρητος ὥσπερ ἀπὸ ἀνθρώπων ὀπτωμένων, καὶ ὁ ἀήρ ζοφερός καὶ ὀμιχλώδης, καὶ κατέσταζεν ἐξ αὐτοῦ δρόσος πιττίνῃ· ἠκούομεν δὲ καὶ μαστίγων ψόφον καὶ οἰμωγὴν ἀνθρώπων πολλῶν. [30] ταῖς μὲν οὖν ἄλλαις οὐ προσέσχομεν, ἧς δὲ ἐπέβημεν, τοιάδε ἦν· κύκλω μὲν πᾶσα κρημνώδης καὶ ἀπόξυρος, πέτραις καὶ τράχωσι κατεσκληκυῖα, δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν οὐδὲ ὕδωρ ἐνῆν· ἀνερπύσαντες δὲ ὅμως κατὰ

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air

ἄμα: at once, at the same time

ἀνερπύζω: to creep up or upwards

ἀπόξυρος, -ον: cut sharp off, abrupt

ἄσφαλτος, ἡ: asphalt, bitumen

ἀφόρητος, -ον: intolerable, insufferable

δεινός, -ή, -όν: fearful, terrible, dread, dire

δένδρον, τό: a tree

διαδέχομαι: to receive one from another

δρόσος, ἡ: dew

ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon

εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling

ζοφερός, -ά, -όν: dusky, gloomy

θεῖον, τό: brimstone

καίω: to kindle, burn

κατασκέλλομαι: to wither, harden

καταστάζω: pour upon, shed over

κνῖσα, -ης, ἡ: the savor and steam of burnt sacrifice

κρημνώδης, -ες: precipitous

κύκλος, ὁ: a ring, circle, round

μάστιξ, -ιγος, ἡ: a whip, scourge

οἰμωγή, ἡ: loud wailing, lamentation

οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind

ὀμιχλώδης, -ές: misty

ὀπτάω: to roast, broil

ὀσμὴ, ἡ: a smell, scent, odor

πέτρα, ἡ: a rock

πίττα, -ης, ἡ: pitch

πίττινος: like pitch

πονηρός, -ά, -όν: toilsome, painful, grievous

προσέχω: to bring to shore

τραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: rough

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

ψόφος, ὁ: any inarticulate sound, noise

They encounter strong smells that presage the Island of the Damned.

προϊόντες: pr. part. of προ-ἔρχομαι, “going forward”

παρεληλύθειμεν: plupf. of παρα-ἔρχομαι, “we had passed”

διεδέχετο: impf. of διαδέχομαι, “was received”

ἀφόρητος: “insufferable”

κατέσταζεν: impf. of καταστάζω, “dripped”

προσέσχομεν: ao. of προσ-ἔχω, “we did not put in”

ἧς δὲ: rel. pron. gen. s. “but the island on which we landed”

ἐπέβημεν: ao. of ἐπι-βαίνω, “we landed”

κατεσκληκυῖα: perf. part. nom. f. s. of κατα-σκέλλομαι, “hardened”

ἐνῆν: impf. of ἐν-εἶμι, “there was on it”

ἀνερπύσαντες: ao. part. of ἀνερπύζω, “having crawled”

τοὺς κρημνοὺς προήμεν διὰ τινος ἀκανθώδους καὶ σκολόπων
 μεστῆς ἀτραποῦ, πολλὴν ἀμορφίαν τῆς χώρας ἐχούσης. ἐλθόντες
 δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν εἰρκτὴν καὶ τὸ κολαστήριον, πρῶτα μὲν τὴν φύσιν τοῦ
 τόπου ἐθαυμάζομεν· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔδαφος αὐτὸ μαχαίραις καὶ
 σκόλοψι πάντῃ ἐξηνθήκει, κύκλω δὲ ποταμοὶ περιέρρεον, ὁ μὲν
 βορβόρου, ὁ δὲ δεύτερος αἵματος, ὁ δὲ ἔνδον πυρός, πάνυ μέγας
 οὗτος καὶ ἀπέρατος, καὶ ἔρρει ὥσπερ ὕδωρ καὶ ἐκυματοῦτο
 ὥσπερ θάλαττα, καὶ ἰχθῦς δὲ εἶχεν πολλοὺς, τοὺς μὲν δαλοῖς
 προσεοικότας, τοὺς δὲ μικροὺς ἀνθραξι πεπυρωμένους· ἐκάλουν δὲ

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
 ἀκανθώδης, -ες: full of thorns, thorny
 ἀμορφία, ἡ: unshapeliness, unsightliness
 ἀνθραξ, -ακος, ὁ: charcoal, coal
 ἀπέρατος, -ον: not to be crossed
 ἀτραπός: a path with no turnings
 βόρβορος, ὁ: mud, mire
 δαλός, ὁ: a fire-brand, torch
 δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second
 ἔδαφος, -εος, τό: the bottom, foundation
 εἰρκτή, ἡ: an enclosure, prison
 ἔνδον: in, within
 ἐξανθέω: to put out flowers
 ἔρρω: to go slowly, wander about
 θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel
 καλέω: to call, summon
 κολαστήριον, -ον, τό: a house of
 correction, place of punishment

κρημνός, -οῦ, ὁ: an overhanging bank
 κύκλος, ὁ: a ring, circle, round
 κυματώω: to cover with waves
 μάχαιρα, -ης, ἡ: a large knife
 μεστός, -ή, -όν: filled, full of + gen.
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small
 περιέρρω: to flow round
 ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
 προσεοίκα: to be like, resemble
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
 πυρόω: to burn with fire, burn up
 σκόλοψ, -οπος, ὁ: something pointed, a
 caltrop
 τόπος, ὁ: a place
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
 φύσις, ἡ: the nature, natural qualities
 χώρα, ἡ: a space, land

προήειμεν: impf. of προ-ἔρχομαι, “we approached”
 τῆς χώρας ἐχούσης: gen. abs., “the land having”
 κολαστήριον: “the place of punishment”
 ἐξηνθήκει: plupf. of ἐξ-ἀνθέω, “had bloomed with” + dative
 περιέρρεον: impf. of περι-ρέω, “was flowing around”
 ἔρρει: impf. of ῥέω, “was flowing”
 ἐκυματοῦτο: impf. of κυματέω, “undulated”
 εἶχεν: impf. of ἔχω, “it had”
 δαλοῖς: “torches”
 προσεοικότας: perf. part., “very like” + dat.
 ἀνθραξι: dat. pl., “coals”
 πεπυρωμένους: perf. part. dat. pl. of πυράω, “burning”

A True Story

αὐτοὺς λυχνίσκους. [31] εἴσοδος δὲ μία στενή διὰ πάντων ἦν, καὶ πυλωρὸς ἐφειστήκει Τίμων ὁ Ἀθηναῖος. παρελθόντες δὲ ὅμως τοῦ Ναυπλίου καθηγουμένου ἑωρῶμεν κολαζομένους πολλοὺς μὲν βασιλέας, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ἰδιώτας, ὧν ἐνίους καὶ ἐγνωρίζομεν· εἶδομεν δὲ καὶ τὸν Κινύραν καπνῶ ὑποτυφόμενον ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων ἀπηρητημένον. προσετίθεσαν δὲ οἱ περιηγηταὶ καὶ τοὺς ἐκάστων βίους καὶ τὰς ἀμαρτίας ἐφ' αἷς κολάζονται· καὶ μεγίστας ἀπασῶν τιμωρίας ὑπέμενον οἱ ψευδάμενοί τι παρὰ τὸν βίον καὶ οἱ μὴ

Ἀθηναῖος: Athenian

αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals

ἀμαρτία, ἡ: a failure, fault, sin

ἀπαρτάω: to hang up from

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

βίος, ὁ: life

γνωρίζω: to make known

εἴσοδος, ἡ: a way in, entrance

ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some

ἰδιώτης, -ου, ὁ: a private person, an individual

καθηγέομαι: act as guide, lead the way

καπνός, ὁ: smoke

κολάζω: to punish

λυχνίσκος, ὁ: a kind of fish

οἶδα: to know

ὄραω: to see

παρέρχομαι: to go by, beside or past, to pass by, pass

περιηγητής, -οῦ, ὁ: one who guides strangers and explains

προστίθηναι: to put to

πυλωρός, ὁ: a gate-keeper, warder, porter

στενός, -ή, -όν: narrow, strait

τιμωρία, ἡ: punishment

ὑπομένω: to stay behind, submit to

ὑποτύφομαι: to burn with a smoldering fire

ψεύδω: to cheat by lies, beguile

λυχνίσκος: “candlefish”

ἐφειστήκει: plupf. of ἐφίστημι, “had been stationed there”

Τίμων ὁ Ἀθηναῖος: Timon of Athens, a famous misanthrope

παραελθόντες: ao. part. of παρα-έρχομαι, “having passed by”

τοῦ Ναυπλίου καθηγουμένου: pr. part. of κατα-ηγέομαι, gen. abs., “with N. conducting”

ἑωρῶμεν: impf. of ὄραω, “we saw”

ὧν ἐνίους: “of whom some we recognized”

ὑποτυφόμενον: pr. part., “burning”

ἀπηρητημένον: perf. part. of ἀπαρτάω, “hung up”

προσετίθεσαν: impf. of προσ-τίθηναι, “gave further information about”

ἐφ' αἷς κολάζονται: “for which they are being punished”

ὑπέμενον: impf. of ὑπο-μένω, “submitted to”

οἱ ψευδάμενοί: ao. part. of ψεύδω, “those who told lies”

τὰ ἀληθῆ συγγεγραφότες, ἐν οἷς καὶ Κτησίας ὁ Κνίδιος ἦν καὶ Ἡρόδοτος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοί. τούτους οὖν ὁρῶν ἐγὼ χρηστὰς εἶχον εἰς τοῦπιόν τὰς ἐλπίδας· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐμαυτῷ ψεῦδος εἰπόντι συνηπιστάμην. [32] ταχέως οὖν ἀναστρέψας ἐπὶ τὴν ναῦν - οὐ γὰρ ἐδυνάμην φέρειν τὴν ὄψιν - ἀσπασάμενος τὸν Ναύπλιον ἀπέπλευσα.

ἀληθής, -ές: true

ἀναστρέφω: to turn upside down, upset

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid
farewell

δύναμαι: to be able, capable, strong
enough

ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation

Κνίδιος, -α, -ον: Cnidian, from Cnidos

ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: look, appearance, aspect

συγγράφω: to write or note down

συνεπίσταμαι: to be privy to

ταχέως: quickly

χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good

ψεῦδος, -εος, τό: a falsehood, untruth, lie

οἱ...συγγεγραφότες: perf. part. of **συγ-γράφω**, “those who have written”

ἐν οἷς: “among whom”

Κτησίας...Ἡρόδοτος: Ctesias and Herodotus, 5th century historians.

εἶχον: impf. of **ἔχω**, “I had”

εἰς τοῦπιόν (=τὸ ἐπιόν): “for the future”

εἰπόντι: ao. part. dat. s. of **λέγω** modifying **ἐμαυτῷ**, “me having told”

συνηπιστάμην: impf. of **συν-ἐπίσταμαι**, “I was not conscious” + dat.

ἀσπασάμενος: ao. part. of **ἀσπάζω**, “bidding farewell”

ἀπέπλευσα: ao. 1 s., “I sailed away”

A True Story

Καὶ μετ' ὀλίγον ἐφαίνετο πλησίον ἢ τῶν ὀνείρων νῆσος, ἀμυδρὰ καὶ ἀσαφῆς ἰδεῖν· εἶχε δὲ καὶ αὐτὴ τι τοῖς ὀνείροις παραπλήσιον· ὑπεχώρει γὰρ προσιόντων ἡμῶν καὶ ὑπέφευγε καὶ πορρωτέρω ὑπέβαινε. καταλαβόντες δὲ ποτε αὐτὴν καὶ εἰσπλεύσαντες εἰς τὸν Ὑπνον λιμένα προσαγορευόμενον πλησίον τῶν πυλῶν τῶν ἐλεφαντίνων, ἧ τὸ τοῦ Ἀλεκτρυόνοσ ἱερόν ἐστιν, περὶ δαίλην ὀψίαν ἀπεβαίνομεν· παρελθόντες δὲ εἰς τὴν πόλιν πολλοὺς ὀνείρους καὶ ποικίλους ἑωρῶμεν. πρῶτον δὲ βούλομαι περὶ τῆς πόλεως εἰπεῖν, ἐπεὶ μηδὲ ἄλλω τινὶ γέγραπται περὶ

ἀμυδρός, -ά, -όν: indistinct, dim, obscure
ἀποβαίνω: to step off, disembark
ἀσαφής, -ές: indistinct
βούλομαι: to will, wish
γράφω: to write
δαίλη, ἧ: afternoon
εἰσπλέω: to sail into, enter
ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory
καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, lay hold of
λιμὴν, -ένος, ὄ: a harbor, haven, creek
ὄνειρος, -ου, ὄ: a dream
ὄράω: to see
ὄψιμος, -α, -ον: late

παραπλήσιος, -α, -ον: nearly resembling, such-like
παρέρχομαι: to go by, to pass by
πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near, close to
ποικίλος, -η, -ον: many-colored, spotted
πόλις, -εως, ἧ: a city
πορρωτέρω: further
προσαγορεύω: to address, call by name
πύλη, ἧ: a gate
Ὑπνος, ὄ: Hypnos, "Sleep"
ὑποβαίνω: to go or stand under
ὑποφεύγω: to flee from under, shun
ὑποχωρέω: to go back, retire, recoil
φαίνομαι: to seem, appear

They make their way to the Island of Dreams.

ἀμυδρὰ καὶ ἀσαφῆς ἰδεῖν: expegetic inf., "faint and unclear to see"

ὑπεχώρει: impf. of ὑπο-χωρέω, "kept receding"

προσιόντων ἡμῶν: pr. part. of προσ-έρχομαι, gen. abs., "as we approached"

καταλαβόντες: ao. part. of καταλαμβάνω, "having overtaken"

πυλῶν τῶν ἐλεφαντίνων: There are gates of ivory in the underworld of Homer.

ἧ: rel. pron. dat. s. f., "where"

Ἀλεκτρυόνοσ ἱερόν ἐστιν: "the sanctuary of the rooster," perhaps referring to the practice of divination using a rooster.

περὶ δαίλην ὀψίαν: "around late afternoon"

παρελθόντες: ao. part. of παρα-έρχομαι, "upon arriving"

ἑωρῶμεν: impf. of ὄράω, "we saw"

ἄλλω τινι: dat. of agent, "by anyone else"

γέγραπται: perf. pas. of γράφω, "(nothing) has been written"

ὅσ δὲ καὶ μόνος: "and even he who alone," i.e., Homer.

Lucian

αὐτῆς, ὅς δὲ καὶ μόνος ἐπεμνήσθη Ὅμηρος, οὐ πάνυ ἀκριβῶς συνέγραψεν. [33] κύκλω μὲν περὶ πᾶσαν αὐτὴν ὕλη ἀνέστηκεν, τὰ δένδρα δὲ ἔστι μήκωνες ὑψηλαὶ καὶ μανδραγόραι καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῶν πολὺ τι πλῆθος νυκτερίδων· τοῦτο γὰρ μόνον ἐν τῇ νήσῳ γίνεται ὄρνεον. ποταμὸς δὲ παραρρέει πλησίον ὁ ὑπ' αὐτῶν καλούμενος Νυκτιπόρος, καὶ πηγαὶ δύο παρὰ τὰς πύλας· ὀνόματα καὶ ταύταις, τῇ μὲν Νήγρετος, τῇ δὲ Παννυχία. ὁ περίβολος δὲ τῆς πόλεως ὑψηλὸς τε καὶ ποικίλος, ἴριδι τὴν χροάν ὁμοίωτος· πύλαι μέντοι ἔπεισιν οὐ δύο, καθάπερ Ὅμηρος εἴρηκεν, ἀλλὰ τέσσαρες, δύο μὲν πρὸς τὸ τῆς Βλακείας πεδίων ἀποβλέπουσαι,

ἀκριβῶς: exactly
 ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up
 ἀποβλέπω: to look away from
 βλακεία, ἡ: laziness, stupidity
 ἔπειμι: to be upon, be set on
 ἐπιμνήσκομαι: to bethink oneself of, to remember, think of
 ἴρις, -ιδος, ἡ: rainbow
 καλέω: to call, summon
 κύκλος, ὁ: a ring, circle, round
 μανδραγόρας, -ου, -α, ὁ: mandrake
 μήκων, -ωνος, ὁ: the poppy
 Νήγρετος, -ον: "Unwaking"
 νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
 νυκτερίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a bat
 ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, resembling
 ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name
 ὄρνεον, τό: a bird

Παννύχιος, -ον: "All-night"
 παραρρέω: to flow beside or past
 πεδίων, τό: a plain, flat
 περίβολος, -ον: going round, compassing, encircling
 πηγῆ, ἡ: running waters, streams
 πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number, a throng, crowd, multitude
 πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near, close to
 πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
 ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
 πύλη, ἡ: a gate
 συγγράφω: to write or note down
 τέσσαρες: four
 ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
 ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised
 χροιά, ἡ: skin, color

ἐπεμνήσθη: ao. of ἐπι-μνήσκομαι, "made mention"
 συνέγραψεν: ao. of συν-γράφω, "he described"
 ἀνέστηκεν: ao. intrans. of ἀνα-ίστημι, "stood"
 μήκωνες καὶ μανδραγόραι: "poppies and mandragoras," both narcotic plants
 νυκτερίδων: gen. pl., "of bats," lit. "night-sighters"
 καλούμενος Νυκτιπόρος: "called Sleepwalker"
 ἴριδι τὴν χροάν: acc. of resp., "like a rainbow in color"
 εἴρηκεν: perf. of λέγω, "as Homer has said"
 τῆς Βλακείας πεδίων: "the plain of Laziness"

A True Story

ἡ μὲν σιδηρᾶ, ἡ δὲ ἐκ κεράμου πεποιημένη, καθ' ὧς ἐλέγοντο ἀποδημεῖν αὐτῶν οἷ τε φοβεροὶ καὶ φονικοὶ καὶ ἀπηνεῖς, δύο δὲ πρὸς τὸν λιμένα καὶ τὴν θάλατταν, ἡ μὲν κερατίνη, ἡ δὲ καθ' ἣν ἡμεῖς παρήλθομεν ἐλεφαντίνη. εἰσιόντι δὲ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐν δεξιᾷ μὲν ἐστὶ τὸ Νυκτῶον - σέβουσι γὰρ θεῶν ταύτην μάλιστα καὶ τὸν Ἄλεκτρύονα· ἐκείνῳ δὲ πλησίον τοῦ λιμένος τὸ ἱερόν πεποιήται - ἐν ἀριστερᾷ δὲ τὰ τοῦ Ὑπνου βασιλεία. οὗτος γὰρ δὴ ἄρχει παρ' αὐτοῖς σατράπας δύο καὶ ὑπάρχους πεποιημένους, Ταραξιώνά τε τὸν Ματαιογένους καὶ Πλουτοκλέα τὸν Φαντασίωνος. ἐν μέσῃ δὲ τῇ ἀγορᾷ πηγὴ τίς ἐστίν, ἣν καλοῦσι Καρεῶτιν· καὶ πλησίον ναοὶ

ἀγορά, -ᾶς, ἡ: an assembly of the people
ἄλεκτρύων, ὄ: rooster
ἀπηνής, -ές: ungentle, harsh, rough, hard
ἀποδημέω: to be away from home
ἀριστερός: left, on the left
ἄρχω: to begin, be first
βασιλείον, τό: a royal dwelling, palace
δεξιᾷ, ἡ: the right hand
ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory
θεός, ὄ: a god
ἱερόν, τό: a sanctuary
καλέω: to call, summon
κέραμος, ὄ: clay
κεράτινος, -η, -ον: of horn
λιμὴν, -ένος, ὄ: a harbor, haven

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
ναός, -ῶ, ὄ: the dwelling of a god, a temple
παρέρχομαι: to go by, beside or past, to pass by, pass
πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams
πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near, close to
σατράπης, -ου, ὄ: a satrap, viceroy
σέβω: to worship, honor
σιδήρεος, -α, -ον: made of iron or steel
ὑπαρχος, ὄ: a commander
Ὑπνος, ὄ: Hypnos, "Sleep"
φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful
φονικός, -ή, -όν: inclined to slay, murderous

πεποιημένη: perf. part., "made of iron, made of clay"
καθ' ὧς ἐλέγοντο ἀποδημεῖν: "through which are said to travel"
καθ' ἣν ἡμεῖς παρήλθομεν: "through which we came"
εἰσιόντι: pr. part. of εἰσ-έρχομαι, "to one entering"
Νυκτῶον: "the sanctuary of Night"
ταύτην μάλιστα: "this one (Night) especially"
ἐκείνῳ δὲ πεποιήται: perf. pas., "but for that one (the rooster) was built"
οὗτος γὰρ δὴ: "for indeed this one"
σατράπας δύο καὶ ὑπάρχους: "to be satraps (a Persian term) and lieutenants"
πεποιημένους: perf. mid., "having appointed"
Ταραξιώνά τὸν Ματαιογένους: "Nightmare, son of Born-in-vain"
Πλουτοκλέα τὸν Φαντασίωνος: "Glory-of-Wealth, son of Fancy"
Καρεῶτιν: from κάρος, "deep sleep"

δύο, Ἀπάτης καὶ Ἀληθείας· ἔνθα καὶ τὸ ἄδυτόν ἐστιν αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ μαντεῖον, οὗ προειστήκει προφητεύων Ἀντιφῶν ὁ τῶν ὀνειρῶν ὑποκριτής, ταύτης παρὰ τοῦ Ὑπνου λαχὼν τῆς τιμῆς. [34] αὐτῶν μέντοι τῶν ὀνειρῶν οὔτε φύσις οὔτε ἰδέα ἢ αὐτή, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν μακροὶ ἦσαν καὶ καλοὶ καὶ εὐειδεῖς, οἱ δὲ μικροὶ καὶ ἄμορφοι, καὶ οἱ μὲν χρύσειοι, ὡς ἐδόκουν, οἱ δὲ ταπεινοὶ τε καὶ εὐτελεῖς. ἦσαν δ' ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ πτερωτοὶ τινες καὶ τερατώδεις, καὶ ἄλλοι καθάπερ ἐς πομπὴν διεσκευασμένοι, οἱ μὲν ἐς βασιλέας, οἱ δὲ ἐς θεούς, οἱ δὲ εἰς ἄλλα τοιαῦτα κεκοσμημένοι. πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἐγνωρίσαμεν, πάλαι παρ' ἡμῖν ἑωρακότες, οἱ δὲ καὶ

ἄδυτον: the innermost sanctuary
 ἄμορφος, -ον: misshapen, unsightly
 βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
 γνωρίζω: to make known, point out, explain
 διασκευάζω: to get ready, equip
 εὐειδής, -ές: well-shaped, beautiful
 εὐτελής, -ές: cheap
 θεός, ὁ: a god
 ἰδέα, ἡ: form
 κοσμέω: to order, arrange
 λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot or fate
 μαντεῖον, τό: an oracle
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small

ὄνειρος, -ου, ὁ: a dream
 ὀράω: to see
 πάλαι: long ago
 πομπή, ἡ: conduct, escort, guidance
 προϊστημι: to set before or in front
 προφητεύω: to be an interpreter
 πτερωτός, -ή, -όν: feathered
 ταπεινός, -ή, -όν: low
 τερατώδης, -ες: portentous
 τιμή, ἡ: honor
 ὑποκριτής, -οῦ, ὁ: an interpreter or expounder
 φύσις, ἡ: nature, condition
 χρύσεος, -η, -ον: golden, of gold

Ἀπάτης καὶ Ἀληθείας: "Deceit and Truth"

οὗ προεστήκει: plupf. of προ-ἵστημι, "over which Antiphon presided"

Ἀντιφῶν: perhaps referring to the contemporary of Socrates who wrote a treatise on the interpretation of dreams.

ὑποκριτής: "interpreter"

λαχῶν: ao. part. of λαγχάνω, "having obtained" + gen.

τῆς τιμῆς: gen. after λαχῶν, "having obtained this office"

ἢ αὐτή: "the same"

οἱ μὲν χρύσειοι...οἱ δὲ ταπεινοί: "some rich, some poor"

ὡς ἐδόκουν: "so they seemed to me"

τερατώδεις: "portentous and serious"

ἐς πομπήν: "for a parade"

διεσκευασμένοι: perf. part. of δια-σκευάζω, "equipped"

κεκοσμημένοι: perf. part. of κοσμέω, "having been adorned as kings, gods, etc."

ἐγνωρίσαμεν: ao. of γνωρίζω, "we recognized"

ἑωρακότες: perf. part. of ὀράω, "having seen"

οἱ δὲ: "these very ones (whom we recognized)"

A True Story

προσῆσαν καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ὡς ἂν καὶ συνήθεις ὑπάρχοντες, καὶ παραλαβόντες ἡμᾶς καὶ κατακοιμίσαντες πάνυ λαμπρῶς καὶ δεξιῶς ἐξένιζον, τὴν τε ἄλλην ὑποδοχὴν μεγαλοπρεπῆ παρασκευάσαντες καὶ ὑπισχνούμενοι βασιλέας τε ποιήσειν καὶ σατράπας. ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ ἀπήγον ἡμᾶς εἰς τὰς πατρίδας καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπεδείκνουν καὶ αὐθήμερον ἐπανήγον. [35] ἡμέρας μὲν οὖν τριάκοντα καὶ ἴσας νύκτας παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐμείναμεν καθεύδοντες εὐωχούμενοι. ἔπειτα δὲ ἄφνω βροντῆς μεγάλης καταρραγείσης ἀνεγρόμενοι καὶ ἀναθορόντες ἀνήχθημεν ἐπισιτισάμενοι.

ἀνάγω: to lead up

ἀναθρώσκω: to spring forward

ἀνεγείρω: to wake up, rouse

ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off

ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid
farewell

αὐθήμερος, -ον: made or done on the very
day

ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

βροντή, ἡ: thunder

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right side, kind

ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some

ἐπανάγω: to bring up or back

ἐπιδείκνυμι: to exhibit as a specimen

ἐπισιτίζομαι: to furnish oneself, supply

εὐωχέω: to feed well, feast

ἡμέρα, ἡ: a day

ἴσος, -η, -ον: the same

καθεύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep

κατακοιμίζω: lull to sleep

καταρρήγνυμι: to break down

λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, brilliant, radiant

μεγαλοπρεπής, -ές: befitting a great man,
magnificent

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: night

ξενίζω: to receive or entertain guests

οἰκείος, -α, -ον: in or of the house,
domestic

παραλαμβάνω: to take aside

παρασκευάζω: to get ready, prepare

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: the fatherland

σατράπης, -ου, ὁ: a satrap, viceroy

συνήθης, -ες: dwelling or living together

τριάκοντα: thirty

ὑπάρχω: to begin, make a beginning

ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise

ὑποδοχή, ἡ: a reception, entertainment

προσῆσαν: impf. of **προσ-ἔρχομαι**, “they approached”

ὡς ἂν καὶ συνήθεις ὑπάρχοντες: “as though being acquaintances”

παραλαβόντες: ao. part. of **παραλαμβάνω**, “having taken us aside”

κατακοιμίσαντες: ao. part. of **κατα-κοιμίζω**, “having lulled us to sleep”

ἐξένιζον: impf. of **ξενίζω**, “they entertained us”

τὴν τε ἄλλην ὑποδοχὴν: “every sort of entertainment”

ποιήσειν: fut. inf. with **ὑπισχνούμενοι**, “promising to make”

ἀπήγον, ἐπεδείκνουν: impf., “they took and showed us”

ἐπανήγον: impf. of **ἐπι-ανα-ἄγω**, “they brought us back”

ἐμείναμεν: ao. of **μένω**, “we stayed”

εὐωχούμενοι: pr. part. pas. of **εὐωχέω**, “being feasted”

βροντῆς καταρραγείσης: ao. part. gen. s. f. of **κατα-ρήγνυμι**, gen. abs., “thunder cracking”

ἀνήχθημεν: ao. pas. of **ἀνα-ἄγω**, “we put to sea”

ἐπισιτισάμενοι: ao. part. of **ἐπι-σιτίζω**, “having (first) laid in supplies”

Τριταῖοι δ' ἐκεῖθεν τῇ Ὠγυγίᾳ νήσω προσσχόντες ἀπεβαίνομεν. πρότερον δ' ἐγὼ λύσας τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνεγίνωσκον τὰ γεγραμμένα. ἦν δὲ τοιάδε·

«Ὀδυσσεὺς Καλυψοῖ χαίρειν.

Ἴσθι με, ὡς τὰ πρῶτα ἐξέπλευσα παρὰ σοῦ τὴν σχεδίαν κατασκευασάμενος, ναυαγία χρησάμενον μόλις ὑπὸ Λευκοθέας διασωθῆναι εἰς τὴν τῶν Φαιάκων χώραν, ὑφ' ὧν ἐς τὴν οἰκίαν ἀποπεμφθεὶς κατέλαβον πολλοὺς τῆς γυναικὸς μνηστήρας ἐν τοῖς ἡμετέροις τρυφῶντας·

ἀναγινώσκω: to know well, read

ἀποβαίνω: to go away, step off

ἀποπέμπω: to send off or away, to dismiss

γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman, wife

ἐκεῖθεν: from that place, thence

ἐκπλέω: to sail out, sail away, weigh anchor

ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message, letter

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

Καλυψώ, -οῦς, ἡ: Calypso

καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, lay hold of

κατασκευάζω: to equip or furnish fully

Λευκοθέα, ἡ: "the White Goddess"

λύω: to loose

μνηστήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ: a wooer, suitor

μόλις: scarcely

ναυαγία, ἡ: shipwreck

νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

οἰκίος, -α, -ον: in or of the house, domestic

προσέχω: to hold to

σχεδία, ἡ: a raft, float

τριταῖος, -α, -ον: on the third day

τρυφάω: to live luxuriously

Φαίαξ, -ακος, ὁ: Phaeacian

χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, be delighted

χράομαι: to use

χώρα, ἡ: a space, land

Ὠγύγιος, -α, -ον: Ogygian

They arrive in Ogygia, the island of Calypso (cf. Odyssey 5), where Odysseus' letter is delivered.

τριταῖοι: used with verbs so as to agree with the subject, "on the third day"

προσσχόντες: ao. part. of προσ-έχω, "having touched land"

τὰ γεγραμμένα: perf. part. of γράφω, "what was written"

ἴσθι: imperative of οἶδα

ὡς τὰ πρῶτα: "as soon as I sailed away"

κατασκευασάμενος: perf. part. of κατα-σκευάζω, "having equipped"

ναυαγία χρησάμενον: "having suffered a shipwreck"

ὑπὸ Λευκοθέας: "by Leukothea," who saves Odysseus to shore in the Odyssey.

με...διασωθῆναι: ao. inf. of δια-σῶζω, in ind. st. after ἴσθι: "Know that I was saved..."

ὑφ' ὧν: gen. of agent, "by whom," i.e. the Phaeacians

ἀποπεμφθεὶς: ao. part. pas. of ἀπο-πέμπω, "having been sent home"

κατέλαβον: ao. of καταλαμβάνω, "I came upon"

τρυφῶντας: pr. part. of τρυφάω, "living luxuriously"

A True Story

ἀποκτείνας δὲ ἅπαντας ὑπὸ Τηλεγόνου ὕστερον τοῦ ἐκ Κίρκης μοι γενομένου ἀνηρέθην, καὶ νῦν εἰμι ἐν τῇ Μακάρων νήσῳ πάνυ μετανοῶν ἐπὶ τῷ καταλιπεῖν τὴν παρὰ σοὶ δίαιταν καὶ τὴν ὑπὸ σοῦ προτεινομένην ἀθανασίαν. ἦν οὖν καιροῦ λάβωμαι, ἀποδρὰς ἀφίξομαι πρὸς σέ.»

ταῦτα μὲν ἐδήλου ἡ ἐπιστολή, καὶ περὶ ἡμῶν, ὅπως ξενισθῶμεν. [36] ἐγὼ δὲ προελθὼν ὀλίγον ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης

ἀθανασία, ἡ: immortality
ἀναιρέω: to take up, slay
ἅπας: all, the whole
ἀποδιδράσκω: to run away or off, escape
ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay
δηλόω: to make visible or manifest, to show, exhibit
δίαιτα, ἡ: a way of living, mode of life
ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message
καιρός, ὁ: proper time
καταλείπω: to leave behind

Κίρκη, ἡ: Circe
μακάρος, -α, -ον: blessed
μετανοέω: to change one's mind or purpose
νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
ξενίζω: to receive or entertain strangers, to receive as a guest
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little
προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance
προτείνω: to stretch out before, hold before

ἀποκτείνας: ao. part. of ἀπο-κτείνω, "having killed"

ὑπὸ Τηλεγόνου: gen. of agent, "at the hands of Telegonus"

τοῦ (sc. υἱοῦ) ἐκ Κίρκης: T. was Odysseus' son by Circe, with whom Odysseus dallied for a year

ἀνηρέθην: ao. pas. of ἀνα-αίρέω, "I was killed"

μετανοῶν: pr. part. of μετα-νοέω, "regretting"

ἐπὶ τῷ καταλιπεῖν: articular inf., "about leaving"

ὑπὸ σοῦ: "by you"

προτεινομένην: pr. part. of προτείνω, "being offered," Calypso had promised Odysseus immortality if he stayed with her.

ἦν (= ἐὰν) λάβωμαι: ao. subj. of λαμβάνω in fut. more vivid cond., "if I get an opportunity"

ἀποδρὰς: ao. part. of ἀπο-διδράσκω, "escaping"

ἀφίξομαι: fut. of ἀφικνέομαι, "I will arrive"

ἐδήλου: impf. 3 s. of δηλόω, "the letter made clear"

ὅπως ξενισθῶμεν: ao. pas. subj. of ξενίζω in a purpose clause after ἐδήλου, where we would expect the optative, "that we be entertained"

προελθὼν: ao. part. of προ-έρχομαι, "having proceeded"

εὔρον τὸ σπήλαιον τοιοῦτον οἶον Ὅμηρος εἶπεν, καὶ αὐτὴν
 ταλασιουργοῦσαν. ὡς δὲ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔλαβεν καὶ ἐπελέξατο,
 πρῶτα μὲν ἐπὶ πολὺ ἐδάκρυνεν, ἔπειτα δὲ παρεκάλει ἡμᾶς ἐπὶ
 ξένια καὶ εἰστία λαμπρῶς καὶ περὶ τοῦ Ὀδυσσεύως ἐπυνθάνετο καὶ
 περὶ τῆς Πηνελόπεια, ὅποια τε εἶη τὴν ὄψιν καὶ εἰ σωφρονοίη,
 καθάπερ Ὀδυσσεὺς πάλαι περὶ αὐτῆς ἐκόμπαζεν· καὶ ἡμεῖς
 τοιαῦτα ἀπεκρινάμεθα, ἐξ ὧν εἰκάζομεν εὐφρανεῖσθαι αὐτὴν.

ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer
δακρύω: to weep, shed tears
εἰστία, ἦ: hearth, home
ἐπιλέγω: to choose, read
ἐπιστολή, ἦ: a message
εὐφραίνω: to cheer, delight, gladden
καθάπερ: just as
κομπάζω: to boast
λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, brilliant
ξένια, ἦ: hospitality
οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind
ὁποῖος: of what sort or quality

ὄψις, -εως, ἦ: look, appearance, aspect
πάλαι: long ago, in olden time
παρακαλέω: to call to
Πηνελόπεια, ἦ: Penelope
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by hearsay or by
 inquiry
σπήλαιον, τό: a grotto, cave, cavern
σωφρονέω: to be sound of mind, be pru-
 dent
ταλασιουργέω: to spin wool

εὔρον (= ἡδρον): ao. of **εὐρίσκω**, “I found”
τοιοῦτον οἶον Ὅμηρος εἶπεν: “just as Homer said”
ταλασιουργοῦσαν: pr. part. acc. s. f. of **ταλασιουργέω**, “working wool”
ὡς ἔλαβεν: ao. of **λαμβάνω**, “when she took and read...”
ἐπελέξατο: ao. of **ἐπιλέγω**
παρακάλει: impf. of **παρα-καλέω**, “she summoned”
ὅποια τε εἶη καὶ εἰ σωφρονοίη: pr. optatives, ind. quest. after **ἐπυνθάνετο**, “what
 she was like and whether she was prudent”
εὐφρανεῖσθαι: pr. inf. after **εἰκάζομεν**, “we supposed would please her”

A True Story

Τότε μὲν οὖν ἀπελθόντες ἐπὶ ναῦν πλησίον ἐπὶ τῆς ἧόνος ἐκοιμήθημεν. [37] ἔωθεν δὲ ἀνηγόμεθα σφοδρότερον κατιόντος τοῦ πνεύματος· καὶ δὴ χειμασθέντες ἡμέρας δύο τῇ τρίτῃ περιπίπτομεν τοῖς Κολοκυνθοπειραταῖς. ἄνθρωποι δὲ εἰσιν οὗτοι ἄγριοι ἐκ τῶν πλησίον νήσων ληστεύοντες τοὺς παραπλέοντας. τὰ πλοῖα δὲ ἔχουσι μεγάλα κολοκύνθινα τὸ μῆκος πήχεων ἐξήκοντα· ἐπειδὴν γὰρ ξηράνωσι τὴν κολόκυνθαν, κοιλάναντες αὐτὴν καὶ ἐξελόντες τὴν ἐντεριώνην ἐμπλέουσιν, ἰστοῖς μὲν χρώμενοι καλαμίνοις, ἀντὶ δὲ τῆς ὀθόνης τῷ φύλλῳ

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: living in the fields, rural
 ἀνάγω: to lead up
 ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
 ἐμπλέω: to sail in
 ἐντεριώνη, ἦ: innermost part
 ἐξαιρέω: to take out of
 ἐξήκοντα: sixty
 ἐπειδὴν: whenever
 ἔωθεν: from morning
 ἡιών, -όνος, ἦ: a shore, beach
 ἰστός, ό: anything set upright, mast
 καλάμινος, -η, -ον: made of reed
 κοιλαίνω: to make hollow, scoop out
 κοιμάω: put to sleep
 κολοκύνθη, -της, ἦ: a pumpkin

κολοκύνθινος, -η, -ον: made from pumpkins
 ληστεύω: to be a robber or pirate
 μῆκος, -εος: length
 ξηραίνω: to parch up, dry up
 ὀθόνη, ἦ: a sail, sail-cloth
 παραπλέω: to sail by or past
 περιπίπτω: to fall around or in with
 πήχυς, ό: a cubit
 πλησίος, -α, -ον: near, close to
 πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
 πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing wind
 σφοδρός, -ά, -όν: excessive, violent
 τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third
 φύλλον, τό: a leaf
 χειμάζω: to toss with storms

Leaving Ogygia, they are attacked by pirates in pumpkin boats.

ἀπελθόντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-έρχομαι
 ἐκοιμήθημεν: ao. pas. of κοιμάω, “we slept”
 ἀνηγόμεθα: impf. of ἀνα-άγω, “we put to sea”
 κατιόντος τοῦ πνεύματος: pr. part. of κατα-έρχομαι, gen abs., “the wind rising”
 καὶ δὴ χειμασθέντες: ao. part. of χειμάζω, “in fact, being storm-tossed”
 ἡμέρας δύο τῇ τρίτῃ: acc. and dat. of time, “for two days and on the third”
 Κολοκυνθοπειραταῖς: dat. pl., “Pumpkin pirates”
 τοὺς παραπλέοντας: “those sailing by”
 ἐπειδὴν ξηράνωσι: ao. subj. of ξηραίνω, indef. temp. clause, “whenever they dry out”
 κοιλάναντες: ao. part. of κοιλαίνω, “having hollowed”
 ἐξελόντες: ao. part. of ἐξ-αίρέω, “having removed”
 καλαμίνοις, τῷ φύλλῳ: datives of means after χρώμενοι, “using reeds, using the leaf”

τῆς κολοκύνθης. προσβαλόντες οὖν ἡμῖν ἀπὸ δύο πληρωμάτων ἐμάχοντο καὶ πολλοὺς κατετραυματίζον βάλλοντες ἀντὶ λίθων τῷ σπέρματι τῶν κολοκυνθῶν. ἀγχωμάως δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ ναυμαχοῦντες περὶ μεσημβρίαν εἶδομεν κατόπιν τῶν Κολοκυνθοπειρατῶν προσπλέοντας τοὺς Καρνοναύτας. πολέμιοι δὲ ἦσαν ἀλλήλοις, ὡς ἔδειξαν· ἐπεὶ γὰρ κἀκεῖνοι ἤσθοντο αὐτοὺς ἐπιόντας, ἡμῶν μὲν ὀλιγώρησαν, τραπόμενοι δὲ ἐπ' ἐκείνους ἐναυμάχουν. [38] ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐν τοσοῦτῳ ἐπάραντες τὴν ὀθόνην ἐφεύγομεν ἀπολιπόντες αὐτοὺς μαχομένους, καὶ δῆλοι ἦσαν

ἀγχώματος, -ον: nearly equal, indecisive
 αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, apprehend by the senses, to see, hear, feel
 ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind
 βάλλω: to throw
 δείκνυμι: to bring to light, show, display
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: visible, conspicuous, clear
 ἐπαίρω: to lift up and set on
 Καρνοναύτης, -ου, ὄ: one who sails in a nut-shell
 κατατραυματίζω: to cover with wounds
 κατόπιν: behind, after
 κολοκύνθη, -της, ἡ: a pumpkin

μάχομαι: to fight
 μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon
 ναυμαχέω: to fight in a ship or by sea
 ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
 ὀλιγωρέω: to esteem little or lightly
 πλήρωμα, -ατος, τό: a full measure, crew
 πολέμιος, -α, -ον: military, relating to war
 προσβάλλω: to strike or dash against
 προσπλέω: to sail towards or against
 σπέρμα, -ατος, τό: seed
 τρέπω: to turn or direct
 φεύγω: to flee

προσβαλόντες: ao. part. of προσ-βάλλω, “having attacked”
 πληρωμάτων: “from two groups,” (i.e., “crews”)
 κατετραυματίζον: impf. of κατα-τραυματίζω, “they wounded”
 τῷ σπέρματι: dat. of means, “with the seed”
 εἶδομεν: ao. of ὁράω, “we saw”
 τοὺς Καρνοναύτας: “the Nut-sailors”
 ὡς ἔδειξαν: “as they showed (by their actions)”
 ἤσθοντο: ao. of αἰσθάνομαι, “they perceived”
 αὐτοὺς ἐπιόντας: pr. part. of ἐπι-ἔρχομαι in ind. st. after ἤσθοντο, “that they were attacking”
 ὀλιγώρησαν: ao. of ὀλιγορίζω, “they ignored”
 τραπόμενοι: ao. part. of τρέπω, “having turned away”
 ἐν τοσοῦτῳ (sc. χρόνῳ): “in the meantime”
 ἐπάραντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-αἶρω, “having hoisted”
 ἀπολιπόντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-λείπω, “having left behind”
 δῆλοι ἦσαν: “they were clear(ly)” + part.

κρατήσοντες οἱ Καρνοναῦται ἄτε καὶ πλείους - πέντε γὰρ εἶχον πληρώματα - καὶ ἀπὸ ἰσχυροτέρων νεῶν μαχόμενοι· τὰ γὰρ πλοῖα ἦν αὐτοῖς κελύφη καρύων ἡμίτομα, κεκενωμένα, μέγεθος δὲ ἐκάστου ἡμιτομίου εἰς μῆκος ὄργυιαὶ πεντεκαίδεκα.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπεκρύψαμεν αὐτούς, ἰώμεθα τοὺς τραυματίας, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις ὡς ἐπίπαν ἤμεν, ἀεὶ τινὰς ἐπιβουλὰς προσδεχόμενοι· οὐ μάτην. [39] οὐπω γοῦν ἐδεδύκει ὁ ἥλιος, καὶ ἀπὸ τινος ἐρήμου νήσου προσήλαυνον ἡμῖν ὅσον εἴκοσι ἄνδρες ἐπὶ δελφίνων μεγάλων ὀχούμενοι, λησταὶ καὶ οὗτοι· καὶ οἱ δελφίνες

ἀεὶ: always, for ever

ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός ὄ: a man

ἀποκρύπτω: to hide from, keep hidden from

γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way

δελφίς, -ίνος, ὄ: a dolphin

δύω: sink into

ἐπιβουλή, ἦ: a plan against, attack

ἐπίπαν: in general

ἐρήμος, -ον: deserted

ἥλιος, -ου, ὄ: the sun

ἡμίτομος, -ον: half cut through, cut in two

ἰάομαι: to heal, cure

ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, mighty

κάρυον, τό: nut

κελύφος, -εος, τό: pod, shell

κενώω: to empty out, drain

κρατέω: to be strong, mighty, powerful

ληστής, -οῦ, ὄ: a robber, plunderer

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μάτην: in vain, idly, fruitlessly

μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size

μῆκος, -εος, τό: length

ναῦς, νεῶς, ἦ: a ship

νήσος, -ου, ἦ: an island

ὄπλον, τό: a tool, implement

ὄργυια, -ᾶς, ἦ: a fathom

οὐπω: not yet

ὀχέω: to uphold, sustain

πεντεκαίδεκα: fifteen

πλέων, -ονος: more numerous

πλήρωμα, -ατος, τό: a full measure, crew

πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel

προσδέχομαι: to receive, accept

προσελάυνω: to drive to

τραυματίας, -ου, ὄ: a wounded man

κρατήσοντες: fut. part. of κρατέω after δηλοῖ “about to defeat”

ἄτε + part.: providing the grounds for the supposition

ἄτε καὶ πλείους (sc. ὄντες)...καὶ μαχόμενοι: “because they were more numerous and were fighting”

κεκενωμένα: perf. part. of κενώω, “emptied out”

ἀπεκρύψαμεν: ao. of ἀπο-κρύπτω, “we had lost sight of them”

ἰώμεθα: impf. of ἰάομαι, “we cared for”

ὡς ἐπίπαν: “as much as possible”

προσδεχόμενοι: pr. part., “expecting”

ἐδεδύκει: plupl. of δύω, “had set”

προσήλαυνον: impf. of προσ-ἐλαύνω, “they drove toward us”

ὅσον εἴκοσι: “about twenty”

λησταὶ καὶ οὗτοι: “these were pirates too”

Lucian

αὐτοὺς ἔφερον ἀσφαλῶς, καὶ ἀναπηδῶντες ἐχρεμέτιζον ὥσπερ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πλησίον ἦσαν, διαστάντες οἱ μὲν ἔνθεν, οἱ δὲ ἔνθεν ἔβαλλον ἡμᾶς σηπίαις ξηραῖς καὶ ὀφθαλμοῖς καρκίνων. τοξευόντων δὲ ἡμῶν καὶ ἀκοντιζόντων οὐκέτι ὑπέμενον, ἀλλὰ τρωθέντες οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν πρὸς τὴν νῆσον κατέφυγον.

ἀκοντίζω: to hurl a javelin, spear

ἀναπηδάω: to leap up, start up

ἀσφαλής, -ές: not liable to fall, steadfast, firm

βάλλω: to throw

δίιστημι: to set apart, separate

ἐνθεν: on the one side

ἵππος, ὄ: a horse, mare

καρκίνος, ὄ: a crab

καταφεύγω: to flee for refuge

ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry

ὀφθαλμός, ὄ: an eye

πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near, close to

σηπία, ἡ: a cuttle-fish

τιτρώσκω: to wound

τοξεύω: to shoot with the bow

ὑπομένω: to stay behind, survive

χρεμετίζω: to neigh, whinny

ἀναπηδῶντες: ao. part. of ἀνα-πηδάω, “having leapt up”

διαστάντες: ao. part. intrans. of δια-ἴστημι, “dividing themselves”

ἔβαλλον: impf. “they were casting”

σηπίαις ξηραῖς καὶ ὀφθαλμοῖς: dat. of means, “with dry cuttlefish and the eyes of crabs”

τοξευόντων δὲ ἡμῶν καὶ ἀκοντιζόντων: gen. abs., “when we started firing”

τρωθέντες: ao. part. pas. of τραματίζω, “having been wounded”

κατέφυγον: ao. of κατα-φεύγω, “they fled”

[40] Περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον γαλήνης οὔσης ἐλάθομεν προσοκείλαντες ἀλκύνος καλιᾶ παμμεγέθει· σταδίων γοῦν ἦν αὕτη ἐξήκοντα τὸ περίμετρον. ἐπέπλεεν δὲ ἡ ἀλκυὼν τὰ ῥά θάλπουσα οὐ πολὺ μείων τῆς καλιᾶς. καὶ δὴ ἀναπταμένη μικροῦ μὲν κατέδυσε τὴν ναῦν τῷ ἀνέμῳ τῶν πτερῶν. ὄχουτο δ' οὖν φεύγουσα γοεράν τινα φωνὴν προϊέμενη. ἐπιβάντες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἡμέρας ἤδη ὑποφαινούσης ἐθεώμεθα τὴν καλιᾶν σχεδία μεγάλη

ἀλκυὼν, -όνος, ἡ: the kingfisher
 ἀναπέτομαι: to fly up, fly away
 ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
 γαλήνη, ἡ: stillness of the sea, calm
 γοερός, -ά, -όν: mournful, lamentable
 γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way
 ἐξήκοντα: sixty
 ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon
 ἐπιπλέω: to sail upon or over
 ἡμέρα, ἡ: a day
 θάλπω: to heat, soften by heat
 θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view, behold
 καλιᾶ, ἡ: a wooden dwelling, hut, nest
 καταδύω: to sink
 λανθάνω: to escape notice

μείων, μῆνος: less, smaller
 μεσονύκτιος, -ον: of or at midnight
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small
 οἴχομαι: to be gone, to have gone
 παμμεγέθης, -ες: enormous
 περίμετρον, τό: the circumference
 προίημι: to send forth
 προσοκέλλω: to run
 πτερόν, τό: feathers
 στάδιον, τό: a stade
 σχεδία, ἡ: a raft, float
 ὑποφαίνω: to bring to light from under
 φεύγω: to flee
 φωνή, ἡ: a sound, tone
 ῥόν, τό: an egg

They bump into the floating nest of an enormous halcyon.

γαλήνης οὔσης: gen abs., “there being a stillness of the sea”

ἐλάθομεν: ao. of λανθάνω

προσοκείλαντες: ao. part. of προσ-κέλλω, with ἐλάθομεν, “we didn’t notice we’d run aground on...”

καλιᾶ παμμεγέθει: “a huge nest”

ἐπέπλεεν (= ἐπέπλει): impf. of ἐπι-πλέω, “was sailing”

μείων τῆς καλιᾶς: gen. of comparison, “smaller than the nest”

καὶ δὴ: “in fact”

ἀναπταμένη: ao. part. of ἀνα-πέτομαι, “rising in the air”

μικροῦ κατέδυσε: “almost sunk the ship,” lit. “by a little”

προιέμενη: pr. part. of προ-ἵημι, “sending forth a cry”

ἐπιβάντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-βαίνω, “having gone ashore”

ἡμέρας ἤδη ὑποφαινούσης: gen. abs., “at day break”

προσεοικυῖαν ἐκ δένδρων μεγάλων συμπεφορημένην· ἐπὴν δὲ καὶ
 ῥὰ πεντακόσια, ἕκαστον αὐτῶν Χίου πίθου περιπληθέστερον. ἤδη
 μέντοι καὶ οἱ νεοττοὶ ἔνδοθεν ἐφαίνοντο καὶ ἔκρωζον. πελέκεσιν
 γοῦν διακόψαντες ἐν τῶν ῥῶν νεοττὸν ἄπτερον ἐξεκολάψαμεν
 εἴκοσι γυπῶν ἀδρότερον.

[41] Ἐπεὶ δὲ πλέοντες ἀπέχομεν τῆς καλιᾶς ὅσον σταδίου
 διακοσίους, τέρατα ἡμῖν μεγάλα καὶ θαυμαστὰ ἐπεσήμανεν· ὃ τε
 γὰρ ἐν τῇ πρύμνῃ χηνίσκος ἄφνω ἐπτερύξατο καὶ ἀνεβόησεν, καὶ

ἀδρός, -ά, -όν: thick
 ἀναβοάω: to shout aloud, utter a loud cry
 ἀπέχω: to keep off or be away from
 ἄπτερος, -ον: without wings, unwinged
 ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares
 γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way
 γύψ, ἡ: a vulture
 δένδρον, τό: a tree
 διακόπτω: to cut in two, cut through
 διακόσιοι, -αι, -α: two hundred
 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each
 ἐκκολάπτω: to scrape out
 ἔνδοθεν: from within
 ἐπισημαίνω: to set a mark upon
 θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wondrous, wonderful,
 marvelous
 καλιά, ἡ: a wooden dwelling, hut, nest
 κρώζω: to cry like a crow, caw

νεοττός, οὔ, ὄ: a young bird, nestling,
 chick
 πέλεκυς, -εως, ὄ: an axe
 πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred
 περιπληθής, -ές: very full
 πίθος, ὄ: a wine-jar
 πλέω: to sail, go by sea
 προσείκοι: to be like, resemble
 πρύμνα, -ης, ἡ: the stern, poop
 πτερύσσομαι: to clap the wings
 συμφορέω: to gather, collect, heap up
 τέρας, -εος, τό: a sign, wonder, marvel
 φαίνομαι: to appear, seem
 χηνίσκος, ὄ: a ship's stern turned up like
 a goose's neck
 Χίος, -α, -ον: Chian, of or from Chios
 ῥόν, τό: an egg

προσεοικυῖαν: perf. part. in ind. st. after ἐθεώμεθα, "...that it looked like" + dat.
 συμπεφορημένην: perf. part. pas. of συμ-φορέω, modifying καλιᾶν, "having been
 put together"

ἐπὴν: impf. of ἐπι-εἶμι, "there were"

ῥὰ: n. pl., "eggs"

περιπληθέστερον: "more full"

πελέκεσιν: dat. of means, "with axes"

διακόψαντες: ao. part. of δια-κόπτω, "cutting open"

ἐξεκολάψαμεν: ao. of ἐκ-κολάπτω, "we hatched out"

ἀδρότερον: "thicker"

ἀπέχομεν: impf. of ἀπο-ἔχω, "we were away from"

ἐπεσήμανεν: ao. 3 s. of ἐπι-σημαίνω, "were manifested"

χηνίσκος: lit. "gooseneck," the rounded-up end of the boat

ἐπτερύξατο: ao. of πτερύσσω, "sprouted feathers"

ἀνεβόησεν: ao. of ἀνα-βοάω, "cackled"

A True Story

ὁ κυβερνήτης ὁ Σκίνθαρος φαλακρὸς ἤδη ὦν ἀνεκόμησεν, καὶ τὸ πάντων δὴ παραδοξότατον, ὁ γὰρ ἰστός τῆς νεῶς ἐξεβλάστησεν καὶ κλάδους ἀνέφυσεν καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ ἐκαρποφόρησεν, ὁ δὲ καρπὸς ἦν σύκα καὶ σταφυλὴ μέλαινα, οὐπω πέπειρος. ταῦτα ἰδόντες ὡς εἰκὸς ἐταράχθημεν καὶ ηὐχόμεθα τοῖς θεοῖς διὰ τὸ ἀλλόκοτον τοῦ φαντάσματος. [42] οὐπω δὲ πεντακοσίους σταδίους διελθόντες εἶδομεν ὕλην μεγίστην καὶ λάσιον πιτύων καὶ κυπαρίττων. καὶ ἡμεῖς μὲν εἰκάσαμεν ἤπειρον εἶναι· τὸ δ' ἦν

ἄκρον, -ον, τό: the highest or furthest point

ἀλλόκοτος, -ον: strange, monstrous

ἀναφύω: to grow, produce

διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through

εἰκάζω: to make like, represent, portray

εἰκός: like truth, likely

ἐκβλαστάνω: to sprout out

εὐχομαι: to pray, offer prayers

ἤπειρος: terra-firma, the land

θεός, ὁ: a god

ἰστός, ὁ: anything set upright, mast

καρπός, ὁ: fruit

καρποφορέω: to bear fruit

κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a young shoot, branch

κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: a steersman, helmsman, pilot

κυπαρίττος, ἡ: a cypress

λάσιος, -ος, -ον: hairy, rough, shaggy, woolly

μέλας: black, swart

ναῦς, νεῶς, ἡ: a ship

πεντακόσιοι: five hundred

πέπειρος, -ον: ripe

πίτυς, -υος, ἡ: the pine, stone pine

σταφυλή, ἡ: a bunch of grapes

σύκον, τό: a fig

ταράσσω: to stir, stir up trouble

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

φαλακρός, -ά, -όν: bald

φάντασμα, -ατος, τό: a phantasm

ἀνεκόμησεν: ao. of ἀνα-κομέω, “grew long hair”

ἐξεβλάστησεν: ao. of ἐκ-βλαστάνω, “budded”

ἀνέφυσεν: ao. of ἀνα-φύω, “sprouted”

ἐκαρποφόρησεν: ao. of καρποφορέω, “bore fruit.” This recalls a famous incident from the Homeric Hymn to Hermes.

ἰδόντες: ao. part. of ὁράω, “seeing”

ὡς εἰκός: “as you would expect”

ἐταράχθημεν: ao. pas. of ταραύτω, “we were disturbed”

ηὐχόμεθα: impf. of εὐχομαι, “we prayed”

διελθόντες: ao. part. of δια-έρχομαι, “having gone on”

εἶδομεν: ao. of ὁράω, “we saw”

πιτύων καὶ κυπαρίττων: gen. pl., “of pine trees and cypresses”

εἰκάσαμεν ἤπειρον εἶναι: “we surmised that it was a continent”

τὸ δ' ἦν: “but it was”

πέλαγος ἄβυσσον ἀρρίζοις δένδροις καταπεφυτευμένον· εἰστήκει δὲ τὰ δένδρα ὄμως ἀκίνητα, ὀρθὰ καθάπερ ἐπιπλέοντα. πλησιάσαντες οὖν καὶ τὸ πᾶν κατανόησαντες ἐν ἀπόρῳ εἰχόμεθα τί χρῆ δρᾶν· οὔτε γὰρ διὰ τῶν δένδρων πλεῖν δυνατὸν ἦν - πυκνὰ γὰρ καὶ προσεχῆ ὑπῆρχεν - οὔτε ἀναστρέφειν ἐδόκει ῥάδιον· ἐγὼ δὲ ἀνελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ μέγιστον δένδρον ἀπεσκόπουν τὰ ἐπέκεινα ὅπως ἔχοι, καὶ ἐώρων ἐπὶ σταδίου μὲν πεντήκοντα ἢ ὀλίγω πλείους τὴν ὕλην οὔσαν, ἔπειτα δὲ αὐθις ἕτερον ὠκεανὸν ἐκδεχόμενον. καὶ δὴ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν ἀναθεμένους τὴν ναῦν ἐπὶ

ἄβυσσος, -ον: bottomless, abyss
 ἀκίνητος, -η, -ον: unmoved, motionless
 ἀναστρέφω: to turn upside down, upset
 ἀνατίθημι: to put up
 ἀνέρχομαι: to go up to
 ἄπορος, -ον: without passage, without resource
 ἀποσκοπέω: to look away from
 ἄρριζος, -ον: without roots
 δράω: to do
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, possible
 ἐκδέχομαι: to take or receive from
 ἐπέκεινα: on yonder side, beyond
 ἐπιπλέω: to sail upon or over
 ἴστημι: to make to stand
 κατανοέω: to observe well, to understand

καταφυτεύω: to plant
 ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship
 ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little
 ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight
 πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
 πεντήκοντα: fifty
 πλείον: more
 πλέω: to sail, go by sea
 πλησιάζω: to bring near
 προσεχής, -ές: next to (each other)
 πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, compact
 ῥάδιος, -η, -ον: easy
 ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
 ὑπάρχω: to begin, exist
 ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ὄ: ocean

καταπεφυτευμένον: perf. part. pas. of κατα-φυτεύω, “completely overgrown”
 εἰστήκει: plupf. of ἴστημι, “they stood up”
 πλησιάσαντες: ao. part. of πλησιάζω, “having drawn near”
 κατανόησαντες: ao. part. of κατα-νοέω, “having realized”
 ἐν ἀπόρῳ εἰχόμεθα: “we were at a loss”
 τί χρῆ δρᾶν: ind. question, “what we should do”
 οὔτε πλεῖν δυνατὸν ἦν, οὔτε: “neither was it possible to sail, nor...”
 ἀνελθὼν: ao. part. of ἀνα-έρχομαι, “having climbed up”
 ἀπεσκόπουν: impf. of ἀπο-σκοπέω, “I looked around”
 ὅπως ἔχοι: pr. opt. in ind. quest. in sec. sequence, “how things were”
 ἐώρων: impf 1 s. of ὁράω, “I saw”
 τὴν ὕλην οὔσαν: ind. st. after ἐώρων, “that the forest was”
 ἐκδεχόμενον: pr. part. of ἐκ-δέχομαι, “coming next”
 ἀναθεμένους: ao. part. of ἀνα-τίθημι, modifying the acc. subject of ὑπερβιβάσαι, “having lifted”

A True Story

τὴν κόμην τῶν δένδρων - πυκνὴ δὲ ἦν - ὑπερβιβάσαι, εἰ
δυναίμεθα, εἰς τὴν θάλατταν τὴν ἑτέραν· καὶ οὕτως ἐποιούμεν.
ἐκδήσαντες γὰρ αὐτὴν κάλω μεγάλῳ καὶ ἀνελθόντες ἐπὶ τὰ
δένδρα μόλις ἀνιμησάμεθα, καὶ θέντες ἐπὶ τῶν κλάδων,
πετάσαντες τὰ ἱστία καθάπερ ἐν θαλάττῃ ἐπλέομεν τοῦ ἀνέμου
προωθούντος ἐπισυρόμενοι· ἔνθα δὴ καὶ τὸ Ἄντιμάχου τοῦ
ποιητοῦ ἔπος ἐπεισηλθέ με - φησὶν γάρ που κἀκείνος·
«Τοῖσιν δ' ὑλήεντα διὰ πλόον ἐρχομένοισιν.»

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind	κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a young shoot, branch
ἀνέρχομαι: to go up	κόμη, ἡ: the hair, hair of the head
ἀνιμάω: to draw up	μόλις: scarcely
δύναμαι: to be able, capable, strong enough	πετάννυμι: to spread out
ἐκδέω: to bind so as to hang from, to fasten to or on	πλόος, ὁ: a sailing, voyage
ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after	ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet
ἕτερος, -α, -ον: other	προωθέω: to push forward, push or urge on
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea	πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, compact
ἱστίον, τό: a sail	τίθημι: to set, put, place
κάλως, -ου, ὁ: a reefing rope	ὑλήεις, -εσσα, -εν: woody, wooded
	ὑπερβιβάζω: to carry over, transfer

ὑπερβιβάσαι: ao. inf. of **ὑπερβιβάζω** after **ἐδόκει ἡμῖν**, “to make our way”

εἰ δυναίμεθα: opt. in indef. past condition, “if we could”

ἐκδήσαντες: ao. part. of **ἐκ-δέω**, “have tied”

ἀνελθόντες: ao. part. of **ἀνα-ἔρχομαι**, “having climbed”

ἀνιμησάμεθα: ao. of **ἀνιμάω**, “we drew here up”

θέντες: ao. part. of **τίθημι**, “having placed”

πετάσαντες: ao. part. of **πετάννυμι**, “have spread out”

τοῦ ἀνέμου προωθούντος: pr. part. of **προ-ωθέω**, gen abs., “with the wind pushing us”

ἐπισυρόμενοι: pr. part., “dragging”

Ἄντιμάχου: Antimachus of Colophon, fl. 400 BC, author of an epic on Thebes.

ἐπεισηλθέ: ao. of **ἐπι-εις-ἔρχομαι**, “came to me”

γάρ που: “for somewhere”

τοῖσιν ἐρχομένοισιν: epic dat. pl., “to them going”

ὑλήεντα διὰ πλόον: “through a forest voyage”

[43] Βιασάμενοι δὲ ὅμως τὴν ὕλην ἀφικόμεθα ἐς τὸ ὕδωρ, καὶ πάλιν ὁμοίως καθέντες τὴν ναῦν ἐπλέομεν διὰ καθαροῦ καὶ διαυγοῦς ὕδατος, ἄχρι δὴ ἐπέστημεν χάσματι μεγάλῳ ἐκ τοῦ ὕδατος διεστῶτος γεγενημένῳ, καθάπερ ἐν τῇ γῆι πολλάκις ὀρώμεν ὑπὸ σεισμῶν γενόμενα διαχωρίσματα. ἡ μὲν οὖν ναῦς καθελόντων ἡμῶν τὰ ἰστία οὐ ῥαδίως ἔστη παρ' ὀλίγον ἐλθοῦσα κατενεχθῆναι. ὑπερκύψαντες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἐωρώμεν βάθος ὅσον σταδίων χιλίων μάλα φοβερόν καὶ παράδοξον· εἰστήκει γὰρ τὸ ὕδωρ ὡσπερ μεμερισμένον· περιβλέποντες δὲ ὀρώμεν κατὰ δεξιὰ

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive at

ἄχρι: to the uttermost, utterly

βάθος: depth or height

βιάζω: to constrain

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side

διαυγής, -ές: transparent

διαχώρισμα, -ατος, τό: a cleft, division

δίστημι: to set apart, to place separately, separate

ἐφίστημι: to set or place upon

ἴστημι: to make to stand

ἰστίον, τό: a sail

καθαίρω: to take down

καθαρός: clear of dirt, clean, spotless

καθίημι: to send down, let fall

καταφέρω: to bring down

μάλα: very, exceedingly

μερίζω: to divide, distribute

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little

πάλιν: back, backwards

παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical

περιβλέπω: to look around

πολλάκις: many times, often

ῥαδίως: easily

σεισμός, ὁ: a shaking, shock

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

ὑπερκύπτω: to stretch and peep over

φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful

χάσμα, -ατος, τό: chasm, gulf

χιλιοί, -αι: a thousand

βιασάμενοι: ao. part. of **βιάζομαι**, “having forced our way through”

ἀφικόμεθα: ao. of **ἀφικνέομαι**, “we arrived”

καθέντες: ao. part. of **κατα-ἴημι**, “having set down”

ἐπέστημεν: ao. intrans. of **ἐπι-ἴστημι**, “until we stood”

γεγενημένῳ: perf. part. of **γίγνομαι**, modifying **χάσματι**, “a chasm made by”

διεστῶτος: perf. part. gen. s. of **δια-ἴστημι** modifying **ὕδατος** “water dividing”

ὑπὸ σεισμῶν γενόμενα: ao. part. of **γίγνομαι**, “made by earthquakes”

καθελόντων ἡμῶν: ao. part. of **κατα-αἰρέω**, gen. abs., “while we took down”

οὐ ῥαδίως ἔστη: ao. of **ἴστημι**, “did not easily come to a stop”

παρ' ὀλίγον ἐλθοῦσα: ao. part. nom. s. f. of **ἔρχομαι**, “having come close”

κατενεχθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. of **κατα-φέρω**, “to being brought down”

ὑπερκύψαντες: ao. part. of **ὑπερ-κύπτω**, “peering over”

ἐωρώμεν: impf. of **ὀράω**, “we saw”

εἰστήκει: plupf. of **ἴστημι**, “stood”

μεμερισμένον: perf. part. of **μερίζω**, “cut in two”

A True Story

οὐ πάνυ πόρρωθεν γέφυραν ἐπεζευγμένην ὕδατος συνάπτοντος τὰ πελάγη κατὰ τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν, ἐκ τῆς ἐτέρας θαλάττης εἰς τὴν ἐτέραν διαρρέοντος. προσελάσαντες οὖν ταῖς κώπαις κατ' ἐκείνου παρεδράμομεν καὶ μετὰ πολλῆς ἀγωνίας ἐπεράσαμεν οὔποτε προσδοκήσαντες.

[44] Ἐντεῦθεν ἡμᾶς ὑπεδέχετο πέλαγος προσηνὲς καὶ νῆσος οὐ μεγάλη, εὐπρόσιτος, συνοικουμένη· ἐνέμοντο δὲ αὐτὴν ἄνθρωποι ἄγριοι, Βουκέφαλοι, κέρατα ἔχοντες, οἶον παρ' ἡμῖν τὸν

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: living in the fields, rural
ἀγωνία, ἡ: a contest, struggle for victory
βουκέφαλος, -ον: bull-headed
γέφυρα, ἡ: a dyke, dam, bridge
διαρρέω: to flow through
ἐντεῦθεν: hence or thence
ἐπιζεύγνυμι: to join at top
ἐπιρραίνω: to sprinkle upon or over
ἐπιφάνεια, τά: manifestation, surface
εὐπρόσιτος, -ον: easy of access
κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal
κώπη, ἡ: the handle of an oar
νέμω: to distribute, dispense; (mid.) to hold
sway

νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind
παρατρέχω: to run by or past
πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
πόρρωθεν: from afar
προσδοκάω: to expect
προσελαύνω: to drive or chase to
προσηνής, -ές: soft, gentle, kindly
συνάπτω: to tie or bind together, to join
together, unite
συνοικέω: to dwell together
ὑποδέχομαι: to receive beneath

γέφυραν ἐπεζευγμένην: perf. part. pas. of ἐπι-ζεύγνυμι, "a bridge yoking together"

ὕδατος: "(made) of water"

συνάπτοντος, διαρρέοντος: pr. part. gen. s. of συν-ἄπτω and δια-ρέω, modifying ὕδατος, "joining, flowing"

κατὰ τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν: "along the surface"

προσελάσαντες: ao. part. of προσ-ελαύνω, "having rowed forward"

παρεδράμομεν: ao. of παρα-τρέχω, "we ran into"

ἐπεράσαμεν: ao. of περάω, "we crossed"

οὔποτε προσδοκήσαντες: ao. of προσ-δοκέω, "not ever expecting (that we would)"

They come to the island of the Bullheads.

εὐπρόσιτος: from εὐ-πρόσ-ἔρχομαι "accessible"

Βουκέφαλοι: "Bull-heads"

οἶον: "just as"

Μινώταυρον ἀναπλάττουσιν. ἀποβάντες δὲ προήειμεν ὑδρευσόμενοι καὶ σιτία ληψόμενοι, εἴ ποθεν δυνηθείημεν· οὐκέτι γὰρ εἶχομεν. καὶ ὕδωρ μὲν αὐτοῦ πλησίον εὔρομεν, ἄλλο δὲ οὐδὲν ἐφαίνετο, πλὴν μυκηθμὸς πολὺς οὐ πόρρωθεν ἤκουετο. δόξαντες οὖν ἀγέλην εἶναι βοῶν, κατ' ὀλίγον προχωροῦντες ἐπέστημεν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις. οἱ δὲ ἰδόντες ἡμᾶς ἐδίωκον, καὶ τρεῖς μὲν τῶν ἐταίρων λαμβάνουσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν καταφεύγομεν. εἶτα μέντοι πάντες ὀπλισάμενοι - οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν ἀτιμωρήτους περιδεῖν τοὺς φίλους - ἐμπίπτομεν τοῖς Βουκεφάλοις τὰ κρέα τῶν ἀνηρημένων διαιρουμένοις·

ἀγέλη, ἦ: a herd

ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise

ἀναπλάττω: to form anew, remodel

ἀτιμωρήτος, -ον: unavenged

βουκέφαλος, -ον: bull-headed

βοῦς, ὄ: a cow

διαιρέω: to divide into parts

διώκω: to pursue

δύναμαι: to be able, capable, strong enough

εἶτα: then, next

ἐμπίπνω: fall upon

εταῖρος, ὄ: a comrade, companion, mate

ἐπίστημι: to set or place upon

καταφεύγω: to flee for refuge

κρέας, τό: flesh, meat, a piece of meat

λαμβάνω: to take

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μυκηθμός, ὄ: a lowing, bellowing

ὀπλίζω: to make or get ready

περιεῖδον: to overlook

πλήν: more than

ποθεν: from some place or other

πόρρωθεν: from afar

προχωρέω: to go or come forward

σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions

ὑδρεύω: to draw, fetch or carry water

φίλος, -η, -ον: loved, beloved, dear

Μινώταυρος: Minotaur, the legendary half-bull and half-man, child of Pasiphae.

ἀναπλάττουσιν: pr. of ἀνα-πλάττω, "they fancy"

ἀποβάντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-βαίνω, "upon landing"

προήειμεν: impf. of προ-ἔρχομαι, "we proceeded"

ὑδρευσόμενοι: fut. part. of ὑδρεύω, showing purpose, "in order to get water"

ληψόμενοι: fut. part. of λαμβάνω, showing purpose, "in order to take"

εἴ ποθεν δυνηθείημεν: ao. opt. in past general protasis, "if we could"

εὔρομεν (= ἤδρομεν): ao. of εὕρισκω, "we found"

πλήν: "although"

ἀγέλην εἶναι: ind. st. after δόξαντες, "that it was a herd"

προχωροῦντες: pr. part. of προ-χωρέω, "approaching"

ἐπέστημεν: ao. trans. of ἐπι-ίστημι, "we came upon"

ἰδόντες: ao. part. of ὁράω, "seeing"

ὀπλισάμενοι: ao. part. of ὀπλίζω, "having armed ourselves"

περιδεῖν: ao. of περι-ὀράω, "to overlook"

τοῖς Βουκεφάλοις διαιρουμένοις: pr. part. of δια-αἰρέω, "dividing up"

τῶν ἀνηρημένων: perf. part. of ἀνα-αἰρέω, "of the slain"

A True Story

φοβήσαντες δὲ πάντας διώκομεν, καὶ κτείνομέν γε ὅσον πεντήκοντα καὶ ζῶντας αὐτῶν δύο λαμβάνομεν, καὶ αὐθις ὀπίσω ἀναστρέφομεν τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἔχοντες. σιτίον μέντοι οὐδὲν εὔρομεν. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι παρήνουν ἀποσφάττειν τοὺς εἰλημμένους, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐκ ἐδοκίμαζον, ἀλλὰ δήσας ἐφύλαττον αὐτούς, ἄχρι δὴ ἀφίκοντο παρὰ τῶν Βουκεφάλων πρέσβεις ἀπαιτοῦντες ἐπὶ λύτροις τοὺς συνειλημμένους· συνίεμεν γὰρ αὐτῶν διανευόντων καὶ γοερὸν τι μυκωμένων ὥσπερ ἰκετευόντων. τὰ λύτρα δὲ ἦν τυροὶ πολλοὶ καὶ ἰχθύες ξηροὶ καὶ κρόμμου καὶ ἔλαφοι τέτταρες, τρεῖς ἐκάστη πόδας ἔχουσα, δύο μὲν τοὺς

αἰχμάλωτος, -ον: captive
ἀναστρέφω: to turn back
ἀπαιτέω: to demand back, demand
ἀποσφάττω: to cut the throat of
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
ἄχρι: to the uttermost, utterly
γοερός, -ά, -όν: mournful, lamentable
δέω: to bind
διανεύω: to nod, beckon
διώκω: to pursue
δοκιμάζω: to assay, approve
ἔλαφος, ὄ: a deer
ζάω: to live
ἰκετεύω: to approach as a suppliant
ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὄ: a fish
κρόμμον, -ου, τό: onion
κτείνω: to kill, slay

λαμβάνω: to take
λύτρον, τό: a price paid
μυκάομαι: to grate, creak
ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry
ὀπίσω: backwards
παραινέω: to exhort, recommend, advise
πεντήκοντα: fifty
πούς, ποδός, ὄ: a foot
πρέσβυς, -εως, ὄ: an old man, ambassador
σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
συνίημι: to bring or set together
τέτταρες: four
τυρός, ὄ: cheese
φοβέω: to put to flight
φυλάττω: to keep watch and ward, keep guard

φοβήσαντες: ao. part. of **φοβέομαι**, “putting to flight”
παρήνουν: impf. of **παρα-αἰνέω**, “some advised”
τοὺς εἰλημμένους: perf. part. pas. of **αἰρέω**, “those captured”
ἀφίκοντο: ao. of **ἀφικνέομαι**, “they arrived”
συνειλημμένους: perf. part. pas. of **συν-αἰρέω**, “those captured”
συνίεμεν: pr. of **συν-ἴημι**, “we understood”
διανευόντων καὶ μυκωμένων: genitives with **συνίεμεν**, “nodding and mooing”
ἐκάστη (sc. **ἔλαφος**), “each deer having..”

ὄπισθεν, οἱ δὲ πρόσω συμπεφύκεσαν. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἀποδόντες τοὺς
 συνειλημμένους καὶ μίαν ἡμέραν ἐπιμείναντες ἀνήχθημεν.

[45] Ἦδη δὲ ἰχθύες τε ἡμῖν ἐφαίνοντο καὶ ὄρνεα παρεπέτετο
 καὶ ἄλλ' ὅποσα γῆς πλησίον οὔσης σημεῖα προφαίνεται. μετ'
 ὀλίγον δὲ καὶ ἄνδρας εἶδομεν καινῶ τῷ τρόπῳ ναυτιλίας
 χρωμένους· αὐτοὶ γὰρ καὶ ναῦται καὶ νῆες ἦσαν. λέξω δὲ τοῦ
 πλοῦ τὸν τρόπον· ὑπτιοὶ κείμενοι ἐπὶ τοῦ ὕδατος ὀρθώσαντες τὰ
 αἰδοῖα - μεγάλα δὲ φέρουσιν - ἐξ αὐτῶν ὀθόνην πετάσαντες καὶ
 ταῖς χερσὶν τοὺς ποδεῶνας κατέχοντες ἐμπίπτοντος τοῦ ἀνέμου

αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals
 ἀνάγω: to lead up
 ἄνεμος, ὄ: wind
 ἀποδίδωμι: to give up, give back
 ἐπίπνω: fall upon
 ἐπιμένω: to stay on, tarry or abide still
 ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὄ: a fish
 καινός, -ή, -όν: new, fresh
 κατέχω: to hold fast
 ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship
 ναύτης, -ου, ὄ: a sailor, shipmate
 ναυτιλία, ἡ: sailing, seamanship
 ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
 οἶδα: to know
 ὄπισθεν: behind, at the back
 ὀπόσος: as many as
 ὀρθόω: to set straight

ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
 παραπέτομαι: to fly alongside
 πετάννυμι: to spread out
 πλόος, ὄ: a sailing, voyage
 ποδεῶν, -ῶνος, ὄ: the ragged ends
 πρόσω: forwards, onwards, further
 προφαίνω: to bring forth, bring to light
 σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark, token
 συλλαμβάνω: to collect, gather together
 συμφύω: to make to grow together
 τρόπος, ὄ: a turn, direction, course,
 manner
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
 ὑπτιος, -α, -ον: prone
 φαίνομαι: to appear, seem
 χεῖρ, ἡ: the hand

οἱ δὲ (sc. πόδες) πρόσω: “the front two”
 συμπεφύκεσαν: perf. of συμ-φύω, “had grown together”
 ἐπὶ τούτοις ἀποδόντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-δίδωμι, “for the purpose of exchanging”
 ἀνήχθημεν: ao. pas. of ἀνα-ἄγω, “we departed”
 παρεπέτετο: impf. of παρα-πέτομαι, “were flying alongside”
 γῆς πλησίον οὔσης: “of land being near”
 εἶδομεν: ao. of ὁράω, “we saw”
 καινῶ τῷ τρόπῳ: dat. of means after χρωμένους, “using a new mode”
 ὀρθώσαντες: ao. part. of ὀρθόω, “making erect their genitals”
 πετάσαντες: ao. part. of πετάννυμι, “having spread sail on them”
 ποδεῶνας κατέχοντες: “holding the corners”
 ἐμπίπτοντος τοῦ ἀνέμου: gen abs., “when the wind falls on them”

A True Story

ἔπλεον. ἄλλοι δὲ μετὰ τούτους ἐπὶ φελλῶν καθήμενοι ζεύξαντες δύο δελφίνας ἤλαυνόν τε καὶ ἡνιοχούν· οἱ δὲ προϊόντες ἐπεσύροντο τοὺς φελλούς. οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὔτε ἠδίκουν οὔτε ἔφευγον, ἀλλ' ἤλαυνον ἀδεῶς τε καὶ εἰρηνικῶς τὸ εἶδος τοῦ ἡμετέρου πλοίου θαυμάζοντες καὶ πάντοθεν περισκοποῦντες.

[46] Ἐσπέρας δὲ ἤδη προσήχθημεν νήσῳ οὐ μεγάλῃ· κατῳκείτο δὲ ὑπὸ γυναικῶν, ὡς ἐνομίζομεν, Ἑλλάδα φωνῆν προϊεμένων· προσήεσαν γὰρ καὶ ἐδεξιούντο καὶ ἡσπάζοντο, πάνυ

ἀδεής, -ές: without fear, fearless
ἀδικέω: to do wrong
ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid
farewell

γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman
δελφίς, -ίνος, ό: a dolphin
δεξιόμαι: welcome, greet
εἶδος, -εος, τό: that which is seen, form
εἰρηνικός, -ή, -όν: of or for peace, peaceful
ἐλαύνω: to drive, drive on, set in motion
Ἑλλάς, ἄδος: Greek
ἐπίσύρω: to drag or trail after
ἔσπερα, ἡ: evening
ζεύγνυμι: to yoke, put to
ἡνιοχέω: to hold the reins
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel

κάθημαι: to be seated
κατοικέω: to dwell in, colonize
νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
νομίζω: to hold as a custom, to practice,
believe
πάντοθεν: from all quarters, from every
side
περισκοπέω: to look round
πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
προΐημι: to send before, send on or
forward
προσάγω: to bring to or upon
φελλός, ό: the cork-tree
φεύγω: to flee
φωνή, ἡ: a sound, tone

μετὰ τούτους: “behind these”

καθήμενοι: pr. part. of κατα-ἤμαι, “sitting on corks”

ζεύξαντες: ao. part. of ζεύγνυμι, “having yoked”

ἤλαυνόν: impf. of ἐλαύνω, “they were driving”

ἡνιοχούν: impf. of ἡνιοχέω, “they were guiding with reins”

προϊόντες: pr. part. of προ-ἔρχομαι, “going forward”

ἐπεσύροντο: impf. of ἐπι-σύρω, “they dragged along”

ἠδίκουν: impf. of ἀδικέω, “they were not harming”

ἀδεῶς τε καὶ εἰρηνικῶς: “pleasantly and peacefully”

They encounter beautiful women who are more dangerous than they seem.

προσήχθημεν: ao. pas. of προσ-ἄγω, “we made landing”

κατῳκείτο: impf. pas. of κατοικέω, “it was inhabited”

ὡς ἐνομίζομεν: “or so we thought”

φωνῆν προϊεμένων: pr. part. of προ-ἴημι, modifying γυναικῶν, “speaking language”

προσήεσαν: impf. of προσ-ἔρχομαι, “they approached”

ἔταιρικῶς κεκοσμημένοι καὶ καλαὶ πᾶσαι καὶ νεάνιδες, ποδήρεις τοὺς χιτῶνας ἐπισυρόμενοι. ἡ μὲν οὖν νῆσος ἐκαλείτο Κοβαλοῦσα, ἡ δὲ πόλις αὐτῆ Ὑδαμαργία. λαβοῦσαι δ' οὖν ἡμᾶς αἱ γυναικες ἐκάστη πρὸς ἑαυτὴν ἀπῆγεν καὶ ξένον ἐποιεῖτο. ἐγὼ δὲ μικρὸν ἀποστὰς - οὐ γὰρ χρηστὰ ἐμαντευόμην - ἀκριβέστερόν τε περιβλέπων ὄρῳ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄστᾶ καὶ κρανία κείμενα. καὶ τὸ μὲν βοῆν ἰστάναι καὶ τοὺς ἑταίρους συγκαλεῖν καὶ ἐς τὰ ὄπλα χωρεῖν οὐκ ἔδοκίμαζον. προχειρισάμενος δὲ τὴν μαλάχην πολλὰ

ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise

ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off

ἀφίστημι: to put away, stand apart

βοή, ἦ: a loud cry, shout

δοκιμάζω: to assay or approve

ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after

ἔταιρικός, -ή, -όν: of or befitting a companion

ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate

ἴστημι: to make to stand

καλέω: to call, summon

κείμεαι: to be laid

κοσμέω: to order, arrange

κρανίον, τό: the skull, crown

μαλάχη, ἡ: mallow

μαντεύομαι: to divine, presage

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small

νεάνις, -ιδος, ἡ: a young woman, girl, maiden

ξένος, ὁ: a foreigner, guest

ὄπλον, τό: a tool, weapon

ὀστέον, τό: a bone

περιβλέπω: to look round about, gaze around

ποδήρης, -ες: reaching to the feet

προχειρίζω: to put into the hand, have ready at hand

συγκαλέω: to call to council, convoke, convene

χιτῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: a tunic

χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good of its kind, serviceable

χωρέω: give way, draw back, retire, withdraw

κεκοσμημένοι: perf. part. pas. of **κοσμέω**, “dressed up”

ποδήρεις: “reaching to the ground”

ἐπισυρόμενοι: pr. part. of **ἐπι-σύρω**, “dragging”

Κοβαλοῦσα: “Knavery”

Ὑδαμαργία: “Water-town”

λαβοῦσαι: ao. part. nom. pl. f. of **λαμβάνω**, “taking”

ξένον ἐποιεῖτο: “made him her guest”

ἀποστὰς: ao. part. intrans. of **ἀπο-ἴστημι**, “standing apart”

ὄστᾶ καὶ κρανία κείμενα: “bones and skulls lying there”

ἰστάναι: pr. inf. of **ἴστημι** “to make a shout”

καὶ τὸ ἰστάναι καὶ (sc. τὸ) συγκαλεῖν καὶ (sc. τὸ) χωρεῖν: articular infinitives objects of **ἔδοκίμαζον**, “I didn’t think these actions a good idea”

A True Story

ἠὺχόμην αὐτῇ διαφυγεῖν ἐκ τῶν παρόντων κακῶν: μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ τῆς ξένης διακονουμένης εἶδον τὰ σκέλη οὐ γυναικός, ἀλλ' ὄνου ὀπλάς: καὶ δὴ σπασάμενος τὸ ξίφος συλλαμβάνω τε αὐτὴν καὶ δῆσας περὶ τῶν ὄλων ἀνέκρινον. ἡ δέ, ἄκουσα μὲν, εἶπεν δὲ ὅμως, αὐτὰς μὲν εἶναι θαλαττίους γυναικας Ὀνοσκελέας προσαγορευόμενας, τροφήν δὲ ποιεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐπιδημοῦντας ξένους. «ἐπειδὴν γάρ,» ἔφη, «μεθύσωμεν αὐτούς, συνευνηθῆσαι

ἀέκων, -ουσα, -ον: against one's will, unwilling	ξένη, ἡ: a female guest, foreign woman
ἀνακρίνω: to examine closely, to question, interrogate	ξένος, -η, -ον: foreign, strange
γυνή, -αϊκός, ἡ: a woman	ξίφος, -εος, τό: a sword
δέω: to bind	ὄλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete
διακονέω: to minister, serve, do service	ὅμως: all the same, nevertheless
διαφεύγω: to flee through, get away from, escape	ὄνος, ὄ: an ass
ἐπιδημέω: to be at home, live at home	ὀπλή, ἡ: a hoof, the solid hoof
εὔχομαι: to pray, offer prayers	προσαγορεύω: to address, greet, name
θαλάττιος, -α, -ον: of or from the sea	σκέλος, -εος, τό: the leg
κακός, -ή, -όν: bad	σπάω: to draw
μεθύσκω: to make drunk, intoxicate, inebriate	συλλαμβάνω: to collect, gather together
	συνενάομαι: go to bed
	τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food, victuals

προχειρισάμενος: ao. part. of **προ-χειρίζω**, “taking in my hand (**χειρ**).” The mallow plant he received from Rhadamanthys recalls the moly given Odysseus by Hermes when he faces Circe.

τῆς ξένης διακονουμένης: gen. abs., “as my hostess was serving me”

εἶδον: ao. of **ὁράω**, “I saw”

ὄνου ὀπλάς: “hooves of an ass”

σπασάμενος: ao. part. of **σπάω**, “drawing”

δῆσας: ao. part. of **δέω**, “having bound her”

ἀνέκρινον: impf. of **ἀνα-κρίνω**, “I questioned”

ἄκουσα (= α-έκοῦσα): “unwilling”

αὐτὰς μὲν εἶναι, τροφήν δὲ ποιεῖσθαι: ind. st. after **εἶπεν**, “that they were... that they made”

ἐπειδὴν...μεθύσωμεν: ao. subj. in indef. temp. clause, “whenever we make them drunk”

συνευνηθῆσαι: ao. part. pas. nom. pl. of **συν-ευνέω**, “going to bed”

κοιμωμένοις ἐπιχειροῦμεν.» ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἐκείνην μὲν αὐτοῦ κατέλιπον δεδεμένην, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀνελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ τέγος ἐβόων τε καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους συνεκάλουν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, τὰ πάντα ἐμήνυον αὐτοῖς καὶ τὰ γε ὅσα ἔδεικνυον καὶ ἦγον ἔσω πρὸς τὴν δεδεμένην· ἡ δὲ αὐτίκα ὕδωρ ἐγένετο καὶ ἀφανὴς ἦν. ὅμως δὲ τὸ ξίφος εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ καθήκα πειρώμενος· τὸ δὲ αἷμα ἐγένετο.

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
 αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
 ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
 ἀφανής, -ής: unseen, invisible, viewless
 βοάω: to yell, shout
 δείκνυμι: to bring to light, show, exhibit
 δέω: to bind
 ἐπιχειρέω: to put one's hand on
 ἔσω: to the interior
 ἐταῖρος, ὄ: a comrade, companion, mate
 καθίημι: to send down, let fall
 καταλείπω: to leave behind

κοιμάω: to lull to sleep, put to sleep
 μηνύω: to disclose what is secret, reveal, betray
 ξίφος, -εος, τό: a sword
 ὀστέον, τό: a bone
 πειράω: to attempt, endeavor, try
 συγκαλέω: to call to council, convoke, convene
 συνέρχομαι: to come together
 τέγος, -εος, τό: a roof
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

κοιμωμένοις: "while they are in bed"
 ἐκείνην...δεδεμένην: perf. part. pas. of δέω, "her having been bound"
 κατέλιπον: ao. of κατα-λείπω, "I left behind"
 ἀνελθὼν: ao. part. of ἀνα-έρχομαι, "having gone up to"
 ἐγένετο: ao. of γίνομαι, "she became water"
 καθήκα: ao. of κατα-ἵημι, "I thrust through"
 πειρώμενος: "testing it"

A True Story

[47] Ταχέως οὖν ἐπὶ ναῦν κατελθόντες ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα ὑπηύγαζε, τὴν τε ἡπειρον ἀπεβλέπομεν εἰκάζομέν τε εἶναι τὴν ἀντιπέρασ τῇ ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἰκουμένη κειμένην. προσκυνήσαντες δ' οὖν καὶ προσευξάμενοι περὶ τῶν μελλόντων ἐσκοποῦμεν, καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει ἐπιβᾶσιν μόνον αὐθις ὀπίσω ἀναστρέφειν, τοῖς δὲ τὸ μὲν πλοῖον αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν, ἀνελθόντας δὲ εἰς τὴν μεσόγαιαν πειραθῆναι τῶν ἐνοικούντων. ἐν ὅσῳ δὲ ταῦτα ἐλογιζόμεθα, χειμῶν σφοδρὸς ἐπιπεσὼν καὶ προσαράξας

ἀναστρέφω: to turn back

ἀνέρχομαι: to go up

ἀντιπέρασ: over against, on the other side

ἀποβλέπω: to look away from

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

εἰκάζω: to make like, represent, portray

ἐνοικέω: to dwell in

ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon

ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon or over

ἡμέρα, ἡ: a day

ἡπειρος: terra-firma, the land

καταλείπω: leave behind

κατέρχομαι: to go down from

κείμεαι: to be laid

λογίζομαι: to count, reckon, calculate

μεσόγαιος, -ον: interior, inland

οἰκουμένη, ἡ: the inhabited world

ὀπίσω: backwards

ὅσος, -η, -ον: how much

πειράω: to attempt, endeavor, try

πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel

προσαράσσω: to dash against

προσεύχομαι: to offer prayers or vows

προσκυνέω: to make obeisance

σκοπέω: to look at or after

σφοδρὸς, -ά, -όν: excessive, violent

ταχέως: quickly

ὑπαυγάζω: to augment, increase

χειμῶν, -ώνος, ό: a storm

They reach a continent on the opposite side of the ocean and are shipwrecked there.

κατελθόντες: ao. part. of **κατα-ἔρχομαι**, “having gone back to the ship”

ὑπηύγαζεν: impf. of **ὑπο-αυγάζω**, “was increasing”

εἰκάζομέν τε εἶναι: “and we surmised (**τὴν ἡπειρον**) to be...”

τὴν ἀντιπέρασ... κειμένην: “the one lying opposite to”

περὶ τῶν μελλόντων: “about the future”

τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει...τοῖς δὲ: “to some it seemed...to others”

ἐπιβᾶσιν: ao. part. dat. pl. of **ἐπι-βαίνω**, “for us once we had landed”

ἀναστρέφειν, καταλιπεῖν, πειραθῆναι: infinitives after **ἐδόκει**

ἀνελθόντας: ao. part. modifying the acc. subj. of **πειραθῆναι** (ao. inf. pas.), “to investigate”

ἐν ὅσῳ: “in the length” (of time)

ἐπιπεσὼν: ao. part. of **ἐπι-πίπτω**, “having fallen upon us”

προσαράξας: ao. part. of **προσ-αράσσω**, “dashed against”

τὸ σκάφος τῷ αἰγιαλῷ διέλυσεν. ἡμεῖς δὲ μόλις ἐξενηξάμεθα τὰ ὄπλα ἕκαστος καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο οἶός τε ἦν ἀρπασάμενοι.

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τὰ μέχρι τῆς ἐτέρας γῆς συνενεχθέντα μοι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ καὶ παρὰ τὸν πλοῦν ἐν ταῖς νήσοις καὶ ἐν τῷ ἀέρι καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐν τῷ κήτει καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐξήλθομεν, παρά τε τοῖς ἤρωσι καὶ τοῖς ὄνειροις καὶ τὰ τελευταῖα παρὰ τοῖς Βουκεφάλοις καὶ ταῖς Ὀνοσκελεύαις, τὰ δὲ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ἐν ταῖς ἐξῆς βίβλοις διηγῆσομαι.

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὄ: the air

αἰγιαλός, ὄ: the sea-shore, beach, strand

ἀρπάζω: to snatch away, carry off

βίβλος, ἡ: a book

βουκέφαλος, -ον: bull-headed

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth

διαλύω: to loose one from another,
separate

διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in
full

ἐκνήχομαι: swim out

ἐξέρχομαι: to go or come out of

ἐξῆς: one after another, in order, next

ἦρως, ὄ: a hero, warrior

κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale

μέχρι: to a given point, even so far

μόλις: scarcely

νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind

ὄνειρος, -ου, ὄ: a dream

ὄπλον, τό: a tool, weapon

πλόος, ὄ: a sailing, voyage

σκάφος, -εος, τό: (the hull of) a ship

συμφέρω: to bring together, gather, suffer

τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last

ἐξενηξάμεθα: ao. of **ἐκ-νήχομαι**, “we swam out”

καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο οἶός τε ἦν: “and if anything else was possible”

ἀρπασάμενοι: ao. part. of **ἀρπάζω**, “having grabbed”

συνενεχθέντα: ao. part. pas. of **συν-φέρω**, “the things suffered”

ἐξήλθομεν: ao. of **ἐξ-έρχομαι**, “after we got out of the whale”

τὰ τελευταῖα: “finally”

ἐν ταῖς ἐξῆς βίβλοις: “in the next volumes”

διηγῆσομαι: fut. of **δια-ηγέομαι**, “I will narrate”

List of Verbs

A True Story

The following is a list of verbs that have some irregularity in their conjugation. The principal parts of the Greek verb in order are 1. Present 2. Future 3. Aorist 4. Perfect Active 5. Perfect Middle 6. Aorist Passive, 7. Future Passive. I have not included the future passive below, since it is very rare in *A True Story*. For many verbs not all forms are attested or are only poetic. Verbs are alphabetized under their main stem, followed by various compounds that occur in *A True Story* with a brief definition. A dash (-) before a form means that it occurs only or chiefly with a prefix. The list is based on the list of verbs in H. Smythe, *A Greek Grammar*.

ἀγγέλλω: to bear a message **ἀγγελῶ, ἡγγειλα, ἡγγελα, ἡγγελμαι, ἡγγέλθην**
παραγγέλλω: to transmit as a message

ἄγω: to lead **ἄξω, 2 aor. ἤγαγον, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἦχθην**
ἀνάγω: to lead up
ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off
διάγω: to pass time
ἐξάγω: to lead out
ἐπανάγω: to bring up or back
κατάγω: to lead down to shore
προσάγω: to bring to or upon
συνάγω: to bring together

ᾄδω: to sing **ᾄσομαι, ἦσα, ἦσμαι, ἦσθην**
ἐπάδω: to sing to or in accompaniment
συνάδω: to sing with or together

αἰρέω: to take **αἰρήσω, 2 aor. εἶλον, ἦρηκα, ἦρημαι, ἦρέθην**
διαίρέω: to divide into parts
ἐξαιρέω: to take out
καθαιρέω: to take down
προαιρέω: to choose

ἄρρω: to lift **ἄρῶ, ἦρα, ἦρκα, ἦρμαι, ἦρθην**
ἐπαίρω: to lift up and set on

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive **αἰσθήσομαι, 2 aor. ἦσθόμην, ἦσθημαι**

αἰσχύνω: to disgrace, (mid.) be ashamed **αἰσχυνῶ, ἦσχυνα, ἦσχύνθην**

ἀκούω: to hear **ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, 2 perf. ἀκήκοα, 2 plup. ἠκηκόη or ἀκηκόη, ἠκούσθην**
ὑπακούω: to listen, attend to

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken **ἀλώσομαι, 2 aor. ἐάλων, ἐάλωκα**

ἀλλάσσω: to change **ἀλλάξω, ἠλλαξα, -ήλλαχα, ἠλλαγμαί, ἠλλάχθην or ἠλλάγην**
διαλλάσσω: to forgive

ἀμείβω: to change **ἀμείψω, ἤμειψα**
παραμείβω: to pass by

ἀνάσσω: to rule **ἀνάξω, ἄναξα**

ἀνύω: to effect **ἀνύσω, ἦνυσα, ἦνυκα**

Lucian

ἀπαντάω: to go forth to meet *ἀπ-αντήσομαι, ἀπ-ήντησα, ἀπ-ήντηκα*

ἄπτω: to fasten *ἄψω, ἦψα, ἦμμαι, ἦφθην*

ἐξάπτω: to fasten from

συνάπτω: to tie or bind together, to join together, unite

ἄπτομαι: to touch

ἀραρίσκω: to fasten *ἦρσα, 2 aor. ἦραρον, 2 perf. ἄραρα, ἦρθην*

ἀράσσω: to strike *-αράξω, -ήραξα, -ηράχθην*

προσαράσσω: to dash against

συναράσσω: to dash together, dash in pieces

ἀρπάζω: to snatch away *ἀρπάσομαι, ἦρπασα, ἦρπακα, ἦρπασμαι, ἦρπάσθην*

ἄρχω: to be first, begin *ἄρξω, ἦρξα, ἦργμαι, ἦρχθην*

ἐξάρχω: to begin with, make a beginning of

κατάρχω: to make beginning of

ὑπάρχω: to begin, make a beginning

αὐξάνω: to increase *αὔξω, ηὔξησα, ηὔξηκα, ηὔξημαι, ηὔξήθην*

ἀφικνέομαι: to arrive at *ἀφ-ίξομαι, 2 aor. ἀφ-ικόμην, ἀφ-ίγμαι*

ἄχθομαι: to be vexed *ἀχθέσομαι, ἠχθέσθην*

βαίνω: to step *βήσομαι, 2 aor. ἔβην, βέβηκα*

ἀναβαίνω: to go up

ἀποβαίνω: to go away, depart

ἐμβαίνω: to step in

ἐπαναβαίνω: to get up on, mount

ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon

καταβαίνω: to step down, go down

ὑποβαίνω: to go or stand under

βάλλω: to throw *βαλῶ, 2 aor. ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην*

ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, ram

εἰσβάλλω: to throw into, invade

ἐκβάλλω: to throw or cast out of

ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, put in

μεταβάλλω: to change quickly

περιβάλλω: to throw around, embrace

προσβάλλω: to strike or dash against

ὑποβάλλω: to throw, put or lay under

βάπτω: to dip in water *βάψω, ἔβαψα, βέβαμμαι, ἐβάφην*

βιβάζω: to make go *βιβάσω, -εβίβασα, ἐβιβάσθην*

ὑπερβιβάζω: to carry over, transfer

ἐμβιβάζω: to set in or on

βιόω: to live *βιώσομαι, 2 aor. ἐβίον, βεβίωκα*

βλαστάνω: to bud 2 aor. ἔβλαστον, βεβλάστηκα

A True Story

βλέπω: to look at **βλέψομαι, ἔβλεψα**

ἀποβλέπω: to look away from

περιβλέπω: to look round about

βοάω: to shout **βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα βέβωμαι, ἐβώσθην**

ἐπιβοάω: to call upon or to, cry out to

ἀναβοάω: to shout aloud, utter a loud cry

βούλομαι: to wish **βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην**

γαμέω: to marry **γαμῶ, ἔγημα, γεγάμηκα**

γελάω: to laugh **γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα, ἐγελάσθην**

γηράσκω: to grow old **γηράσομαι, ἐγήρασα, γεγήρακα** am old. 2 aor. **ἐγήρα**

γίγνομαι, γιγνώσκω: see **γίνομαι, γινώσκω**

γινώσκω: to know **γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην**

διαγινώσκω: to distinguish, discern, resolve

καταγινώσκω: to remark, discover

μεταγινώσκω: to change one's mind, repent

ἀναγινώσκω: to know well, read

γίνομαι: to become **γενήσομαι, 2 aor. ἐγενόμην, 2 perf. γέγονα, γεγένημαι, ἐγενήθην**

παραγίνομαι: to be present, attend

ἐγίνομαι: to be born, bred in

ἐπιγίνομαι: come into being, happen

γράφω: to write **γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράψην**

ἀναγράφω: to write down, record

ἐγγράφω: to inscribe

ἐπιγράφω: to mark the surface, write on

καταγράφω: to inscribe

συγγράφω: to write, note down

δείδω: to fear **δείσομαι, ἔδεισα, δέδοικα**

δείκνυμι: to show **δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην**

δέμω: to build **ἔδειμα, δέδημαι**

δέομαι want, ask: **δεήσομαι, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην.** (from **δέω** 2)

δέχομαι: to receive **δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, -εδέχθην**

διαδέχομαι: to receive one from another

ἐκδέχομαι: to take or receive from

παραδέχομαι: to receive from

προσδέχομαι: to receive, accept

ὑποδέχομαι: to receive beneath

δέω: to bind **δήσω, ἔδησα, δέδεκα, δέδεμαι, ἐδέθην**

ἐκδέω: to bind so as to hang from, to fasten to or on

ἀναδέω: to bind or tie up

δέω: to need, lack (mid) ask: **δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην.**

Lucian

- διακονέω:** to minister **διακονήσω, δεδιακόνηκα, δεδιακόνημαι, εδιακονήθην**
- διδράσκω:** to run away **δράσομαι, 2 aor. -έδραν, -δέδρακα**
- δίδωμι:** to give **δώσω, 1 aor. έδωκα in s., 2 aor. in pl. έδομεν δέδωκα, δέδομαι, έδόθην**
- ἀποδίδωμι:** to give back, return
- ένδίδωμι:** to give out
- έπιδίδωμι:** to give beyond, increase
- μεταδίδωμι:** to give part of, give a share of
- παραδίδωμι:** to give or hand over to another, transmit
- διώκω:** to pursue **διώξομαι, έδίωξα, δεδίωχα, έδιώχθην**
- καταδιώκω:** to pursue closely
- ἀποδιώκω:** to chase away
- δοκέω:** to think, seem **δόξω, έδοξα, δέδογμαi**
- δράω:** to do **δράσω, έδρασα, δέδρακα, δέδραμαι, έδράσθην**
- δύω:** to go down **δύσω, -έδυσα trans., 2 aor. έδυν intrans., δέδυκα, -δέδυμαι, -εδύθην**
- καταδύω:** to go down, sink
- έγείρω:** to wake up **έγειρώ, ήγειρα, 2 perf. έγρήγορα, έγήγερμαι, ήγέρθην**
- ἀνεγείρω:** to wake up, rouse
- έθέλω:** to wish **έθελήσω, ήθέλησα, ήθέληκα**
- είδον** I saw: see **όράω**
- εικάζω:** to make like **εικάσω, ήκασα, ήκασμαι, ήκάσθην**
- είμι:** to go; see **έρχομαι**
- είργω:** to shut in or out **είρξω, ειρξα, ειργμαι, ειρχθην**
- κατείργω:** to drive into, shut in
- ελαύνω:** to drive **έλῶ, ήλασα, -ελήλακα, έλήλαμαι, ήλάθην**
- προσελαύνω:** to drive or chase to
- ελέγχω:** to refute **ελέγξω, ήλεγξα, έλήλεγμαι, ήλέγχθην**
- έλκω:** to draw up
- ἀνέλκω:** to draw up
- ένέπω:** to tell, relate **ένι-σπήσω and ένίψω, 2 aor. ένι-σπον**
- εύχομαι:** to pray **εύξομαι, ηύξάμην, ηύγμαι**
- έπομαι:** to follow **έψομαι, 2 aor. έσπόμην**
- έράω:** to be in love with **aor. ήράσθην**
- έρπύζω:** to creep **-έρψω, είρπυσα**
- ἀνερπύζω:** to creep up
- έρρω:** to go slowly, wander about **έρρήσω, ήρρησα, εισήρρηκα**
- έρχομαι:** to come or go to: fut. **είμι, 2 aor. ήλθον, 2 perf. έλήλυθα**

A True Story

ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
διεξέρχομαι: to go through, to recount
διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through
εἰσέρχομαι: to come to, enter into
ἐξέρχομαι: to go or come out of
ἐπεισέρχομαι: to come in besides
ἐπέρχομαι: to go upon, attack
κατέρχομαι: to go down from
παρέρχομαι: to go by, to pass by
προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance
προσέρχομαι: to come or go to
συνέρχομαι: to come together

ἔρωτάω: to ask **ἐρήσομαι**, 2 aor. **ἠρόμην**
ἐπερωτάω: to question

ἐσθίω: to eat **ἔδομαι**, 2 aor. **ἔφαγον**

ἐστιάω: to entertain as a guest **εἰστίασα**
συνεστιάω: to entertain in one's house

εὕρισκω: to find **εὕρήσω**, 2 aor. **ἠύρον** or **εὔρον**, **ἠύρηκα** or **εὔρηκα**, **εὔρημαι**,
εὕρήθην

εὐφραίνω: to cheer, delight, gladden **εὐφρανῶ**, **ἠϋφρανα**, **ἠϋφράνθην**

εὐχομαι: to offer prayers or vows **εὔξομαι**, **ἠϋξάμην**, **ἠϋγμαί**

ἔχω: to have **ἔξω**, 2 aor. **ἔσχον**, **ἔσχηκα**, imperf. **εἶχον**.

ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from

ἀντέχω: to hold against

ἐπέχω: to hold back

κατέχω: to hold fast

παρέχω: to provide, allow

προέχω: to hold before

προσέχω: to hold to

ἀνίσχω: to hold

ἔψω: to boil, cook **ἐψήσομαι**, **ἠψησα**, **ἠψημαι**, **ἠψήθην**

ζάω: to live **ζήσω**, **ἔζησα**, **ἔζηκα**

ζεύγνυμι: to join at top **ζεύξω**, **ἔζευξα**, **ἔζευγμαί**, **ἔζεύχθην**

ζώννυμι: to gird **ἔζωσα**, **ἔζωμαι**

ὑποζώννυμι: to undergird

ἡγέομαι: act as guide, lead the way **ἡγήσομαι**, **ἡγησάμην**, **ἡγημαι**

διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full

ἡδομαι: to be happy; **ἠσθήσομαι**, **ἠσθην**

ὑπερήδομαι: to be very happy

ἦλθον: to go; see **ἔρχομαι**

Lucian

θάλλω: to bloom 2 perf. **τέθηλα**

θάπτω: to bury **θάψω, ἔθαψα, τέθαμμαι, ἐτάφην**

θλίβω: to press **ἔθλιψα, τέθλιφα, ἐθλίφθην**

ὑποθλίβω: to press under or gently

ἀποθλίβω: to press, squeeze out

θνήσκω: to die **θανοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έθανον, τέθνηκα**

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

θρώσκω: to leap 2 aor. **ἔθορον**

ἀναθρώσκω: to spring forward

θύω: to sacrifice **θύσω, ἔθυσα, τέθυκα, τέθυμαι, ἐτύθην**

ἵημι: to let go, relax, to send forth **ἦσω, ἦκα, εἶκα, εἶμαι, εἶθην**

ἀνίημι: to let go, relax

ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge

ἐξίημι: to send out, let

ἐφίημι: to permit

καθίημι: to set down

προίημι: to send forward

συνίημι: to bring or set together

ἵστημι: to make to stand, set **στήσω** shall set, **ἔστησα** set, caused to stand, 2 aor.

ἔστην stood, 1 perf. **ἔστηκα** stand, plup. **εἰστήκη** stood, **ἐστάθην**

ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up

ἀφίστημι: to put away, stand apart

δίστημι: to set apart, separate

ἐνίστημι: to put, set, place in

ἐξανίστημι: to raise up: to make one rise

ἐπανίστημι: to fall upon

ἐφίστημι: to stand upon

μεθίστημι: to place in another way, to change

παρίστημι: to set beside, to make to stand, set up

προίστημι: to set before or in front

συνίστημι: to set together, combine, associate, unite, band together

καίω: to burn **καύσω, ἔκαυσα, -κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην**

ἀνακαίω: to light up

έγκαίω: to burn or heat in

καλέω: to call **καλώ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην**

ἐπικαλέω: to call upon

παρακαλέω: to call to

συγκαλέω: to call to council, convoke, convene

καλύπτω: to cover **καλύψω, ἐκάλυψα, κεκάλυμμαι, ἐκαλύφθην**

κάπτω: to gulp down **κάμψω, ἔκαμψα, κέκαμμαι, ἐκάμφθην**

κελεύω: to urge **κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευμαι, ἐκελεύσθην**

κεράννυμι: to mix **ἐκέρασα, κέκραμαι, ἐκραάθην**

A True Story

κλάω: to break *-έκλασα, -κέκλασμαι, -εκλάσθην*

κλείω: to shut *κλείσω, ξεκλεισα, κέκλειμαι, έκλείσθην*

συγκλείω: to shut or coop up, enclose

κατακλείω: to shut in, enclose

κλίνω: to bend *κλινῶ, ξεκλينا, κέκλικα, κέκλιμαι, -εκλίην*

έγκλίνω: to bend in, incline

κοιλαίνω: to make hollow *κοιλανῶ, έκοίλανα, κεκοίλασμαι, έκοιλάνθην*

κομιζώ: to take care of *κομιῶ, έκόμισα, κεκόμικα, κεκόμισμαι, έκομίσθην*

κόπτω: to strike *κόψω, ξεκοψα, -κέκοφα, κέκομμαι, -εκόπη*

διακόπτω: to cut in two, cut through

έκκόπτω: to cut out, knock out

συγκόπτω: to cut up, mangle

κρίνω: to decide *κρινῶ, ξεκρινα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, έκρίθην*

άνακρίνω: to examine closely, to question, interrogate

άποκρίνω: to separate, set apart; answer

κρούω: to strike *κρούσω, ξεκρουσα, -κέκρουκα, -κέκρουμαι, -εκρούσθην*

κρύπτω: to hide from *κρύψω, ξεκρυσα, κέκρυμμαι, έκρύφθην*

άποκρύπτω: to hide from, keep hidden from

κτείνω: to kill *κτενῶ, ξεκτεινα, 2 perf. -έκτονα*

άποκτείνω: to kill, slay

κυνέω: to kiss *κυνήσομαι, ξεκυσα*

προσκυνέω: to make obeisance

λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot or fate *λήξομαι, έλαχον, ειληχα, ειληγμαι, ελήχθην*

λαμβάνω: to take *λήψομαι, έλαβον, ειληφα, ειλημμαι, ελήφθην*

άναλαμβάνω: to take up, take into one's hands

καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, grasp

παραλαμβάνω: to secure

συλλαμβάνω: to collect, gather together

ύπολαμβάνω: to undertake, to understand

λάμπω: to shine *λάμψω, έλαμψα, λέλαμπα, -λέλησμαι*

λανθάνω: to escape notice *λήσω, έλαθον, λέληθα*

λέγω: to speak *έρέω, ειπον, ειρηκα, λέλεγμαι, έλέχθην* and *έρρηθην*

άντιλέγω: to speak against, contradict

έπιλέγω: to choose, read

διαλέγομαι: to discourse

λείπω: leave *λείψω, έλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ελείφθην*

άπολείπω: to leave over or behind

έπιλείπω: to leave behind

καταλείπω: to abandon

λείπομαι: to remain

Lucian

λύω: to loose λύσω, ἔλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην

ἀπολύω: to loose from

διαλύω: to loose one from another, to part asunder, undo

καταλύω: to put down, destroy

παραλύω: to loose, slacken

μαίνομαι: to rage, be furious 2 aor. pass. ἐμάνην

μανθάνω: to learn μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα

ἀναμανθάνω: to inquire closely

καταμανθάνω: to observe well, learn

μάχομαι: to fight μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μεμάχημαι

μεθύσκω: to make drunk ἐμέθυσσα, ἐμεθύσθην

μέμφομαι: to blame μέμψομαι, ἐμεμψάμην, ἐμέμψθην

μένω: to stay μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα

ἀναμένω: to wait for, await

ἐπιμένω: to stay on, tarry

παραμένω: to stay near, stand by

ὑπομένω: to stay behind, survive

μίγνυμι: to mix μείξω, ἔμειξα, μέμειγμαι, ἐμείχθην

παραμίγνυμι: to intermix with

συμμίγνυμι: to mix together

μιμνήσκομαι: to remember μνήσω, -έμνησα, perf. μέμνημαι, ἐμνήσθην

μύσσω: to have a runny nose -έμυξα, -εμεμύγμην

νέμω: to distribute νεμῶ, ἔνειμα, -νενέμηκα, νενέμημαι, ἐνεμήθην

νομίζω: to believe νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα, νενόμικα, νενόμισμαι, ἐνομίσθην

ξηραίνω: to dry ξηρανῶ, ἐξήρανα, ἐξήρασμαι, ἐξηράνθην

ὀζω: to smell ὀζήσω, ὠζησα

ἀπόζω: to smell of

οἶδα: to know; see ὀράω

οἶομαι: to suppose ὤήθην imperf. ὤμην

ὀλισθάνω: to slip 2 aor. ὤλισθον

διολισθάνω: to slip through

ὀλλυμι: to destroy -ολῶ, -ώλεσα, -ολώλεκα, -όλωλα

ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy, lose

ὀμνυμι: to swear ὀμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα, ὀμώμοκα, ὀμώμομαι, ὀμότην

ὀράω: to see ὀψομαι, 2 aor. εἶδον, ἑώρακα and ἐώρακα, ὤφθην, imperf. ἐώρων

καθοράω: to look down

ὑφοράω: to suspect

ὀργίζω: to make angry -οργιῶ, ὤργισα, ὤργισμαι, ὤργισθην

A True Story

ὀρέγω: to reach **ὀρέξω, ὄρεξα, ὠρέχθην**

ὀρύττω: to dig **-ορύξω, ὄρυξα, -ορώρυχα, ὀρώρυγμα, ὠρύχθην**

διορύττω: to dig through or across

ὀφείλω: to owe **ὀφειλήσω, ὠφείλησα, 2 aor. ὄφελον**

πάσχω: to experience **πείσομαι, 2 aor. ἔπαθον, 2 perf. πέπονθα**

πείθω: persuade **πείσω, ἔπεισα, 2 perf. πέποιθα, πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην**

πείρω: to pierce **ἔπειρα, πέπαρμαι, 2 aor. pass. -επάρην**

διαπείρω: to drive through

πέμπω: to convey **πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, 2 perf. πέπομφα, πέπεμμαι, ἐπέμφθην**

ἀποπέμπω: to send away, to dismiss

ἐκπέμπω: to send out or forth from

μεταπέμπω: to send after

παραπέμπω: to convey, escort

συμπέμπω: to send with

πεπαίνω: to ripen **ἐπέπανα, ἐπεπάνθην**

πετάννυμι: to spread out **πετάσθην**

πέτομαι: to fly **πτήσομαι, 2 aor. -επτόμην**

ἀναπέτομαι: to fly up

εἰσπέτομαι: to fly in

παραπέτομαι: to fly alongside

περιπέτομαι: to fly around

ὑπερπέτομαι: to fly over

πήγνυμι: to fix, make fast **πήξω, ἔπηξα, 2 perf. πέπηγα, 2 aor. pass. ἐπάγην**

ἀναπήγνυμι: fix on a stake, impale

συμπήγνυμι: to put together, construct

πίνω: to drink **πίομαι, 2 aor. ἔπιον, πέπωκα, -πέπομαι, -επόθην**

καταπίνω: to gulp, swallow down

προπίνω: to drink before

πίπτω: to fall **πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἔπεσον, πέπτωκα**

ἀναπίπτω: to fall back

διεκπίπτω: to slip through, into

ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon or over

καταπίπτω: to fall or drop down

περιπίπτω: to fall around or in with

πλάττω: to form **ἔπλασα, πέπλασμαι, ἐπλάσθην**

ἀναπλάττω: to form anew, remodel

πλέκω: to weave **ἔπλεξα, πέπλεγμαι, -επλάκην**

περιπλέκω: to entwine, enfold

συμπλέκω: to twine or plait together

Lucian

πλέω: to sail **πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι, ἐπλεύσθην**

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

διαπλέω: to sail across

εἰσπλέω: to sail into, enter

ἐκπλέω: to sail out, sail away, weigh anchor

ἐμπλέω: to sail in

ἐπιπλέω: to sail upon or over

καταπλέω: to sail down

παραπλέω: to sail along

προσπλέω: to sail towards or against

πνέω: to blow **πνεύσομαι, ἔπνευσα, -πέπνευκα**

περιπνέω: to breathe round or over

πράσσω: to do **πράξω, ἔπραξα, 2 perf. πέπραχα, πέπραγμαι, ἐπράχθην**

πυνθάνομαι: to learn **πεύσομαι, 2 aor. ἐπυθόμην, πέπυσμαι**

ράινω: to sprinkle **ρανῶ, ἔρρανα, ἔρρασμαι, ἐρράνθην**

ἐπιρραίνω: to sprinkle upon or over

ράπτω: to sew **-ράψω, ἔρραψα, ἔρραμαι, ἐρράφην**

συρράπτω: to sew or stitch together

ρέω: to flow **ρήσομαι, ἐρρύην, ἐρρύηκα**

ἀπορρέω: to flow away, stream forth

διαρρέω: to flow through

παραρρέω: to flow beside or past

περιρρέω: to flow round

ρήγνυμι: to break **-ρήξω, ἔρρηξα, -έρρωγα, ἐρράγην**

καταρρήγνυμι: to crack (of thunder)

ρίπτω: to throw **ρίψω, ἔρριψα, 2 perf. ἔρριφα, ἔρριμμαι, ἐρρίφην**

ἐπιρριπτέω: to throw oneself upon

σβέννυμι: to quench **σβέσω, ἔσβεσα, ἔσβηκα ἐσβέσθην, 2 aor. pass. ἔσβην**

σέβω: to worship **σέβομαι, ἐσέφθην**

σείω: to shake **σείσω, ἔσεισα, σέσεικα, σέσεισμαι, ἐσείσθην**

διασείω: to shake violently

σημαίνω: to indicate **σημανῶ, ἐσήμηνα, σεσήμασμαι, ἐσημάνθην**

ἐπισημαίνω: to set a mark upon

σκάπτω: to dig **σκάψω, -έσκαψα, 2 perf. -έσκαφα, ἔσκαμμαι, 2 aor. pass. -εσκάφην**

σκεδάννυμι: to scatter **-σκεδῶ, -εσκέδασα, ἐσκέδασμαι, ἐσκεδάσθην**

σκέπτομαι: to view **σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἔσκεμμαι**

σκώπτω: to mock **σκώψομαι, ἔσκωψα, ἐσκώφθην**

A True Story

σπάω: to draw **σπάσω, ἔσπασα, -έσπακα, ἔσπασμαι, -εσπάσθην**

ἀνασπάω: to pluck up, take up

ἀποσπάω: to tear away

σπένδω: to pour a drink-offering **σπείσω, ἔσπεισα, ἔσπεισμαι**

στάζω: drip **ἔσταξα, -έσταγμαι, -εστάχθην**

ἐπιστάζω: let fall in drops, instill

καταστάζω: pour upon, shed over

στέλλω: to send **στελῶ, ἔστειλα, -έσταλκα, ἔσταλμαι, 2 aor. pass. ἐστάλην**

ἀποστέλλω: to send out

στρέφω: to turn **στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστραμμαι, ἐστρέφθην**

ἀναστρέφω: to turn back, return

σύρω: to draw **-έσυρα, -σέσυρκα, -σέσυρμαι**

ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after

σφάττω: to slay **σφάζω, ἔσφαξα, ἔσφαγμαι, 2 aor. pass. -εσφάγην**

ἀποσφάττω: to cut the throat of

σώζω: to save **σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, ἐσώθην**

ταράττω: to stir up **ταράξω, ἐτάραξα, τετάραγμαι, ἐταράχθην**

τάσσω: to arrange **τάξω, ἔταξα, 2 perf. τέταχα, τέταγμαι, ἐτάχθην**

διατάσσω: to draw up, arrange

ἐκτάσσω: to draw out in battle-order

παρατάσσω: to place side by side, draw up in battle-order

προστάσσω: to place, post at

τείνω: stretch **τενῶ, -έτεινα, -τέτακα, τέταμαι, -ετάθην**

προτείνω: to stretch out before, hold before

τελέω: to complete **τελῶ, ἐτέλεσα, τετέλεκα, τετέλεσμαι, ἐτελέσθην**

ἐκτελέω: to bring quite to an end

συντελέω: to bring to an end, complete, accomplish

ὑποτελέω: to pay tribute

τέμνω: to cut **τεμῶ, 2 aor. ἔτεμον, -τέτμηκα, τέτμημαι, ἐτμήθην**

ἀνατέμνω: to cut open

ἀποτέμνω: to cut off, sever

τήκω: to melt **τήξω, ἔτηξα, τέτηκα, ἐτάκην**

τίθημι: to place **θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι** (but usu. instead **κείμαι**), **ἐτέθην**

ἀνατίθημι: to put up

ἐντίθημι: to put in

παρατίθημι: to place beside

προστίθημι: to put to

συντίθημι: to put together

τιτρώσκω: to wound **-τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην**

Lucian

τρέπω: to turn **τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, τέτροφα, ἐτρέπην**

ἀποτρέπω: to turn away

ἐπιτρέπω: to turn towards

τρέφω: to nourish **θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, 2 perf. τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτρέφην**

τρέχω: to run **δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον, -δεδράμηκα**

κατατρέχω: to run down

παρατρέχω: to run by or past

τρίβω: to rub **τρίψω, ἔτριψα, 2 perf. τέτριφα, τέτριμμαι, ἐτρίβην**

διατρίβω: to spend time

ἐκτρίβω: to rub out

συντρίβω: to rub together

τυγχάνω: to happen **τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα. τέτυγμαι, ἐτύχθην**

ἐντυγχάνω: to fall in with, meet with

περιτυγχάνω: to fall in with

τύφω: to smoke **τέθυμμαι, -ετύφην**

ὑποτύφομαι: to burn with a smoldering fire

ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise **ὑπο-σχήσομαι, 2 aor. ὑπ-εσχόμην**

ὑφαίνω: to weave **ὑφανῶ, ὕφηνα, ὕφασμαι, ὑφάνθην**

διυφαίνω: to fill up by weaving

φαίνω: to show **φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην**

ἀποφαίνω: to display, produce

ἐκφαίνω: to show, reveal

ἐμφαίνω: exhibit

προφαίνω: to bring forth, bring to light

ὑποφαίνω: to appear slightly, just be visible

φαίνομαι: to appear

περιφαίνομαι: to be visible all round

φέρω: to bear **οἴσω, 1 aor. ἤνεγκα, 2 aor. ἤνεγκον, 2 perf. ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἠνέχθην**

ἠνέχθην

ἀποφέρω: to carry off

ἐκφέρω: to carry out of

ἐπιφέρω: bear up, carry upon

καταφέρω: to bring down

παραφέρω: to bring to

προσφέρω: to bring to or upon, approach

συμφέρω: to bring together, gather, collect

φεύγω: to flee **φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον, πέφευγα**

διαφεύγω: to flee through, get away from, escape

ἐκφεύγω: to flee, escape

καταφεύγω: to flee for refuge

ὑποφεύγω: to flee from under, shun

φθάνω: to anticipate **φθήσομαι, ἔφθασα, ἔφθην**

φράζω: to point out **φράσω, ἔφρασα, πέφρακα, πέφρασμαι, ἐφράσθην**

A True Story

φυλάττω: to guard **φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι, ἐφυλάχθην**

φύω: to bring forth **φύσω, ἔφουσα, 2 aor. ἔφυν, πέφυκα**

ἀναφύω: to grow, produce

ἐκφύω: to grow out

συμφύω: to grow together

χαίρω: to rejoice at **χαιρήσω, κεχάρηκα, κεχάρημαι, ἐχάρην**

ὑπερχαίρω: to rejoice exceedingly at

χαλεπαίνω: to be offended **χαλεπανῶ, ἐχαλέπηνα, ἐχαλεπάνθην**

χάσκω: to gape 2 aor. ἔχανον, 2 perf. κέχηνα

ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth wide

χέω: to pour fut. χέω, aor. ἔχεα, κέχυκα, κέχυμαι, ἐχύθην

ἐπιχέω: to pour over

περιχέω: to pour round or over

χράομαι: to use **χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχηριμαι, ἐχρήσθην**

χρίω: to anoint **χρίσω, ἔχρισα, κέχηριμαι, ἐχρίσθην**

ψεύδω: to lie **ψεύσω, ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην**

Glossary

Glossary

A α

- ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν:** good
ἀγγέλλω: to bear a message
ἀγέλη, ἡ: a herd
ἄγκυρα, ἡ: an anchor
ἄγός, -οῦ, ὁ: a leader, chief
ἀγρεύω: to hunt or fish
ἄγριος, -α, -ον: rustic, wild, savage
ἄγών, -ου, ὁ: contest
ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
ἀδεής, -ές: without fear, fearless
ἀδικέω: to do wrong, injure
ἄδρός, -ά, -όν: thick
ἀεί: always, for ever
ἀέκων, -ουσα, -ον: against one's will, unwilling
ἄήρ, ἄέρος, ὁ: the air
αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals
αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
αἴρω: to take up, raise, lift up
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, to see, hear, feel
αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν: causing shame, abusive
αἰτία, ἡ: a charge, accusation
αἰχμάλωτος, -ον: taken by the spear, captive to one's spear, taken prisoner
ἀκούω: to hear
ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, made or done to a nicety
ἄκρος, -α, -ον: at the furthest point
ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth
ἄληθεύω: to speak truth
ἄληθής, -ές: true
ἀλλάσσω: to make other than it is, to change, alter
ἄλλά: otherwise, but
ἄλλόκοτος, -ον: strange, monstrous
ἄλλος, -η: another, one besides
ἄλλοτε: at another time, at other times
ἄλυσις, -εως, ἡ: a chain
ἅμα: at once, at the same time
ἄμπελος, ἡ: a tendril, vine
ἄμυδρός, -ά, -όν: indistinct, dim, obscure
ἄμφι: about, around + *acc.*
ἄν: indefinite particle
ἀνά: up, upon + *acc.*
ἀνάγω: to lead up
ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise
ἀνακαίω: to light up
ἀνακρίνω: to examine closely, to question, interrogate
ἀναπλάττω: to form anew, remodel
ἀνασπάω: to draw up, pull up
ἀναστρέφω: to turn upside down, upset
ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth, gape wide
ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
ἄνευ: without + *gen.*
ἄνῆρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man
ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: person, man
ἀνίημι: to send up or forth
ἀνιμάω: to draw up
ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up
ἀνοικοδομέω: to build up
ἄνοιξις, -εως, ἡ: an opening
ἀντηχέω: to sound or sing in answer
ἀντί: over against, opposite + *gen.*
ἀξιόλογος, -ον: worthy of mention, noteworthy
ἄξιόω: to deem worthy, to resolve
ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off
ἀπαίτέω: to demand back, demand
ἀπαντάω: to encounter
ἅπας: all, the whole
ἀπατάω: to cheat, beguile
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from
ἄπιστος: not to be trusted, unbelievable
ἀπό: away from, upon + *gen.*
ἀποβαίνω: to step off from (a ship or land)
ἀποβλέπω: to look away from one thing and towards another
ἀποδημία, ἡ: a being from home, a journey
ἀποδίδωμι: to give up or back, restore, return
ἀποθνήσκω: to die off, die
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement far from home, a colony
ἀποκρίνω: to separate, set apart, (mid) answer
ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind
ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy utterly, kill, slay, lose
ἀπολογέομαι: to speak in defense
ἀπολύω: to loose from, release

Glossary

ἀποπέμπω: to send off, to dismiss
ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off
ἀποστάζω: to let fall drop by drop, distil
ἀπό: from, away from + *gen.*
ἀράχνης, -ου, ὁ: a spider
ἀράχνη, ἡ: a spider's web
ἀριστερός, -α, -ον: left, on the left
ἄριστος: best
ἀρπάζω: to snatch away, carry off
ἄρσην, ὁ: male
ἄρτι: just, exactly
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, first cause, highest power
ἄρχω: to be first, to rule
ἀσεβέω: to be impious, to act profanely, sin against the gods
ἀσεβής, -ές: ungodly, godless, unholy, profane
ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome kindly, greet, bid farewell
ἀστήρ, -έρος, ὁ: star
ἀσφαλής, -ές: not liable to fall, immoveable, steadfast, firm
ἀτερπής, -ές: displeasing, joyless, melancholy
ἄτε: just as, so as; + *part. giving the ground of the action*
αὐθήμερος, -ον: made or done on the very day
αὐθις: back, back again
αὐλέω: to play on the flute
αὐλός, ὁ: flute
αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze
αὐτάρκης, -ες: sufficient in oneself, having enough, independent
αὐτίκα: forthwith, straightway, at once
αὐτόματος: acting of one's own will, of oneself
αὐτός: self
ἀφανής, -ές: unseen, invisible, viewless
ἄφθονος, -ον: without envy
ἀφήμι: to send forth, discharge
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
ἀφίστημι: to put away, remove
ἄφνω: unawares, unawares
ἄχρι: to the uttermost, utterly, + *gen.* as far as

Β β

βαδίζω: to go slowly, to walk
βάθος, -εος, τό: depth or height
βάλανος, ὁ: an acorn
βάλλω: to throw
βασιλείος, -ον: kingly, royal
βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
βασιλεύω: to be king, to rule, reign
βασιλικός, -ή, -όν: royal, kingly
βίαιος, -ος, -ον: forcible, violent
βιάζω: to constrain
βίος, ὁ: life
βιοτεύω: to live
βιόω: to live, pass one's life
βοάω: to cry aloud, to shout
βόειος, -α, -ον: of an ox or oxen
βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout
βότρυς, -υος, ὁ: a cluster or bunch of grapes
βουκέφαλος, -ον: bull-headed
βούλομαι: to will, wish, be willing

Γ γ

γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk
γαμέω: to marry
γάμος: a wedding, wedding-feast
γάρ: for
γεννάω: to beget, engender
γένος, -ους, τό: race, stock, family
γε: at least, at any rate
γηράσκω: to grow old, become old
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
γίνομαι: become, take place, happen
γινώσκω: to learn to know, to perceive, mark, learn
γνωρίζω: to make known, point out, explain
γνώριμος, -ον: well-known, familiar
γοερός, -ά, -όν: mournful, lamentable
γόνυ, τό: the knee
γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way
γραφεὺς, -έως, ὁ: a painter, writer
γράφω: to scratch, write
γυμνάζω: to train naked, train in gymnastic exercise
γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman
γύψ, ἡ: a vulture

Glossary

Δ δ

- δακρύω:** to weep, shed tears
δάκτυλος, ό: a finger
δείκνυμι: to bring to light, display, exhibit
δελφίς, -ίνος: the dolphin
δένδρον, τό: a tree
δεξιά, ή: the right hand
δεξιόμαι: to greet with the right hand, welcome, greet
δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side
δέυτερος, -α, -ον: second
δέ: but, and, on the other hand (*with μέν*)
δηλώω: to make visible or manifest, to show, exhibit
δή: now, in truth, indeed
διά: + *gen.* through, + *acc.* through, by means of
διαγωνίζομαι: to contend, struggle or fight against
διάγω: to carry over or across
διαθέω: to run about
διαλύω: to loose one from another, to part asunder, undo
διάνοια, ή: a thought, intention, purpose
διαπεράω: to go over or across
διαρρήγγνυμι: to break through, cleave asunder
διασείω: to shake violently
διατριβω: to rub hard, rub away, consume, waste
διανυγής, -ές: transparent
δίδωμι: to give
διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full
δικάζω: to judge, to give judgment on
διόπερ: wherefore, on which account
δίος, -α, -ον: god-like, divine
διό: wherefore, on which account
διώκω: to pursue
δοκέω: to think, suppose, imagine, expect
δοκιμάζω: to test, to approve, sanction
δόξα, ή: a notion, opinion, belief
δράω: to do
δρόσος, ή: dew
δύναμαι: to be able, capable, strong enough

- δυνατός, -ή, -όν:** strong, mighty, able
δύο: two
δύω: to cause to sink

Ε ε

- εάν:** if haply + *subjunctive*
εαρ, τό: spring
εαυτοῦ, -ής, -οῦ: reflexive pronoun, himself, etc.
εάω: to let, suffer, allow, permit
εβδομος, -η, -ον: seventh
εζομαι: to seat oneself, sit
εθέλω: to will, wish, purpose
εθνος, -εος, τό: a group of people, a nation
εἶδος, -εος, τό: that which is seen, form, shape, figure
εικάζω: to make like to, compare, to suppose from a likeness
εἴκοσι: twenty
εἰμί: I am
εἶμι: I will go (*ἔρχομαι*)
εἶπον: to say (*λέγω*)
εἰρεσία, ή: rowing
εἴσεμι: to go into
εἰς: into, to + *acc.*
εἶτα: then, next
εἰ: if, whether
ἐκ: + *gen.* from, out of, after
ἐκαστος, -η, -ον: every, every one, each
ἐκάτερος: each of two, either, each singly
ἐκατόν: a hundred
ἐκδέω: to bind so as to hang from, to fasten to or on
ἐκείθεν: from that place, thence
ἐκεῖνος: the person there, that person or thing
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place
ἐκκολάπτω: to scrape out, obliterate
ἐκτάσσω: to draw out in battle-order
ἕκτος, -η, -ον: sixth
ἐκφέρω: to carry out of
ἐκφύω: to generate from
ἐλάσσων, -ον: smaller, less than + *gen.*
ἐλαύνω: to drive, drive on, set in motion
ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: of ivory, ivory
ἑλιξ, -ικος, ή: a spiral, twisting tendril
ἐμβαίνω: to step in

Glossary

- ἐμβάλλω:** to throw in, put in
ἐμβιβάζω: to set in or on
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: mine
ἐμπλέω: to sail in
ἐν: in, among + *dat.*
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite
ἐνδίδωμι: to give in, lessen, concede
ἐνεκα: on account of, for the sake
 of + *gen.*
ἐνθα: there
ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some
ἐνίστημι: to put, set, place in
ἐνοικέω: to dwell in
ἐνοικοδομέω: to build in, furnish
ἐνταῦθα: here, there
ἐντεῦθεν: hence or thence
ἐντυγχάνω: to light upon, fall in with,
 read
ἐξαιρέω: to take out of, remove, bring to
 an end
ἐξελαύνω: to drive out from
ἑξήκοντα: sixty
ἕξης: one after another, in order, in a
 row
ἕξοδος, ὁ: passage out
ἕοικα: to seem, to be like, to seem right
ἐπαινέω: to approve, applaud, commend
ἐπαυλέω: to accompany on the flute
ἐπαυλιζομαι: to encamp on the field
ἐπειδάν: whenever + *subjunctive*
ἔπειτα: thereupon
ἐπεί: after that, after, since, when
ἐπί: + *acc.* toward, against; + *gen.* upon,
 on; + *dat.* on
ἐπιβαίνω: to step upon or on (a boat or
 land)
ἐπιβοάω: to call upon or to, cry out to
ἐπιβοηθέω: to come to aid, to succor
ἐπιγίνομαι: to be born after, come into
 being after
ἐπίγραμμα, -ατος, τό: an inscription
ἐπιδημέω: to be at home, live at home
ἐπιδημία, ἡ: a stay in a place
ἐπιθυμέω: to set one's heart upon
ἐπικαλέω: to call upon
ἐπικειμαι: to be laid upon
ἐπικρατέω: to rule over
ἐπιμένω: to stay on, tarry or abide still
ἐπινοέω: to think on or of, contrive
ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon or over
ἐπιπλέω: to sail upon or over
ἐπισκοπέω: to look upon or at, inspect,
 observe
ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message, command,
 commission
ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after
ἔπος, -εος, τό: a word, in pl. the epic
 words of Homer
ἑπτά: seven
ἐρήμος, -ον: desolate, lone, lonely,
 lonesome, solitary
ἔρρω: to go slowly, wander about
ἐρυθρός, -ά, -όν: red
ἔρχομαι: to come or go
ἑσπέρα, ἡ: evening, eventide, eve
ἐστιάω: to receive at one's hearth, to
 entertain, feast, regale
ἑστία, ἡ: the hearth of a house, fireside
ετάζω: to examine, test
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate
ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one or the other of two
ἔτι: yet, as yet, still
ἐτοίμος, -ον: at hand, ready, prepared
ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
εὐδαίμων, -ον: blessed with good
 fortune
εὐθαλής, -ές: blooming, flourishing
εὐρίσκω: to find
εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant
εὐώνυμος, -ον: the left side
εὐωχέω: to treat or feed well, entertain
 sumptuously
ἐφίημι: to send to or against, to launch,
 aim at
ἐφίστημι: to set or place upon, establish,
 impose upon
ἔφοδος, ἡ: an approach, an attack
ἔχω: to have or to hold, be able, be
ἔωθεν: from morning

Z ζ

- ζάω:** to live
ζέω: to boil, seethe
ζητέω: to seek, seek for

H η

- ἡγέομαι:** to go before, lead the way
ἦδη: now, already

Glossary

ἡδομαι: to enjoy oneself, take delight,
take one's pleasure
ἡδύς, -εἶα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant
ἡλῶν, -όνος, ἦ: a shore, beach
ἦκω: to have come, be present, be here
ἡλικία, ἦ: time of life, age
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun
ἡλιώτης, -ου, ὁ: inhabitant of the sun
ἦμαι: to be seated, sit
ἡμέρα: day
ἡμερος: tame, cultivated
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our
ἡμίτομος, -ον: half cut through, cut in
two
ἡνιοχέω: to hold the reins, drive a
chariot
ἡπειρος: the land, a continent
ἦρωσ, ὁ: warrior, hero

Θ θ

θάλασσα, ἡ: the sea
θαλάσσιος, -α, -ον: of, in, on or from the
sea, belonging to it
θάπτω: to bury, to honor with funeral
rites
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be
astounded
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wondrous,
wonderful, marvelous
θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view,
behold
θέμις, ἦ: that which is laid down or
established by custom
θεός, ὁ: god
θέρμος, ὁ: a lupine
θέρμω: to heat, make hot
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
θορυβώδης, -ες: noisy, uproarious,
turbulent
θρασύς, -εἶα, -ύ: bold, spirited,
courageous, confident

Ι ι

ιάομαι: to heal, cure
ιδέα, ἡ: form
ιδιώτης, -ου, ὁ: a private person, an
individual
ιερός, -ά, -όν, -: sacred, mighty, divine,
wonderful

ἱερόν, το: a sanctuary
ἴζω: to make to sit, seat, place
ἴημι: to set a going, put in motion
ἱκανός: becoming, befitting, sufficing
ἱκετεύω: to approach as a suppliant
ἴνα: in order to + *subjunctive or optative*
ἱππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, mare
ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as
ἴστημι: to set up, to make to stand
ἱστίον, τό: a sail
ἱστορέω: to inquire into
ἱστός, ὁ: anything set upright, such as a
mast
ἴσως: equally, in like manner

Κ κ

καθαιρέω: to take down, overpower,
destroy
κάθημαι: to be seated
καθίημι: to send down, let fall
καθοράω: to look down upon
καινός, -ή, -όν: new, fresh
καιρός, ὁ: due measure, proportion,
fitness
καίω: to light, kindle
καί: and, also
κακός, -ή, -όν: bad
καλέω: to call, summon
καλιά, ἡ: a wooden dwelling, hut, barn
καλός, -ή, -όν, -: beautiful, beautiful,
fair
κάλως, -ου, ὁ: a reefing rope
καπνός, ὁ: smoke
καρπός, ὁ: fruit
καρποφορέω: to bear fruit
καρτερός, -ά, -όν: strong, staunch, stout,
sturdy
καρυναύτης, -ου, ὁ: one who sails in a
nut-shell
κατά: + *gen.* below, from, against; + *acc.*
according to
καταγινώσκω: to remark, discover
καταδιώκω: to pursue closely
καταδύω: to go down, sink
κατάκειμαι: to lie down, lie
outstretched
καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, lay hold
of

Glossary

κατανοέω: to observe well, to understand
καταπίνω: to gulp or swallow down
καταπλέω: to sail down
κατασκοπεύω: to view closely, spy out
καταφεύγω: to flee for refuge
κατέχω: to hold fast to
κατηγορέω: to speak against, to accuse
κατοικέω: to dwell in, to settle in, colonize
κατόπιν: by consequence, behind, after
κατορθόω: to set upright, erect
κάτω: down, downwards
κείμαι: to be set down, to lie down
κεράννυμι: to mix, mingle
κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal
κεφαλή, ἡ: the head
κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
κινδυνεύω: to be daring, to make a venture, run the risk of + *inf.*
κινέω: to set in motion, to move
κλάδος, ό: a young slip or shoot broken off
κοιμάω: to lull or hush to sleep, put to sleep
κοινός, -ή, -όν, -: common, shared in common
κολάζω: to curtail, punish
κολοκύνθη, ἡ: a pumpkin
κολπόω: to form into a swelling fold
κομάω: to let the hair grow long, wear long hair
κομήτης, -ου, ό: wearing long hair, long-haired
κομίζω: to take care of, provide for
κοσμέω: to order, arrange
κρατέω: to be strong, rule, defeat
κρέας, τό: flesh, meat
κρημνώδης, -εος: precipitous
κρίνω: to pick out, separate, judge
κρίσις: a separating, decision
κτείνω: to kill, slay
κύαμος, ό: a bean
κυβερνήτης, -ου, ό: a steersman, helmsman, pilot
κύκλος, ό: a ring, circle, round
κῦμα, -ατος, τό: anything swollen, a wave

Α λ

λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot or fate
λαιός, -ά, -όν: on the left
λαμβάνω: to take
λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, brilliant, radiant
λανθάνω: to escape notice + *participle*
λάσιος, -ος, -ον: hairy, rough, shaggy, woolly
λάχανον, -ου, τό: vegetables, greens
λεία, ἡ: booty, plunder
λειμών, -ώνος, ό: a meadow
λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin, delicate, in a small amount
λευκός, -ή, -όν: shining, bright, white
λιμῆν, -ένος, ό: a harbor, haven
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
λόφος, ό: a hill, ridge, crest
λύχνος, ό: a lamp
λύω: to loose

Μ μ

μαίνομαι: to rage, be furious
μακρός, -ά: long
μαλάχη, ἡ: mallow
μάλα: very, exceedingly
μᾶλλον: more
μανθάνω: to learn
μαντεῖον, τό: an oracle
μαντεῖος, -α, -ον: oracular, prophetic
μαστιγώω: to whip, flog
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat
μάχιμος, -ος, -ον: fit for battle, warlike
μάχομαι: to fight
μεγαλοπρεπής, -ές: befitting a great man, magnificent
μέγας: big, great
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size, height
μεθύω: to get drunk
μείς, μήνος, ό: a month
μέλι, -ιτος, τό: honey
μέλλω: to intend to do, to be about to do + *inf.*
μένω: to stay, remain
μέν: on the one hand, on the other hand
μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share
μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon
μεσονύκτιος, -ον: of or at midnight

Glossary

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
μεστός, -ή, -όν: full, filled
μετά: + *gen.* with, among ; + *acc.* after
μεταξύ: + *gen.* between
μετέχω: to partake of, share in, take part in
μέχρι: to a given point, even so far
μηδείς: and not one
μηκέτι: no more, no longer, no further
μήκος, -εος: length
μῆνις, -ιδος, ἡ: anger, wrath
μήν: now verily, surely
μήτε: and not
μή: not
μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little
μιμνήσκω: to remind
μόλις: scarcely, little by little
μονόξυλος, -ον: made from a solid trunk
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary
μορφή, ἡ: form, shape
μουσικός, -ή, -όν: of or for music, musical
μυθώδης, -ες: legendary, fabulous
μυριάς, -άδος, ἡ: a thousand, a number of + *gen.*
μυρίος, -ος, -ον: numberless, countless, infinite
μύρον, -ου, τό: sweet-oil, unguent, balsam, myrrh

N ν

ναός, -ά, ό: the dwelling of a god, a temple
ναυμαχέω: to fight in a ship or by sea, engage in a naval battle
ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship
νεκρός, ό/τό: a dead body, corpse
νεός, -α, -ον: young, youthful
νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud, mass or pile of clouds
νεώς, -ά, ό: a temple
νησομαχία, ἡ: an island-fight
νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
νήχω: to swim
νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
νομίζω: to hold or own as a custom or usage, practice, believe, think
νῦν: now at this very time
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: the night

Ξ ξ

ξένια, ἡ: hospitality
ξενίζω: to receive or entertain strangers, to receive as a guest
ξένιος, -α, -ον: belonging to a friend and guest, hospitable
ξένος, -η, -ον: foreign, strange
ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry
ξίφος, -εος, τό: a sword

Ο ο

ογδοος, -η, -ον: eighth
οἶδε: this
όδός, ἡ: a way, path, track, road, highway
οδών, -όντος, ό: a tooth
οθεν: whence
οθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth, canvas
οἶδα: to know
οἰκίος, -α, -ον: in or of the house, domestic, related
οικέω: to inhabit, occupy
οἰκουμένη, ἡ: the inhabited world
οἶνος, ό: wine
οἰνώω: to intoxicate
οἶος, -α, -ον: such as, what sort or manner of nature, kind
οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire
ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, resembling
ὀμολογέω: to speak together, to agree
ὅμως: all the same, nevertheless, still
ὄνειρος, -ου, ό: a dream
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name
ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, keen
ὀπίσω: backwards
ὀπλίζω: to make or get ready, arm
ὄπλον, τό: a tool, implement, weapon
ὀπόσος: as many as
ὀπτάω: to roast, broil
ὄπως: as, in such manner as, how
ὀράω: to see
ὄργυια, -ῆς, ἡ: the length of the outstretched arms
ὄρθιος, -α, -ον: straight up, going upwards, steep, uphill
ὄρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, genuine

Glossary

- ὀρμάω:** to set in motion, urge, set out
ὀρμίζω: to bring into harbor, to moor, anchor
ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill
ὅσος, -η, -ον: how much?
ὀστέον, τό: a bone
ὅστις: who, whoever
ὄς, ἧ, ὅ: who
οὐδαμός, -ή, -όν: not even one, no one
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, nowhere
οὐδείς: no one, nothing
οὐδέ: but not, and not
οὐκέτι: no more, no longer, no further
οὖν: really, certainly, so, then
οὕπω: not yet
οὔριος, -α, -ον: with a fair wind, from behind
οὔς, τό: an ear
οὔτε: and not
οὔτοι: indeed not
οὔτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this
οὐ: not
ὀφθαλμός, ὄ: the eye
- Π π**
- παῖς, παιδός, ὄ/ἧ:** a child
πάλαι: long ago, once upon a time
πάλη, ἧ: wrestling
πάλιν: again, back
παμμεγέθης, -ες: enormous
παννύχιος, -ον: all night long
παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts, of every kind
πάννυ: altogether, entirely
παρά: + *gen.* from the side of; + *dat.* beside, alongside of; + *acc.* to the side of, toward
παραδίδωμι: to give or hand over to another, transmit
παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical
παραινέω: to exhort, recommend, advise
παραλαμβάνω: to take along, secure, associate with (someone)
παραμένω: to stay beside or near, stand by
παραπέμπω: to convey, escort
παραπλέω: to sail by or past, sail along
- παραπλήσιος, -α, -ον:** such as, nearly resembling, such-like
παραρρέω: to flow beside or past
παρασκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, make ready
παρέρχομαι: to go by, beside or past, to pass by
παρέχω: to hold beside, to furnish, provide, supply
πάσχω: to suffer, endure, experience
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: all, the whole
πάτριος, -α, -ον: of one's father
πατρίς, -ίδος, ἧ: the fatherland
παχύς, -εῖα: thick, stout
πεδῖον, τό: a plain, flat land
πεζός, ὄ: a footsoldier
πείθω: to prevail upon, win over, persuade
πειράω: to attempt, endeavor, try
πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
πέμπτος, -η, -ον: fifth
πέμπω: to send, dispatch
πένης, -ητος, ὄ: one a poor man
πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred
πέντε: five
πεντήκοντα: fifty
περί: + *gen.* concerning; + *acc.*, all around, approximately
περίκειμαι: to lie round about
περίμετρον, τό: the circumference, perimeter
περιοράω: to look over, overlook
περιπληθής, -ές: very full
περιρρέω: to flow around
περισκοπέω: to look around
πετάννυμι: to spread out
πέτομαι: to fly
πέτρα, ἧ: a rock, a ledge or shelf of rock
πηγή, ἧ: running waters, streams
πήγνυμι: to make fast, form together, congeal
πίμπλημι: to fill up
πίνω: to drink
πιστεύω: to trust, believe
πλανάω: to make to wander, lead wandering about
πλατύς, -εῖα, -ύ: wide, broad
πλεθριαῖος, -α, -ον: broad, long
πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
πλείων, ὄ: more, larger (than)

Glossary

πλέω: to sail, go by sea
πλήθος, -εος, τό: a great number, multitude
πλήν: + *gen.* more than, except
πλήρης, -ες: filled, full of
πλησιάζω: to bring near, consort with
πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
πλόος, ό: a sailing, voyage
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing
πνέω: to blow
ποδήρης, -ες: reaching to the feet
ποιέω: to make, do
ποίησις, -εως, ή: a making, poem
ποιητής, -ου, ό: a maker, poet
ποικίλος, -η, -ον: many-colored, spotted
πολέμιος, -α, -ον: military, relating to war
πόλεμος, ό: battle, fight, war
πόλις, -εως, ή: a city
πολλάκις: many times, often
πολύπους, -ποδος, ό: the sea-polypus, octopus
πολύς, -ή, -όν: many
πονηρός, -ά, -όν: toilsome, painful, grievous
ποταμός, ό: a river, stream
πότερος, -α, -ον: which of two?
πούς, ποδός, ό: a foot
πρό: + *gen.* before
προαιρέω: to bring forth, produce from one's stores
προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance
προθυμία, ή: readiness, willingness, eagerness, zeal
πρόθυμος, -ον: ready, willing, eager, zealous
πρός: + *gen.* from, relating to; + *dat.* in, on, at; + *acc.* to, toward
προσαγορεύω: to address, greet, name
προσάγω: to bring to or forth
προσελαύνω: to drive or chase
προσέοικα: to be like, resemble
προσέρχομαι: to come or go to, to advance
προσέχω: to hold to, to put in or anchor
προσκυνέω: to make obeisance, worship
προσοκέλλω: to run (a ship) on shore
προσπλέω: to sail towards or against

πρότερος, -α, -ον: earlier, before, in front, first
πρύμνα, -ης, ή: the hindmost part of a ship, the stern, poop
πρῶρα, -ης, ή: the forepart of a ship, prow, bow
πτερόν, τό: feather
πτερωτός, -ή, -όν: feathered
πυκνός, -η, -ον: close, compact
πύλη, ή: a gate
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by hearsay or by inquiry
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
πυρός, ό: wheat
πυρώω: to burn with fire, burn up
πῶς: how?
πως: in any way, at all, by any means

Ρ ρ

ρᾶδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready
ρέω: to flow, run, stream, gush
ρήτος, -ή, -όν: stated, specified

Σ σ

σατράπης, -ου, ό: a satrap, viceroy
σαφής, -ές: clear, plain, distinct
σελήνη, ή: the moon
σημείον, τό: a sign, a mark, token
σιδήρεος, -α, -ον: of iron or steel
σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
σκάφος, -εος, τό: ship
σκιάω: to overshadow, shade
σκοπέω: to look at or after
σκοπός, ό: one that watches, one that looks after
σκότος, -εος, ό: darkness, gloom
σμικρός, -ή, -όν: small, tiny
σπήλαιον, τό: a grotto, cave, cavern
σπουδάζω: to make haste, be busy about
σπουδή, ή: haste, speed
στάδιον, τό: a stade
στέλλω: to dispatch, equip, make ready
στένω: to moan, sigh, groan
στέφανος, ό: garland
στήλη, ή: a block of stone
στόμα, τό: the mouth
συγγραφεύς, -έως, ό: an historian, writer

Glossary

- συγγράφω:** to write or note down, record
- συγκαλέω:** to call to council, convoke, convene
- συγκόπτω:** to cut up, mangle
- συλλαμβάνω:** to collect, gather together, conceive
- συμμαχέω:** to be an ally
- σύμμαχος, -ον:** fighting along with, allied with
- συμπόσιον, τό:** a drinking-party, symposium
- σύν:** + *dat.* with, in the company of
- συναράσσω:** to dash in pieces, shiver, shatter
- συνέρχομαι:** to come or go together
- συνεχής, -ές:** holding together
- συνθήκη, ἡ:** a composition, agreement, treaty
- συνίημι:** to bring or set together
- συνίστημι:** to set together, unite, associate, subsist
- σύνουδα:** to share in knowledge, be cognizant of
- συνοικέω:** to dwell together
- συνουσία, ἡ:** a being with, intercourse, society
- σφαιροειδής, -ές:** spherical
- σφενδονάω:** to sling, to use a slingshot
- σφενδονήτης, -ου, ό:** a slinger
- σφόδρα:** very, much, exceedingly
- σφοδρός, -ά, -όν:** vehement, violent, excessive
- σχεδιά, ἡ:** a raft, float
- σχολάζω:** to have leisure or spare time, to be at leisure
- σῶμα, -ατος, τό:** the body
- σωφρονέω:** to be sound of mind
- τάξις, -εως, ἡ:** an arranging, battle line, rank
- ταπεινός, -ή, -όν:** low
- ταράσσω:** to stir, stir up, trouble
- τάσσω:** to arrange, put in order, assign, appoint
- ταχύς, -εία, -ύ:** quick, swift, fleet
- τείχος, -εος, τό:** a wall
- τέλειος, -α, -ον:** finished, complete
- τελέω:** to complete, fulfill, accomplish
- τέλος, -εος, τό:** fulfillment, completion
- τεράστιος, -ον:** monstrous
- τερπνός, -ή, -όν:** delightful, pleasant, agreeable, glad
- τέσσαρες:** four
- τέταρτος, -η, -ον:** fourth
- τε:** and
- τίθημι:** to set, put, place
- τιμάω:** to pay honor to, hold in honor, revere
- τις:** any one, any thing, someone, something
- τίς:** who?
- τιτρώσκω:** to wound
- τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε:** such a one
- τοιούτος, -αύτη, -ούτο:** such as this or that
- τοξότης, -ου, ό:** a bowman, archer
- τόπος, ό:** a place
- τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -ούτο:** so large, so tall, so much
- τοτέ:** at times, now and then
- τότε:** at that time, then
- τρέπω:** to turn
- τρέφω:** to thicken or congeal
- τριάκοντα:** thirty
- τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α:** three hundred
- τρίτος, -η, -ον:** third
- τρόπαιον, τό:** a trophy
- τρόπος, ό:** a turn, direction, course, manner
- τροφή, ἡ:** nourishment, food
- τρυφάω:** to live luxuriously
- τυγχάνω:** to hit upon, happen
- τυρός, ό:** cheese

Υ υ

- ύάλινος, -η, -ον:** of crystal or glass
- ύδρεύω:** to draw or carry water
- ύδωρ, ύδατος, τό:** water
- ύλη, ἡ:** a forest
- ύμός, -ά, -όν:** your
- ύπακούω:** to listen, attend to
- ύπάρχω:** to begin, make a beginning
- ύπέρ:** + *gen.* over, above; + *acc.* over, beyond
- ύπερβιβάζω:** to carry over, transfer
- ύπερήδομαι:** to be happy

Τ τ

Glossary

ὑπερθανμάζω: to wonder exceedingly
ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise, engage in
ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: a supposition, purpose, composition, subject matter
ὑπολαμβάνω: to undertake, understand, believe, suppose
ὑπομένω: to stay behind, survive
ὑποτελέω: to pay tribute
ὑποφαίνω: to bring to light, to appear slight, (of the sun) to rise
ὑπό: + *gen.* from under, by; + *dat.* under; + *acc.* towards
ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: on the next day
ὔστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward
ὑφίημι: to let down
ὑφοράω: to look at from below, suspect
ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised
ὔω: to send rain, to rain

Φ φ

φαίνομαι: to appear, seem
φαίνω: reveal, show
φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert
φελλός, ό: cork
φέρω: to bear, carry, endure
φεύγω: to flee
φημί: to declare, make known
φθονέω: bear a grudge, be jealous
φιλέω: to love, regard with affection, kiss
φιλία, ἡ: affection, friendship
φίλος, -η, -ον: loved, beloved, dear
φλυαρέω: to talk nonsense, play the fool
φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful
φοβέω: to frighten, set to flight
φόρος, ό: a tribute
φράζω: to point out, indicate, show
φρονέω: to think, to have understanding
φυλάττω: to guard, keep safe
φύλλον, τό: a leaf
φύσις, ἡ: the nature, natural qualities, condition
φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth, grow
φωνή, ἡ: a sound, tone, voice, utterance
φῶς, φωτός, τό: light

Χ χ

χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: of bronze, brazen
χαρίεις: graceful, beautiful, lovely
χάσκω: to open, gape, have one's mouth open, yawn
χειμών, -ῶνος, ό: the winter, a storm
χείρ, ἡ: the hand
χέω: to pour
χίλιοι, -αι, -α: thousand
χιτών, -ῶνος, ό: a tunic
χράσμαι: to use + *dat.*
χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good, serviceable
χρή: it is fated, necessary + *inf.*
χροιά, ἡ: color, the skin
χρόνος, ό: time
χρύσεος, -η, -ον: golden, of gold
χώρα, ἡ: a space, land
χωρέω: give way, draw back, go, withdraw
χωρίον, τό: a place, spot, district

Ψ ψ

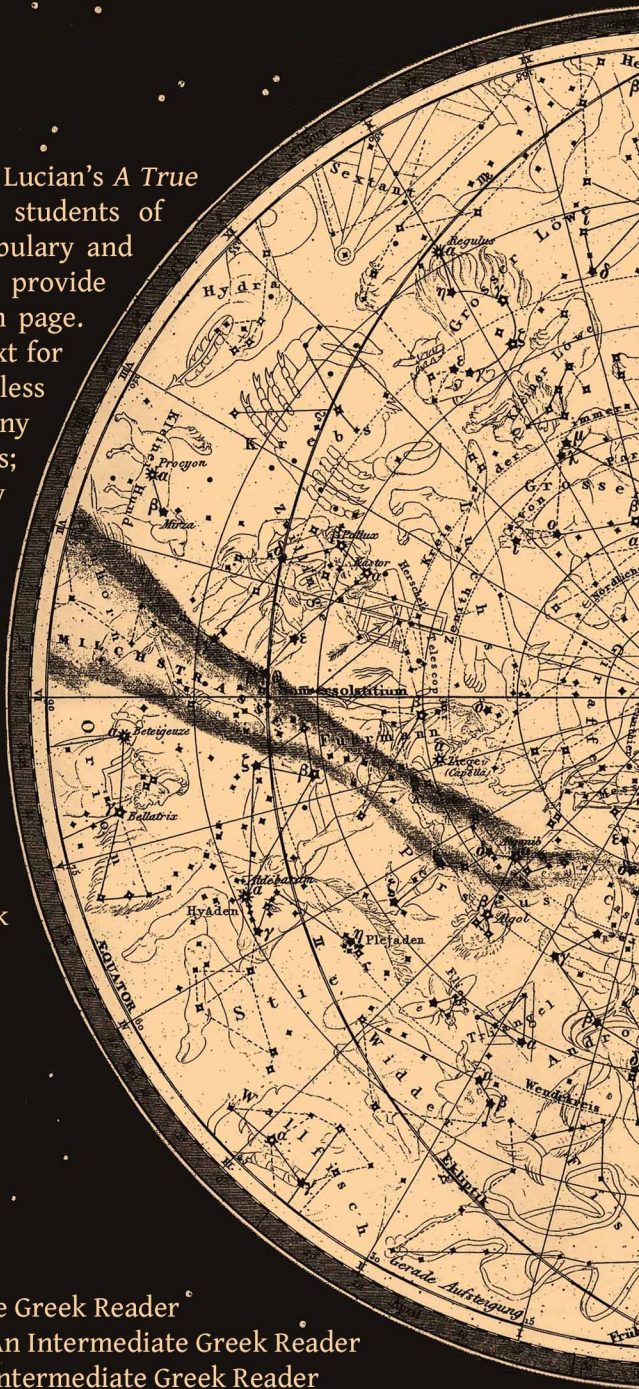
ψεῦδος, -εος, τό: a falsehood, untruth, lie
ψεύδω: to cheat by lies, beguile, lie
ψυχή, ἡ: breath, soul, spirit

Ω ω

ῶκεανός, -οῦ, ό: ocean
ῶόν, τό: an egg
ῶρα, ἡ: period of time, season
ῶσπερ: just as if, even as
ῶστε: with the result that, so that
ῶς: *adv.:* as, so, how; *conj.* that, in order that, since; *prep.* + *acc.* to; + *part.* as if, as; + *superlative* as ____ as possible



The aim of this book is to make Lucian's *A True Story* accessible to intermediate students of Ancient Greek. The running vocabulary and commentary are meant to provide everything necessary to read each page. Lucian's *A True Story* is a great text for intermediate readers. Its breathless narrative does not involve many complex sentences or constructions; there is some unusual vocabulary and a few departures from Attic Greek, but for the most part it is a straightforward narrative that is fun and interesting by one of antiquity's cleverest authors. In *A True Story*, Lucian parodies accounts of fanciful adventures and travel to incredible places by authors such as Ctesias and Iambulus. The story's combination of mockery and learning makes it an excellent example of the Greek literature of the imperial period.



Also available in this series:

Lucian's *The Ass*: An Intermediate Greek Reader

Lucian's *On the Syrian Goddess*: An Intermediate Greek Reader

Plutarch's *Dialogue on Love*: An Intermediate Greek Reader